EL-MOASSER GUIDE

CONNECT Plus

Parents' Guide

دليـــل ولـى الأمــر

By a group of supervisors

الصف الرابع الابتدائى

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات

الفصـــل الدراســـى الأول

GPS

تطبيق

التعلم التفاعلى

طبعة جديدة

طبقًا لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤

DESERT ANIM

بتصريح وتحت إشراف

وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفنى

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

4th Primary 2024

FIRST TERM



Contents

Theme 1 I discover myself



Theme 2 Myself and others

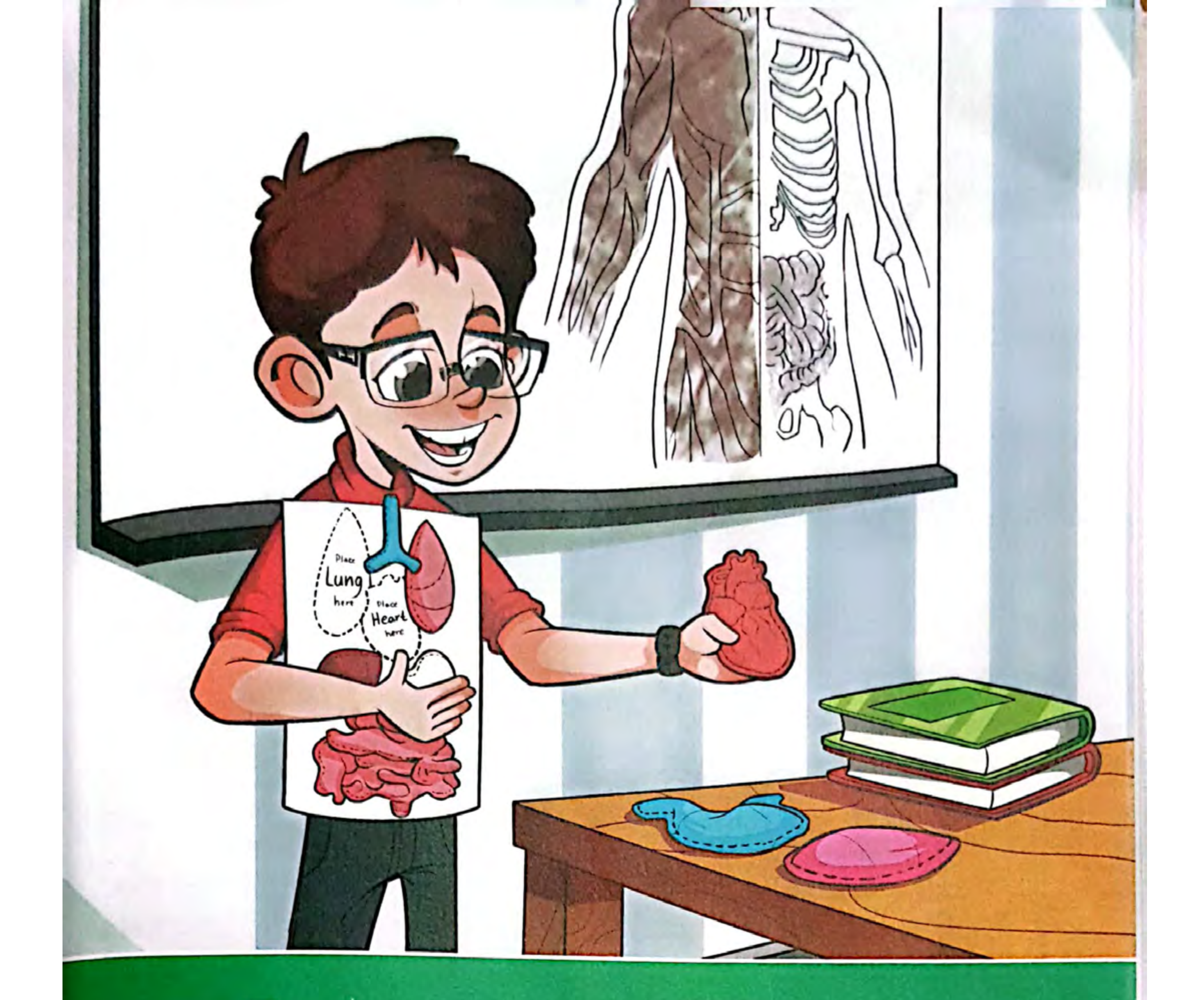


1

THEME

I discover myself





Unit 1

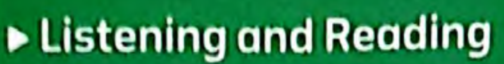
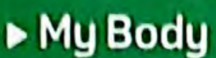
What can I do ?

ماذا يمكننى أن أفعل ؟

Aims of Unit One : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- understand important systems in my body.
  - أتعرف على الأجهزة الهامة فى جسمى.
- learn about my brain. - أتعلم عن مخى.
- form and use regular and irregular present simple verbs.
  - أكون واستخدم الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة فى زمن المضارع البسيط.
- read about our senses. - أقرأ عن حواسنا.
- practice when to use capital letters.
  - أتدرب على متى تُستخدم الحروف الكبيرة.
- choose and write a title for a text.
  - أختار واكتب عنوان للنص.
- plan activities for a summer camp.
  - أخطط أنشطة لمعسكر صيفى.


Lesson 1

▶ Listening and Reading

▶ My Body

Vocabulary

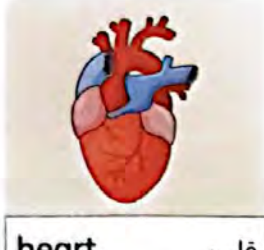
Key vocabulary


stomach معدة


lungs الرئتين


skeleton هيكل عظمى


muscles عضلات


heart قلب


bones العظام


blood دم


mouth فم

Extra vocabulary

digestive system	الجهاز الهضمى	respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسى
special liquid	سائل خاص	organ	عضو (فى الجسم)
energy	طاقة	oxygen	غاز الأكسچين
nutrients	عناصر غذائية	nose	أنف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
pump	يضخ	pumped	protect	يحمى	protected
attach to	يربط بـ	attached to	chew	يمضغ	chewed
lift	يرفع	lifted	swallow	يبتلع	swallowed
pass	يمر	passed			

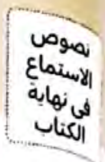
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

change the food into	يحول الطعام إلى	through the nose	خلال الأنف
(is) made up of	يتكون / يتألف من	make us strong	يجعلنا أقوياء
breathe in	يستنشق		

Body Systems

Body system الجهاز	The organ العضو	Function الوظيفة
1 Digestive System الجهاز الهضمي (mouth, stomach) • We use it when we eat.	mouth	• We chew and swallow food through it.
	stomach	• The food goes to it. A special liquid in the stomach changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.
2 Respiratory System الجهاز التنفسي (nose, lungs, heart) • We use it when we breathe.	nose	• We breathe in air through it.
	lungs	• The air we breathe in goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood.
	heart	• It pumps the blood around our body.
3 Bones and muscles العظام والعضلات (muscles, bones) • We use it when we move.	skeleton	• It is made up of all the bones in our body.
	bones	• They make us strong and protect our organs.
	muscles	• They are attached to our bones. • They lift and turn bones to make us move.

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We use our digestive system when we ....

a. eat b. think c. breathe d. walk

2. We chew food, then it goes to our ....

a. heart b. stomach c. teeth d. lungs

3. Special liquid .... the food into energy and nutrients.

a. changes b. mixes c. uses d. moves

4. We need energy and nutrients in our ....

a. respiratory b. digestive c. bodies d. home

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. breathe in – through – air – We – nose – our.

....

2. us – strong – Bones – make.

....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. Our digestive system works when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to the stomach. A special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies. We use our respiratory system when we breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We need energy and .... in our body.

a. nutrients b. plants c. flower d. listen

2. A special liquid .... food into energy.

a. eats b. works c. goes d. changes

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What system do we use when we breathe in ?

....

4. Where does food go after we swallow it ?

....

• 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

blood - lungs - heart - breathe

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We (1) .... in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the (2) .... Our (3) .... pumps this blood around our body.

• 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We breathe .... air through our respiratory system.

   a. on b. in c. next d. under

2. A special liquid in the stomach changes food .... energy and nutrients.

   a. through b. under c. on d. into

3. Our heart pumps the blood .... our body.

   a. next b. out c. around d. under

4. Our skeleton is made up of .... the bones in our body.

   a. some b. any c. all d. no

• 6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Our respiratory system

Guiding elements :

• breathe • lungs • oxygen • pumps

....

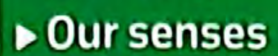
....

....

....

....

Lesson 2



▶ Reading
▶ Our senses





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

Senses الحواس


taste التذوق


touch اللمس


hearing السمع


sight الإبصار


smell الشم

Extra vocabulary

world	عالم	versions	إصدارات	Braille	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين
tongue	لسان	complete	تام - كامل	code	نظام / رمز
skin	جلد / بشرة	fireworks	ألعاب نارية	blind	كفيف / فاقد البصر
What kind ... ?	ما نوع ... ؟	loud	عالِ الصوت	dots	نقاط
communicate	يتصل / يتواصل	English	لغة انجليزية	punctuation marks	علامات الترقيم
sign language	لغة الإشارة	Arabic	لغة عربية	letter	حرف
deaf	أصم (لا يسمع)	Spanish	لغة اسبانية	animal's fur	فراء حيوان
difficulty	صعوبة	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	combination	تركيب / مزيج
savory	مالح	sweet	حلو	information	معلومات

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
taste	يتذوق	tasted	understand	يفهم	understood
work	يعمل	worked	see	يرى	saw
invent	يخترع	invented	hear	يسمع	heard
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	smell	يشم	smelt
use	يستخدم	used	feel	يشعر	felt
touch	يلمس	touched	mean	يعني / يقصد	meant
call	يسمى/يدعى	called	speak	يتكلم	spoke

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

think about	يفكر في	have difficulty hearing	يعاني من ضعف السمع
all the time	طوال الوقت	find out	يكتشف
take in a lot of information	يستوعب الكثير من المعلومات	(be) called	يسمى / يدعى
look at	ينظر إلى	the world around us	العالم من حولنا
lots of	كثير من	feel soft	ملمسها ناعم
different from	مختلف عن		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can see with our ....
   a. skin b. ears c. nose d. eyes
2. A .... person is a person who can't hear.
   a. deaf b. blind c. strong d. fast
3. Our senses are .... all the time.
   a. smelling b. tasting c. working d. making
4. Blind people .... the dots with their fingers.
   a. hear b. touch c. read d. smell

⭐ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Our Senses حواسنا

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin.

Think about where you are now. What can you see?

What can you hear? Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

Look at the photo. What can the child **smell**[1]?

What do you think he can **feel**[2]? What kind of food do you enjoy?

Some foods are **sweet**[3], and some are **savory**[4].
We taste lots of different **kinds**[5] of food every day.

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to **communicate**[6].

People who are **deaf**[7] or have **difficulty hearing**[8] can learn **sign language**[9].
It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different **versions**[10] of it around the world - sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

[1] يشم
[2] يشعر
[3] حلو المذاق
[4] مالح
[5] أنواع
[6] يتواصل
[7] أصم
[8] ضعف السمع
[9] لغة الإشارة
[10] نسخ/إصدارات



Determine the meaning of words in a text.
حدد معاني الكلمات في النص.

Learn 1. The word "**sweet**" in the text is the opposite of ....
a. candy b. sugar c. savory d. fruit

Practice 2. The underlined word "**deaf**" means can't........................
a. see b. taste c. smell d. hear

- نحن نستخدم حواسنا كل يوم لتساعدنا على فهم العالم من حولنا. نحن نستخدم أعيننا لنرى وأذننا لنسمع. نحن نشم بأنفنا، نتذوق بلساننا ويمكننا أن نشعر عن طريق بشرتنا (جلدنا) - فكر أين أنت الآن. ماذا ترى؟ ماذا تسمع؟ تعمل حواسنا طوال الوقت وتستقبل الكثير من المعلومات.

- انظر إلى الصورة. ماذا يستطيع الطفل أن يشم؟ ماذا تعتقد أنه يشعر؟ أي نوع من الطعام تستمتع به؟ بعض الأطعمة حلوة المذاق وبعضها مالح. نحن نتذوق الكثير من أنواع الأطعمة المختلفة كل يوم. بعض الناس لا يستطيعوا أن يروا أو يسمعوا، لذلك يكون لديهم طرق مختلفة للتواصل. الصم أو من يعاني من ضعف السمع يمكنهم تعلم لغة الإشارة. إنها لغة كاملة مثل اللغة الإنجليزية، العربية أو الأسبانية، ويوجد منها إصدارات مختلفة حول العالم - لغة الإشارة في مصر مختلفة عن لغة الإشارة في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.



Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify about our different senses.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على حواسنا المختلفة.

Braille[11] is a **code**[12] which people who are **blind**[13] or have **difficulty seeing**[14] can use to read.
It has different **combinations**[15] of **dots**[16]. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Braille was **invented**[17] by Louis Braille.

[11] طريقة برايل
[12] رمز
[13] كفيف
[14] ضعف البصر
[15] تركيبات/ مزيج
[16] نقاط
[17] اخترع

- طريقة برايل هى نظام يمكن أن يستخدمها الأشخاص المكفوفين أو من لديهم ضعف بصر للقراءة. فهذه اللغة لها تركيبات مختلفة من النقاط. يمكن أن تكون حرفًا أو رقمًا أو علامة ترقيم أو كلمة. فيستطيع الشخص الذى يقرأ أن يلمس النقاط ليكتشف معانيها. اخترعت طريقة برايل بواسطة «لويس برايل».

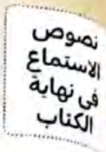
II Language

Capital letters الحروف الكبيرة

⭐ تستخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع الآتى:

Proper nouns أسماء العَلَم **(People and Pets)**	Hany Amira Tamra
Names of places أسماء الأماكن	Giza Zoo
The pronoun "I" فى اى مكان فى الجملة	I love ice cream.
Occasions المناسبات	Eid Al-Fitr Christmas
Days of the week أيام الأسبوع	Sunday Friday
Months of the year شهور السنة	June October November August
At the beginning of a sentence فى بداية الجملة	Turn on the fan. It's hot.
Countries and nationalities أسماء البلاد والجنسيات	Egypt / Egyptian

General Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We use our eyes to ....
   a. taste b. touch c. hear d. see
2. We hear with our ....
   a. ears b. arms c. legs d. brain
3. We can feel with our ....
   a. mouth b. skin c. nose d. stomach
4. Our senses take in a lot of ....
   a. information b. water c. blood d. lungs

2 Listen and complete.

1. People who are .... or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language.
2. We use our hands, ... and bodies to communicate.
3. Sign language is .... in each country.
4. People use .... instead of hearing to understand.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

five – sense – eyes – ears

Mustafa : Hi, Mounir. What do you think of today's lesson ?

Mounir : Hi, Mustafa. It's an easy lesson. As you know we have (1) .... senses.

Mustafa : Sure, but why do we need them ?

Mounir : Each (2) .... has an important job.

Mustafa : Can you give me an example?

Mounir : Yes, we use our (3) .... to see and we use our ears to hear.

Mustafa : That's right. It's an interesting lesson.

Mounir : I agree with you.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. kind – food – What – of – enjoy – do you ?

....

2. ways – Some – have – people – different – to communicate.

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use to read. It was invented by Louis Braille. It has different combinations of dots. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Some people who cannot hear use sign language. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish.

A. Choose the correct answer :

1. People who cannot ...., read by using Braille.
   a. sing   b. hear   c. touch   d. see

2. Some people who can't hear are ....
   a. blind   b. deaf   c. strong   d. weak

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Who invented Braille ?

....

4. How can the blind use Braille ?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Our different senses

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : hear - ears - smell - skin - taste

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3 ▸ Language



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

lounge	صالة – غرفة الجلوس	right hemisphere	الشق الأيمن (من المخ)
disappointed	خائب الأمل/محبط	left hemisphere	الشق الأيسر (من المخ)
cookery	فن الطبخ	activity	نشاط
brain	المخ	cerebrum	منطقة المخ
cerebellum	منطقة المخيخ	brain stem	جذع المخ

• Extra vocabulary

creative	مُبدع - مُبتكر	memory	ذاكرة
math	الرياضيات	choices	اختيارات
science	العلوم	main areas	مناطق رئيسية
art	التربية الفنية	movement	حركة
solving problems	حل المشاكل	balance	توازن
tired	متعب	light bulb	مصباح كهربي
thoughts	أفكار	artistic	ذو حس فني

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
tidy	يرتب	tidied	say	يقول	said
smile	يبتسم	smiled	know	يعرف	knew
practice	يمارس/يتدرب	practiced	draw	يرسم	drew
answer	يجيب	answered	run	يجرى	ran
paint	يلون	painted	choose	يختار	chose
control	يتحكم	controlled	take	يأخذ	took
join	يربط	joined	think	يفكر	thought

 Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	Let's + inf.......	هيا بنا + فعل في المصدر
What's the matter ?	ما الأمر ؟	do quizzes	يحل اختبارات قصيرة
control the right/left side of	يتحكم في الجانب الأيمن / الجانب الأيسر من		

★ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

What do Adam and Kareema like to do ? ماذا يحب آدم وكريمة أن يفعلوا ؟



"It is Saturday, so there's no school.
What are we doing today, Mom?" asks Kareema.

"We have to **tidy** [1] the **lounge** [2]. Then you can choose what you want to do," says Mom.

Kareema's brother Adam **smiles** [3].
"I know what I want to do!" he says.

"Let's go to the park. We can run and play. I want to **practice** [4] football."
Kareema looks **disappointed** [5]. "What's the matter ?" asks Mom.

"I like the park," Kareema answers. "But I want to do something **creative** [6] this afternoon. I would like to **draw** [7] or **paint** [8] a picture. Adam goes to the park every week."

"Kareema always does drawing!" says Adam.

Mom smiles. "I think we can all be happy today. Let's go to the park. We can play there and we can take pencils and paper with us. You can draw in the park, too. But first, let's tidy the lounge."

[1] ينظم
[2] غرفة الجلوس
[3] يبتسم
[4] يتدرب
[5] محبط
[6] إبداعي
[7] يرسم
[8] يلون

إنه يوم السبت، لذا لا يوجد يوم دراسي. تسأل كريمة : "ماذا سنفعل اليوم يا أمي ؟" تقول الأم : "علينا أن نرتب غرفة الجلوس. ثم يمكنكم اختيار ما تريدون القيام به." يبتسم آدم شقيق كريمة ويقول " أعرف ما أريد أن أفعله اليوم! " "هيا بنا نذهب إلى الحديقة. يمكننا الجري واللعب. أريد أن أتدرب على كرة القدم." تبدو كريمة محبطة. تسأل الأم : "ما الأمر" ؟ تجيب كريمة: "أحب الحديقة، ولكنني أريد أن أفعل شئ ما إبداعي وقت الظهيرة هذا اليوم. أود أن أرسم أو ألون صورة. يذهب آدم إلى الحديقة كل أسبوع". يقول آدم: "كريمة ترسم دائمًا" تبتسم الأم. وتقول "أعتقد أنه يمكننا جميعًا أن نكون سعداء اليوم. دعونا نذهب إلى الحديقة. يمكننا اللعب هناك ويمكننا إحضار أقلام الرصاص والورق معنا، ويمكنك الرسم في الحديقة أيضًا. لكن أولًا دعونا نرتب غرفة الجلوس".

• Help your child look, listen and read the text. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص.



Our brain



1. **Our brain** controls how we move, what we remember, and the choices we make.

   ١. مخنا يتحكم فى كيفية الحركة لدينا وماذا نتذكر وبالاختيارات التى نتخذها.

2. The three main areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain stem, and they all have important jobs.

   ٢. الثلاث مناطق الرئيسية فى المخ هى منطقة المخ ومنطقة المخيخ وجذع الدماغ وكل منطقة منهم لها وظائف هامة.

3. **The cerebrum** controls our senses, thoughts, how we speak, and our memories. The cerebellum controls movement and balance.

   ٣. منطقة المخ تتحكم فى مشاعرنا وأفكارنا وكيف نتحدث وذكرياتنا. منطقة المخيخ تتحكم فى الحركة والتوازن.

4. **The brain stem** joins the two parts of the brain. ٤. جذع المخ يربط جزئين المخ معًا.

5. There are two halves or hemispheres, in our brain. ٥. يوجد جزئين أو نصفين فى دماغنا.

6. **The left hemisphere** of the brain controls the right side of the body.

   ٦. الشق الأيسر من المخ يتحكم فى الجانب الأيمن من الجسم.

7. **The right hemisphere** of the brain control the left side of the body.

   ٧. الشق الأيمن من المخ يتحكم فى الجانب الأيسر من الجسم.

8. More people use their right hand to write with.

   ٨. كثير من الناس يستخدمون يدهم اليمنى فى الكتابة.

9. Some people who are left-handed are very creative and artistic.

   ٩. بعض الناس عسر الأيدى (يستخدمون اليد اليسرى) يكونوا مبدعين وفنانين / لديهم حس فنى.

10. The left hemisphere is important for math, science and solving problems.

    ١٠. الشق الأيسر من المخ هام فى العمليات الحسابية والعلوم وحل المشكلات.

11. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

    ١١. نستخدم الشق الأيمن فى الأنشطة الإبداعية مثل الرسم والموسيقى.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. What does the brain stem do ?
- It joins the two parts of the brain.

Practice 2. What part of the brain controls our senses and thoughts ?
....

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the brain and its importance. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن المخ وأهميته

II Language

1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

★ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

Formation التكوين



ex - We usually play tennis on Friday.
- My grandparents sometimes use a computer.

ex - Rodina/Ali sometimes listens to the radio.

لاحـظ أن:

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex - Marwa usually plays tennis on Fridays.

٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :

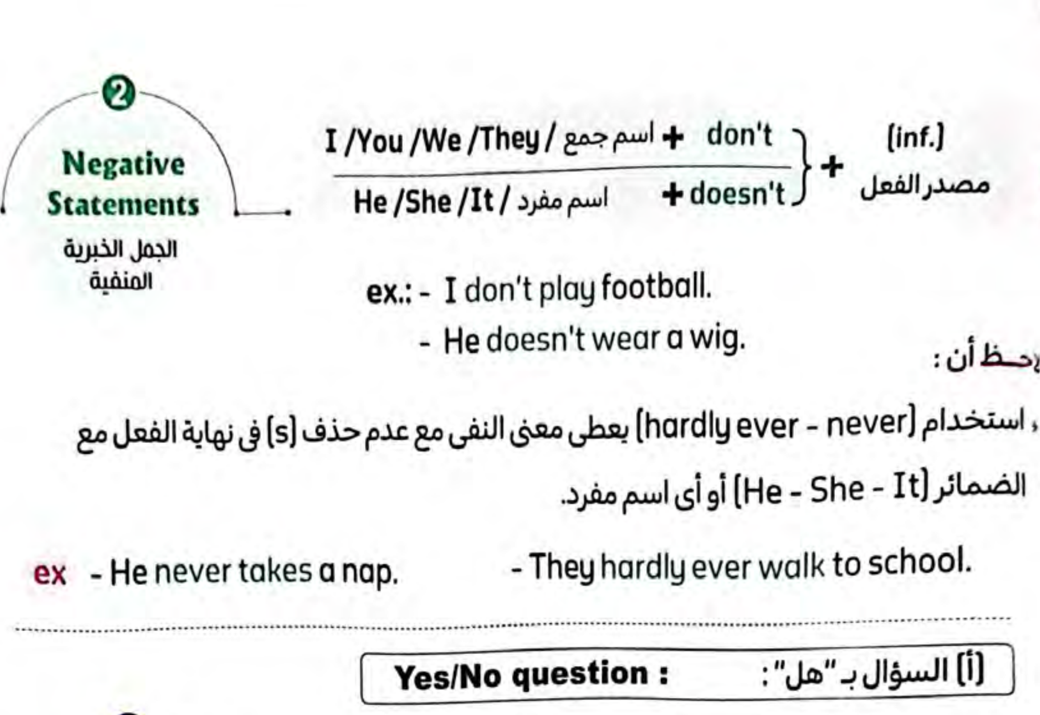
ex - My brother often watches TV after lunch.

٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيًا بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :

ex - Amal always studies hard for her exams.

Key words كلمات دالة

always	دائمًا	usually	عادة	often	غالبًا
sometimes	أحيانًا	never	أبدًا		



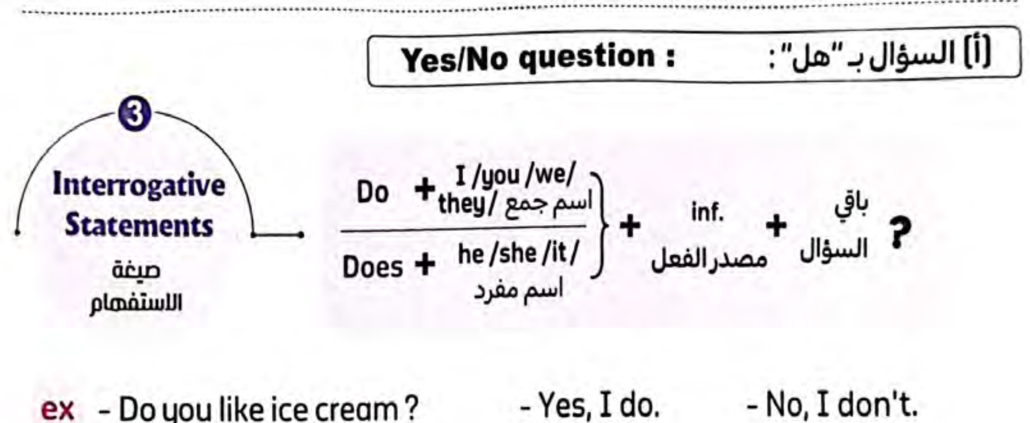
ex.: - I don't play football.
- He doesn't wear a wig.

لاحظ أن :

• استخدام (hardly ever - never) يعطى معنى النفى مع عدم حذف (s) فى نهاية الفعل مع الضمائر (He - She - It) أو أى اسم مفرد.

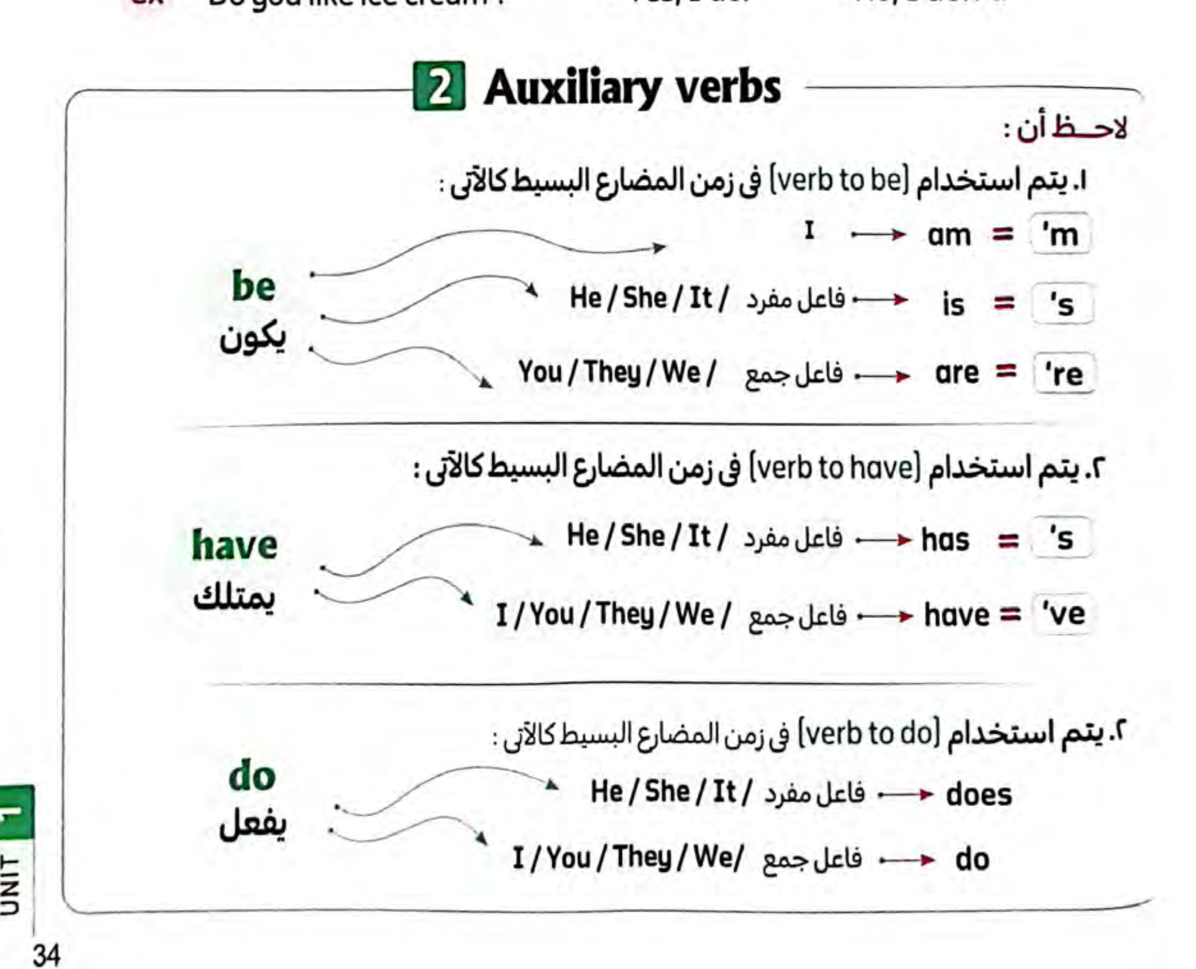
ex - He never takes a nap. - They hardly ever walk to school.

Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :



ex - Do you like ice cream? - Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

2 Auxiliary verbs





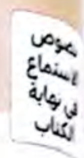
Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They .... tired.
   a. be b. is c. are d. can
2. I .... one brother.
   a. has b. have c. do d. am
3. We .... cookery in class.
   a. are b. do c. does d. is
4. Adam .... to the park every week.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. is going
5. .... he usually play at noon ?
   a. Does b. Do c. Is d. Are
6. I .... eat pizza.
   a. doesn't b. isn't c. don't d. aren't
7. Hany .... his bag every day to school.
   a. carries b. carry c. carrying d. is carrying
8. Do you have a jacket ? Yes, I ....
   a. does b. am c. do d. don't
9. An adult brain .... about 1400 grams.
   a. weigh b. weighs c. weighing d. weighed
10. I .... to school every day.
    a. goes b. going c. go d. went
11. Every minute, about one liter of blood .... through the brain.
    a. flowing b. flow c. flows d. flow
12. Mom .... to tidy the kitchen.
    a. want b. wants c. don't want d. to want
13. The main parts of the brain .... important jobs.
    a. has b. had c. have d. having
14. The brain stem .... the two parts of the brain.
    a. joins b. join c. joining d. joined

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises on Lesson 3



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mom wants to tidy the ....
   a. kitchen   b. lounge   c. bedroom   d. balcony
2. My brother wants to .... and play in the park.
   a. draw   b. paint   c. move   d. run
3. I want to do something ....
   a. creative   b. happy   c. noisy   d. easy
4. I would like to .... a picture.
   a. buy   b. draw   c. see   d. sell

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She .... three sisters.
   a. have   b. has   c. do   d. is
2. It .... Friday, so there's no school.
   a. is   b. are   c. do   d. does
3. Our brain .... our body.
   a. control   b. controls   c. controlling   d. controlled
4. Let's .... to the park.
   a. go   b. goes   c. went   d. going

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. play – We – after – tennis – school.

   ....

2. like – I – draw – a picture – would – to.

   ....

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

art – left – hemispheres – right

The brain is the most important organ of the body. There are two halves, or (1)...................... , in our brain. The (2)...................... hemisphere is important for math, science, and solving problems. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as (3)...................... and music.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Our brain is the most important organ of the body. It controls how we move, what we remember, and the choices we make. An adult brain weighs about 1400 grams. About 75% of the brain is made up of water. Our brain uses about 20% of the oxygen and blood in your body. Information travels from your body to your brain at 240 - 420 kilometers per hour. When you're awake, your brain makes enough electricity to power a small light bulb.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The gereral idea of the text is the ....

a. electricity b. heart c. brain d. lungs

2. About 75% of the brain is made up of ....

a. juice b. water c. gas d. blood

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why is the brain the most important organ in our body ?

....

4. How heavy does an adult brain weigh ?

....

6 Write an email of FORTY (40) words about what you like to do at the weekend.

Your friend's name is Maged. Your name is Yasser and your email address is yasser@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is maged@gmail.com.

Guiding elements : creative - paint - practice - park

New Message – ☐ ×

To:

From :

Subject :

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 4 ▶ Parasports



I Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

Paralympic Games = Paralympics	دورة الألعاب البارالمبية (الألعاب الأوليمبية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)	silver medal	ميدالية فضية
		bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية
international	دولى - عالمى	champion	بطل رياضى
competition	مسابقة - منافسة	parasports	الألعاب الرياضية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
athletes	الرياضيين		
gold medal	ميدالية ذهبية	dedication	تفانٍ / إخلاص

Extra vocabulary

disabilities	إعاقات	national team	الفريق القومى
Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية	hard work	عمل جاد
World Championship	بطولة العالم	level	مستوى
Egypt Cup	كأس مصر	sitting volleyball	كرة الطائرة على الكراسى المتحركة
female	أنثى		
swimmer	سباح	New Zealand	دولة نيوزيلندا
runner	عدّاء - متسابق	Africa	قارة أفريقيا
race	سباق	Brazil	دولة البرازيل
opportunities	فرص	country	دولة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take place = happen	يحدث	the 2016 Rio Paralympics	دورة الألعاب البارالمبية ريو ٢٠١٦
take part in	يشارك فى		
take years	يستغرق سنوات	athletes with disabilities	الرياضيون ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
400-meter race	سباق ٤٠٠ متر		
get to	يصل إلى	(is) held	تُقام

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

II Listening and reading



Read and learn. اقرأ وتعرف.



Parasports

The **Paralympic Games** [1] is an **international** [2] **competition** [3] for **athletes** [4] **with disabilities** [5]. Like the **Olympics** [6], it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

Aya Ayman Abbas is a **swimming champion** [7] who has won the **Egypt Cup** [8] three times. She was the first **female** [9] Egyptian Paralympic **swimmer** [10] in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of **gold** [11], **silver** [12] and **bronze** [13] **medals** [14] in many different countries.



Aya Ayman Abbas

Mostafa Fathalla is a **runner** [15] who takes part in 100-meter, 200-meter and 400-meter races. He **joined** [16] the **national team** [17] in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in **the World Championship** [18] in New Zealand.



Mostafa Fathalla

[1] دورة الألعاب البارالمبية
[2] دولى
[3] مسابقة
[4] لاعبين رياضيين
[5] ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
[6] الألعاب الأوليمبية
[7] بطل فى السباحة
[8] كأس مصر
[9] أنثى
[10] سبَّاحة
[11] ذهبى
[12] فضى
[13] برونزى
[14] ميداليات
[15] عدَّاء
[16] انضمَّ
[17] الفريق الوطنى
[18] بطولة العالم

- دورة الألعاب البارالمبية هى مسابقة دولية للاعبين الرياضيين من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة. فهى مثل دورة الألعاب الأولمبية، تحدث كل أربع سنوات، وتقام فى دولة مختلفة كل مرة. دورة الألعاب الأولمبية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة هى مجال هام من مجالات الرياضة، ومصر لديها العديد من الرياضيين الذين يشاركون فى هذه المسابقات.
- آية أيمن عباس هى بطلة فى السباحة فازت بكأس مصر ثلاثة مرات. وكانت أول سباحة مصرية فى الألعاب البارالمبية فى ريو عام ٢٠١٦. فازت بالعديد من الميداليات الذهبية والفضية والبرونزية فى العديد من البلدان المختلفة.
- مصطفى فتح الله هو عداء يشارك فى سباقات ١٠٠ متر و ٢٠٠ متر و ٤٠٠ متر. انضم إلى المنتخب الوطنى فى مصر عام ٢٠٠٦ وشارك فى العديد من المسابقات الدولية وقد فاز بالعديد من الميداليات بما فى ذلك الذهبية فى بطولة العالم فى نيوزيلندا.

• Help your child read the text and learn about the athletes. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعلم عن اللاعبين الرياضيين.

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays **sitting volleyball** [19]. He took part in the 2016 Rio Paralympics, where the team won bronze. He has played with his team in Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions for Egypt.

Being a Paralympic or Olympic athlete takes years of **dedication** [20] and hard work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many **opportunities** [21] for everyone to take part and have fun **doing a sport** [22] they enjoy.

(19) كرة طائرة على الكراسي المتحركة
(20) تفاني
(21) فرص
(22) رياضة



Ahmed Abdel Fattah

- أحمد عبد الفتاح يلعب الكرة الطائرة على الكراسي المتحركة. شارك في دورة الألعاب البارالمبية ريو عام ٢٠١٦ حيث فاز الفريق بالميدالية البرونزية. لعب مع فريقه في أفريقيا والبرازيل وفازوا بالعديد من المسابقات الدولية لصالح مصر.
- أن تكون رياضيًا أولمبيًا لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة أو بطلًا أولمبيًا فذلك يتطلب سنوات من التفاني والعمل الجاد. لا يمكن للجميع الوصول إلى هذا المستوى ولكن هناك العديد من الفرص للجميع للمشاركة والاستمتاع بممارسة الرياضة التي يستمتعون بها.

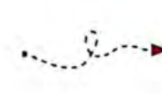
Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. How often is the Olympic Games held ?
- It's held every four years.

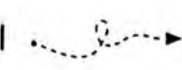
Practice 2. What sport does Mustafa Fathalla do ?
....

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

What do the three types of medals mean ?

1  a gold medal  1st winner (First place) 

2 a silver medal  2nd winner (Second place) 

3  a bronze medal  3rd winner (Third place) 

• Help your child read the words and identify what the types of medals mean.
• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الكلمات ويتعرف ماذا تعني أنواع الميداليات.

General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Paralympic .... is an international competition.
   a. Plays b. Puzzles c. Games d. Music
2. The Olympics takes place every .... years.
   a. two b. three c. five d. four
3. It is held in a different .... each time.
   a. village b. building c. country d. island
4. Egypt has many .... who take part in these competitions.
   a. teachers b. athletes c. vets d. captains

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

competitions - team - class - Paralympics

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He took part in the 2016 Rio (1) .... , where the team won bronze. He has played with his (2) .... in Africa and Brazil. They have won many international (3) .... for Egypt.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. won – She – lots of – medals – gold.

....

2. won – Ahmed – medals – many – in summer.

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mark .... fruits and vegetables.
   a. like b. likes c. to like d. not like
2. Does she .... hard for the competitions?
   a. trains b. trained c. training d. train
3. I .... fun doing a sport.
   a. has b. having c. have d. to have
4. Sara .... work on Sundays.
   a. isn't b. don't c. wasn't d. doesn't

5 **Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-meter, 200-meter and 400-meter races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals including gold in the world championship in New Zealand.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mostafa Fathalla is a ....

   a. footballer b. runner c. swimmer d. jumper

2. Mostafa joined the national .... in Egyptian 2006.

   a. group b. club c. medals d. team

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What medal did Mostafa win in New Zealand ?

....

4. What races does Mostafa take part in ?

....

6 **Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

A swimming champion

Guiding elements :

1. Who is Aya Ayman Abbas ?
2. How many times has she won Egypt Cup ?
3. What medals has she won ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5&6

- Writing paragraphs
- Project



I Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

exercise	يتدرب / تدريب	unhealthy habits	عادات غير صحية
healthy diet	نظام غذائى صحى	summer camp	معسكر صيفى
mental	عقلى	physical	بدنى / جسدى

Extra vocabulary

routine	نظام يومى	active	نشيط
hard	صعب / شاق	fat	دهون
range	سلسلة / مجموعة	sugar	سكر
tips	نصائح	clear	واضح
especially	خصوصًا	unimportant information	معلومات غير هامة
video games	ألعاب فيديو	mixture	خليط
nervous system	الجهاز العصبى	aged	ذو عمر / سن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
organise	ينظم	organised	find	يجد	found
develop	ينمى	developed	drink	يشرب	drank
summarize	يلخص	summarized	choose	يختار	chose
stay	يبقى	stayed	write	يكتب	wrote
try	يحاول	tried	give	يعطى	gave
			learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them. - ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It is a good idea	إنها لفكرة جيدة	full of	ملئ بـ
do exercise	يقوم بالتدريبات الرياضية	as well	أيضًا
easy for	سهل لـ	sitting still for a long time	الجلوس بدون حركة لفترة طويلة
on hot days	في الأيام الحارة	make friends	يكون صداقات
plan for	يخطط لـ		

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



How to start an exercise routine ?
كيف تبدأ التمرين بشكل روتيني؟



Starting an exercise routine is hard, but it's a good idea to try to do some exercise three to five times a week. It's easier if you find a sport you enjoy doing, perhaps something you can do with friends. Find a time that is easy for everyone in your family.

- البدء في التدريبات بشكل روتيني أمر صعب ولكنها فكرة جيدة أن تحاول القيام ببعض التدريبات من ثلاثة إلى خمس مرات في الأسبوع. فمن الأسهل أن تجد رياضة تستمتع بالقيام بها. ربما شيئًا يمكنك القيام به مع أصدقائك. قم بإيجاد وقت يكون مناسبًا لكل فرد في عائلتك.

Tips for a healthy diet نصائح لنظام غذائي صحي



Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food, with lots of vitamins and minerals. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat, and fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of water, too, especially on hot days.

تناول الطعام المناسب هام جدًا لصحتنا. نحن بحاجة إلى قائمة بمجموعة من أنواع مختلفة من الطعام تحتوي على الكثير من الفيتامينات والمعادن. لا ينبغي أن نتناول الكثير من السكر أو الدهون كما أن الفاكهة والخضراوات هي خيارات صحية. أنه من المهم شرب الكثير من الماء أيضًا خاصة في الأيام الحارة.

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the text and read it. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويقرأه.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Unhealthy habits عادات غير صحية

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

إنه من الممتع أن تلعب ألعاب الفيديو بعض الوقت. ولكن من الجيد أن تكون نشيطًا أيضًا. الجلوس ثابت لفترة طويلة ليس جيد لصحتك. في بعض الأحيان يأكل الناس وجبات خفيفة غير صحية بكميات كبيرة عند مشاهدة التليفزيون أو اللعب على جهاز الكمبيوتر. حاول ألا تنمي عادات غير صحية.

Tips to have a good diet

- A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water.
- Our brain needs water to work well.
- Fruit and vegetables have a lot of fiber, vitamins and minerals that our skin, muscles and bones need.
- Protein in fish, cheese, eggs and nuts helps us grow.
- Fats in nuts, oily fish and butter are good for our nervous system.
- Carbohydrates like bread, rice and pasta give us energy.
- Too much sugar in cakes and sweets isn't good for us.

- يشمل النظام الغذائي الجيد على الكثير من الطعام الطازج وكمية وفيرة من المياه.
- يحتاج مخنا إلى الماء كي يعمل بشكل جيد.
- الخضروات والفاكهة بها الكثير من الألياف، الفيتامينات والمعادن التي تحتاجها البشرة و العضلات و العظام.
- البروتينات في ا لاسماك والجبن والبيض والمكسرات تساعدنا كي ننمو.
- الكربوهيدرات مثل الخبز الأرز والمكرونة تعطينا طاقة.
- الكثير من السكريات في الكيك والحلوى ليست جيدة لنا.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▸ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Carbohydrates give us ....
   a. life b. energy c. plastic d. metals
2. Bread, rice and pasta contain ....
   a. carbohydrates b. proteins c. vitamins d. minerals
3. What would you like to .... for lunch ? - Some meat and rice.
   a. give b. have c. drive d. ride
4. We need fats for a healthy .... system.
   a. nervous b. moving c. respiratory d. circulatory

II Writing skill

1 How to choose a title for a text

A. You need to summarize what it is about in a quick and clear way.
فأنت تحتاج إلى تلخيص ما يدور حول النص بطريقة سريعة وواضحة.

B. You don't need any extra or unimportant information.
أنت لا تحتاج إلى أى معلومات إضافية أو غير هامة.

C. It's good if you can make the title funny or interesting, too.
من الجيد أن تستطيع جعل العنوان مضحكًا أو ممتعًا أيضًا.

2 How to write a paragraph

A paragraph contains :

A a topic (the introduction) sentence introduces the topic.
جملة المقدمة تطرح الموضوع.

B main (body) sentences give more information.
جمل رئيسية تعطى تفاصيل أكثر عن الموضوع.

C a conclusion sentence finishes the paragraph.
جملة ختامية تنهى الفقرة.

The title → Summer camp !

1 The topic sentence (introduction) → To lead a healthy life, we need a mixture of physical and mental activities.

2 Main sentences (body) → Physical activity is good for your body. It makes our muscles strong and helps us use up the calories we get from food. Mental activities are good for our brain. When you draw, paint, write, or play an instrument, you really focus on the creative activity, so you relax.

3 The conclusion sentences → Come to our three-day summer camp. Play sports and learn new skills. Make friends and have fun !



Notes for parents

1. Help your child know how to choose a title for a text.
2. Help your child learn how to write a paragraph.

· ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يختار عنوانًا لنص ما.
· ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيفية كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the – camp – long – summer – How – is ?

....

2. shouldn't – eat – We – sugar – too much.

....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

vitamins - diet - water - eat

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food with lots of (1)...................... and minerals. We shouldn't (2)...................... too much sugar or fat. Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of (3)...................... , too, especially on hot days.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits. It's important to drink lots of water, especially on hot days.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You .... sit still for a long time.

a. should   b. shouldn't   c. would   d. have

2. Try not to develop .... habits.

a. funny   b. healthy   c. unhealthy   d. good

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What should you do on hot days ?

....

4. Is it good to be active ?

....



UNIT 1

1 Reading comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية العامة للنص).

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special, liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our body.

شرح الحل بعد قراءة كل الجمل نلاحظ أنها تدور حول :

the digestive system

- The text is about ....
- The main / general idea of the text is about ....
- The text talks about ....
- What's the main idea of the text? What's the text about ?

a. the digestive system　　b. the bones
c. the respiratory system　　d. the muscles

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

Starting an exercise routine is hard, but it's a good idea to try to do some exercise three to five times a week. It's easier if you find a sport you enjoy doing, perhaps sometimes you can do with friends. Find a time that is easy for everyone in your family.

- The text is about ....

or The main / general idea of the text is about ....

or The text talks about ....

or What's the main idea of the text? What's the text about ?

a. doing homework　　b. playing games
c. exercise routine　　d. healthy diet

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال الكتابة معرفتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (وجبة صحيه) و (عادات غير صحيه) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Healthy diet	▸ Write the meaning : سكر .... دهون .... سلسلة .... ماء .... صحى .... فيتامينات	▸ Complete the sentences : 1. Fruit and vegetables are .... choices . 2. We need a .... of different kinds of food. 3. We shouldn't eat too much .... 4. It's important to drink lots of	▸ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "Healthy diet" ....
Unhealthy habits	العاب فيديو .... نشيط .... غير صحى .... يطور/ينمى .... عاده .... جيد	1. Try not to .... unhealthy habits. 2. It's good to be .... 3. Sometimes people eat more .... snacks. 4. Playing video games is an unhealthy	▸ Write an email using the sentences : "Unhealthy habits" ....



3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل لتساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Digestive system	digestive system	We use our digestive system to digest what we eat and drink.
	swallow	We chew and swallow food.
	stomach - liquid	In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients.
	bodies - energy	Our bodies need nutrients and energy.
Respiratory system	respiratory system	We use our respiratory system when we breathe.
	nose	We breathe in air through our nose.
	lungs - oxygen	In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood.
	heart - blood	Our heart pumps blood around our body.
Skeleton	skeleton - bones	Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body.
	organs - protect	Bones make us strong and protect our organs.
	muscles	Muscles are attached to our bones.
Our senses	understand	Our senses help us understand the world around us.
	smell	We smell with our nose.
	eyes - ears	We use our eyes to see. We use our ears to hear.
	tongue - skin	We taste with our tongue. We touch with our skin.
Our brain	control	Our brain controls how we move, what we remember and the choices we make.
	main - areas	The three main areas of the brain are the cerebrum, the cerebellum and the brain stem.
	cerebrum	The cerebrum controls our senses, thoughts, how we speak, and our memories.
	cerebellum	The cerebellum controls movement and balance.
	stem	The brain stem joins the two parts of the brain.
	two halves	There are two halves, or hemispheres in our brain.
	left hemisphere	The left hemisphere is important for math, science, and solving problems.
	right hemisphere	We use the right hemisphere in creative activities.
A healthy diet	right food	Eating the right food is very important for our health.
	sugar - fat	We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fat.
	fruit - vegetables	Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices.
	water	It's important to drink lots of water.



Skills 4 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Digestive system

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink.[1] We put food in our mouth.[2] We chew and swallow food.[3] We chew food with our teeth.[4] Then, it goes to our stomach.[5] In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.[6]

2 Braille code

People who are blind or cannot see well can use Braille.[7] It has different combinations of dots.[8] They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word.[9] People touch the dots with their fingers.[10] So, they are using the dots to find out what they mean.[11] Braille was invented by Louis Braille.[12]

3 The Paralympic Games

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities.[13] It takes place every four years.[14] It is held in a different country each time.[15] Parasports is an important area in sports.[16] Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.[17] Being a Paralympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work.[18]

4 A healthy diet

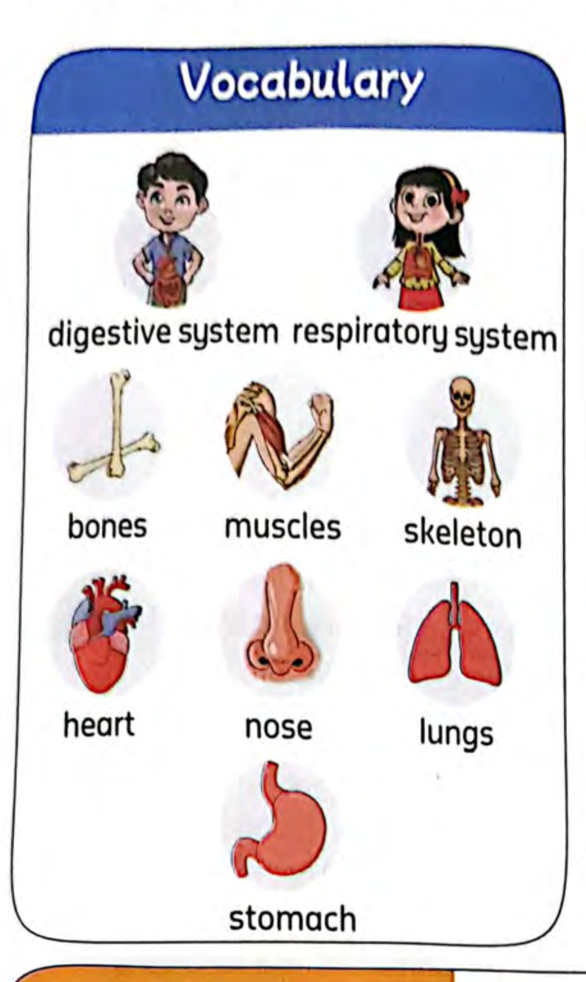
We all need to follow a good diet to stay healthy.[19] A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink.[20] Our brain needs water to work well.[21] We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals.[22] We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones, and teeth.[23] We should eat plenty of protein, too, as this helps us grow.[24]



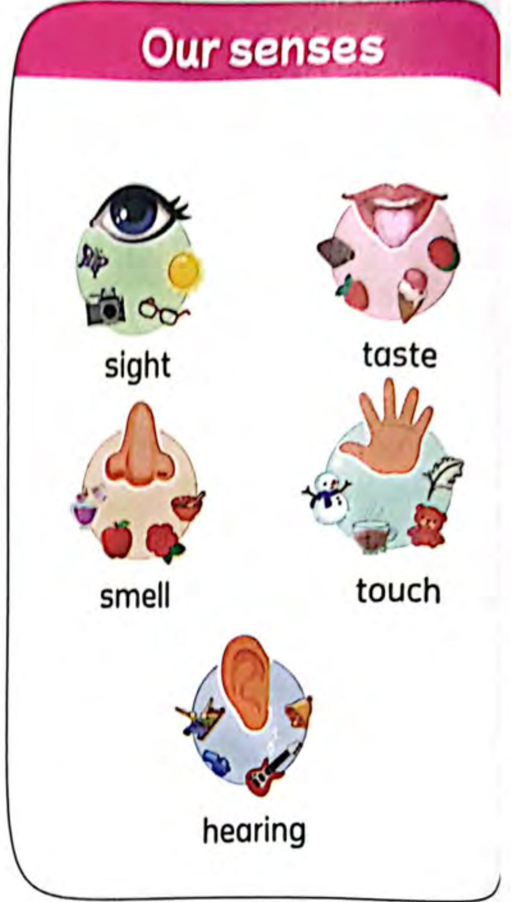
Review on unit 1

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الأولى فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary



Our senses



Language

Present Simple Tense

	Singular subj.	Plural subj.
Affirmative	Subj. الفاعل + inf. + s / es / ies He plays football.	Subj. الفاعل + التصريف الاول للفعل - We watch TV at night.
Negative	Subj. + doesn't + inf. She doesn't like tea.	Subj. فاعل + don't + inf. - They don't go swimming.
Interrogative	• Does + subj. + inf... ? * Does Nada play tennis ? - Yes, she does. * What does she do ? - She writes stories.	* Do + subj. + inf. ? * Do you like oranges ? - Yes, I do. - No, I don't. * What do children do at weekends ? - They play games at weekends.



Test 1 on Unit 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Bones .... our organs.
   a. destroy b. protect c. provide d. change
2. .... are attached to our bones.
   a. Teeth b. Muscles c. Eyes d. Rips
3. Muscles .... and turn our bones to make us move.
   a. lift b. change c. make d. pump
4. Our .... is made up of all the bones.
   a. stomach b. lungs c. skeleton d. heart

2 Listen and complete.

1. We need fats for a healthy .... system.
2. Carbohydrates like bread give us ....
3. Too much sugar isn't .... for us.
4. Eat a good .... with fresh food, and you will be healthy.

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

system – digestive – lesson – respiratory

Sama : Good morning, Hana. How are you ?
Hana : Good morning, Sama. I'm fine, thanks.
Sama : It's our first school day in grade four.
Hana : Yes, I read the first English (1) ....
Sama : What is it about ?
Hana : It's about our digestive (2) ....
Sama : What does that system do ?
Hana : We use our (3) .... system when we eat and drink.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

People who are deaf or can't hear well can learn sign language. This is a language where we use our hands, faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language is different in each country. People use signs instead of hearing to understand what people are saying.

People who are blind or cannot see well can learn to read Braille which is a code using a different combination of 6 dots to make a letter, a punctuation mark or a word. People feel the dots with their fingers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Sign language is .... in each country.
   a. similar b. the same c. different d. national
2. Braille is a/an .... of dots.
   a. combination b. competition
   c. championship d. punctuation

B. Answer the following questions :

3. How many dots are used to make a letter ?

4. What do deaf people use instead of hearing ?

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Zeinab was bored.		
2. Grandpa wanted to be a vet.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Some .... make tables and chairs from wood.
   a. farmers b. mechanics c. artisans d. teachers
2. Grandpa was one of the .... makers.
   a. button b. train c. chair d. tent

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My teacher always .... us interesting projects to do.
   a. giving b. give c. gave d. gives
2. .... that robot have many uses ?
   a. Do b. Is c. Does d. Are
3. Tom usually .... to bed early on weekends.
   a. goes b. go c. going d. is going
4. I .... watching films on TV.
   a. like b. am liking c. likes d. is liking

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. need – we – Why – do – and – vitamins – minerals ?

2. often – We – play – tennis – school – after.

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

The Paralympic Games مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :
disabilities – Olympics – win – take part in

Test 2 on Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d. [Sharkia - Zagazig 2023]

1. Our .... are working all the time.
   a. tooth b. senses c. nose d. ear
2. We see with our ....
   a. ears b. nose c. mouth d. eyes
3. We .... with our ears.
   a. hear b. see c. eat d. play
4. We taste with our ....
   a. tongue b. hand c. leg d. hair

2 Listen and complete. [Cairo west - 2023]

1. Some people can't .... or hear.
2. People who are .... can learn sign language.
3. Sign language is a .... language.
4. There are .... versions of sign language around the world.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box. [Cairo 2023]

vitamins – diet – water – eat

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food with lots of (1) .... and minerals. We shouldn't (2) .... too much sugar or fat. Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of (3) .... , too especially on hot days.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below. [Minya - Matai 2023]

An ant went to the river to drink. It fell into the water and sank. A bird was sitting on its nest in the tree. The bird saw the ant and flew down with a leaf in its mouth. It picked up the ant on the leaf and put it on the ground. The next day a bird catcher came with nets. He tried to catch the bird. The ant saw him and bit him hard on his foot. The bird catcher shouted with pain and ran away.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The bird flew down with a .... in its mouth.
   a. leaf b. stick c. rock d. tree
2. The bird catcher .... with pain and ran away.
   a. sank b. picked c. tried d. shouted

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why did the ant go to the river?

....

4. Where was the bird sitting?

....

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False). (Giza - Haram 2023)

	T	F
1. Zeinab was happy on the second week of the holiday.		
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandparents.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Zeinab's grandpa was one of the ....
   a. engineers   b. tent makers   c. doctors   d. writers
2. Grandpa can't .... because his eyes aren't very good.
   a. draw   b. plant   c. drive   d. sew

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Omar always .... his hands before eating. (Cairo - Ain Shams 2023)
   a. washes   b. washing   c. wash   d. to wash
2. Our heart .... the blood around our body. (Aswan - Edfu 2023)
   a. pumping   b. pumps   c. pump   d. pumped
3. Amira .... go to school on Sundays. (Aswan - Aswan 2023)
   a. hasn't   b. aren't   c. doesn't   d. isn't
4. She .... in Cairo with her family. (Cairo - Zayton 2023)
   a. live   b. lives   c. living   d. live to

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. pumps – The – blood – body – all over – our– heart. (Fayoum - Etsa 2023)

....

2. your – studying – Does – like – history – friend ? (Beni Sueif - Wasta 2023)

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Respiratory system مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :
body - nose - lungs - oxygen - blood

....
....
....

(Sohag - Tema 2023)



Unit 2 Plants and animals

نباتات وحيوانات

Aims of Unit Two : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- understand the classification of animals.
  - أفهم تصنيف الحيوانات.
- learn about the importance of size in the animal world. - أتعلم عن أهمية الحجم في عالم الحيوان.
- form comparative and superlative adjectives, and adverbs.
  - أكون صيغة صفات المقارنة وصيغة التفضيل والظروف.
- read about invertebrates. - أقرأ عن اللافقاريات.
- use contrasting ideas. - أستخدم أفكار متناقضة.
- make a habitat report. - أقوم بعمل تقرير عن البيئات.

Lesson 1

▸ Vertebrates



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


feather ريشة

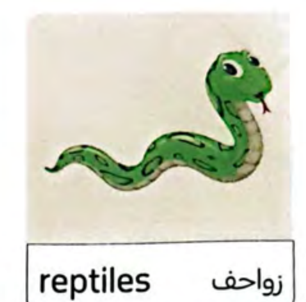

fur فراء


amphibians برمائيات


mammal ثدييات


backbone عمود فقري


gills خياشيم


reptiles زواحف


scales قشور


beak منقار


wings أجنحة


bat وطواط


fins زعانف

Extra vocabulary

vertebrates	الفقاريات	ostrich	نعامة	smooth	ناعم
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد	moist	رطب	saltwater	ماء مالح
freshwater	ماء عذب	wetlands	أراضي رطبة	whales	حيتان
habitat	موطن - بيئة	seal	فقمة / سبع البحر		
species	فصائل / نوع	warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
survive	ينجو - يبقى حيًا	survived	feed	يطعم	fed
move	يتحرك	moved	lay	يبيض	laid
discover	يكتشف	discovered	spend	يقضي	spent
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	give birth	تلد	gave birth

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

give birth to	تلد (تضع مولود)	feed their babies with milk	تُرضع صغارها اللبن
keep warm	يبقى دافئ	lay eggs	تضع البيض
such as	مثل	live on land	يعيش على الأرض

Note : A species of animal is a group of animals that are the same or very similar.
الفصائل من الحيوانات هي مجموعة من الحيوانات نفس النوع أو متشابهة جدًا.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d.

1. Fish have .... on their bodies
   a. fur   b. feathers   c. scales   d. hair
2. Birds have .... and wings.
   a. beaks   b. scales   c. fins   d. gills
3. The group of animals that are the same is called ....
   a. friends   b. parents   c. species   d. brothers
4. Bats can .... at night.
   a. walk   b. fly   c. run   d. crawl

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

How many types of animals lay eggs?

كم عدد أنواع الحيوانات التي تضع البيض؟

Vertebrates

Vertebrates[1] are animals with a **backbone**[2]. There are five different types of vertebrates.

1. Mammals

Mammals[3] have hair or fur on their bodies. They are **warm-blooded**[4]. They feed their babies with milk and most of them **give birth**[5] to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.



2. Reptiles

Reptiles[6] are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs, except snakes who don't have any. They don't have hair or fur. They have **scales**[7]. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.



[1] فقاريات
[2] عمود فقري
[3] ثدييات
[4] ذوات دم حار
[5] تلد
[6] زواحف
[7] قشور - حراشف

الفقاريات هي الحيوانات التي لها عمود فقري. هناك خمسة أنواع مختلفة من الفقاريات.

-الثدييات لديها شعر أو فراء على أجسامها. وهم من ذوات الدم الحار وترضع الثدييات صغارها اللبن ومعظمهم تلد الصغار. هم لا يضعون البيض. يعتبر البشر من الثدييات. معظم الثدييات تعيش على اليابسة، ولكن بعضها يعيش في البحر مثل الحيتان والفقمات (عجل البحر). الخفافيش هي الثدييات الوحيدة التي يمكنها الطيران.

- الزواحف من ذوات الدم البارد. هذا يعني أن عليهم قضاء بعض الوقت في الشمس للحفاظ على دفئهم. معظم الزواحف لديها أربعة أرجل ماعدا الثعابين ليس لديها أي أرجل. فهي ليس لديها شعر أو فراء. لديهم قشور. بالإضافة إلى أن كل الزواحف تضع البيض. أغلب الزواحف تعيش على اليابسة. بعض الزواحف يمكن أن تعيش في الأنهار أو البحر مثل السلحفاة المائية ولكنهم يخرجون إلى اليابسة ليضعوا البيض.

Notes for parents
- Help your child to listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.



3. Amphibians

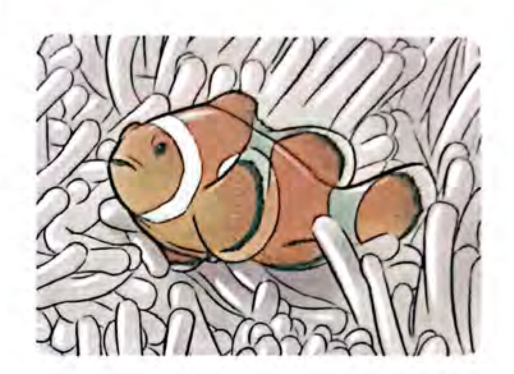
Amphibians[8] can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to **survive**[9]. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians , like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

[8] برمائيات
[9] يبقى على قيد الحياة
[10] يتنفس
[11] تضع البيض



4. Fish

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't **breathe**[10] air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.



5. Birds



Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds **lay eggs**[11] which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

٣. تستطيع البرمائيات العيش على اليابسة وفى الماء لكنها تحتاج إلى الماء أو موطن رطب للبقاء على قيد الحياة. البرمائيات من ذوات الدم البارد مثل الزواحف وهى تضع البيض. ومع ذلك ، تضع البرمائيات بيضها دائمًا فى الماء مثل الضفادع وضفادع الطين. لدي البرمائيات بشرة ناعمة وليس قشور ويمكنها استنشاق الأكسجين من خلال جلدها ورئتيها.

٤. تعيش الأسماك فى الماء تستنشق الأكسجين من خلال خياشيمها؛ لا يمكنهم تنفس الهواء. الأسماك من ذوات الدم البارد وتضع البيض. لدي الأسماك قشور. ويستخدمون الزعانف فى الحركة. يوجد الآلاف من الأنواع المختلفة من الأسماك فى كل البيئات المائية، المياه المالحة، المياه العذبة والأراضى الرطبة.

٥. الطيور من ذوات الدم الحار ولكن ليس لديها فراء ولا شعر. فجميع الطيور لديها ريش وجميعهم لديهم أجنحة. الطيور تضع البيض الذى يكون صلبًا. معظم الطيور تستطيع الطيران، لكن بعضها لا يستطيع. لدي الطيور مناقير والتى تتكون من العظام. وتملك الطيور مناقير لها أشكال مختلفة لأنها تأكل أطعمة مختلفة؛ بعض الطيور تأكل اللحوم، وبعضها تأكل المكسرات وبعضها تأكل البذور.

Read and identify. اقرأ ونعرف

Mammals



- have hair and fur.
- are warm-blooded.
- feed their babies with milk.
- don't lay eggs.
- live on land and in the sea.

Reptiles





- are cold-blooded.
- have 4 legs except (snakes).
- have scales.
- lay eggs.
- live on land, in rivers or seas.

Amphibians



- are cold-blooded.
- lay eggs.
- have smooth skin.
- don't have scales.
- take in oxygen through the skin and lungs.
- live on land and on water.

Fish





- live in saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.
- take in oxygen through their gills.
- are cold-blooded.
- use fins to move.
- have scales.
- lay eggs.

Birds







- have beaks and lay eggs.
- some eat meat, nuts or seeds.
- are warm-blooded.
- have feathers and wings.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

animals - vertebrates - types - backbone

Nourhan : How are you, Hamza ?

Hamza : Fine. I learned a lot from our lesson today.

Nourhan : What was it about ?

Hamza : It was about (1) ....

Nourhan : What are vertebrates ?

Hamza : They are animals with a (2) ....

Nourhan : How many (3) .... are there of vertebrates ?

Hamza : There are five different types.

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, amphibians are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. Amphibians can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs. Fish live in water, they are cold blooded and they lay eggs. They breathe through their gills. They have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in saltwater and fresh water habitats.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Fish use .... to move in water.
   a. legs b. gills c. fins d. arms
2. Amphibians can take in oxygen through their .... and lungs.
   a. skin b. ears c. eyes d. tongue

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where can amphibians live ?

   ....

4. How can fish breathe in ?

   ....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a - animals - are - with - Vertebrates - backbone.

....

2. hair - have - Mammals - on - bodies - their.

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. How .... types of animals lay eggs ? – There are five.
   a. often b. much c. many d. tall
2. Amphibians can .... on land and on water.
   a. lives b. live c. living d. lived
3. Birds .... have fur or hair.
   a. aren't b. hasn't c. doesn't d. don't
4. Frogs can take .... oxygen through their skin and their lungs.
   a. up b. in c. out d. of

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Reptiles

Guiding elements : cold-blooded - scales - lay eggs
turtles - warm - live in rivers

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2 ▸ Language





I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary


enormous ضخم

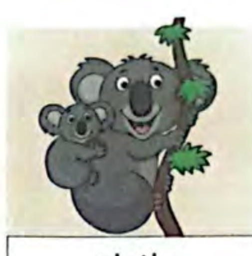

tiny ضئيل


ostrich نعامة


leopard فهد


chameleon حرباء


bee hummingbird طائر طنان النحل


sloth حيوان الكسلان


blue whale الحوت الأزرق

Extra vocabulary

Earth	كوكب الأرض	African elephant	الفيل الأفريقي	narwhal	الحوت ذو الناب
cheetah	الفهد الصياد	rainforest	غابة استوائية	Cuba	دولة كوبا
natural world	الطبيعة	scientist	عالِم	anaconda	ثعبان الأناكوندا
howler monkey	القرد العاوي	Asian elephant	الفيل الآسيوي	Papua New Guinea	مدينة بابوا (غينيا الحديثة)

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• up to 30 meters long	يصل إلى ٣٠ متر	• at about 12 meters	حوالي ١٢ متر
• the same size as	نفس الحجم مثل	• extremely strong	قوي للغاية

Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

Where does the biggest animal in the world live ?

أين يعيش أكبر حيوان في العالم ؟

Big and small

In the natural world, there are some **enormous**[1] animals, and some **tiny**[2] ones!

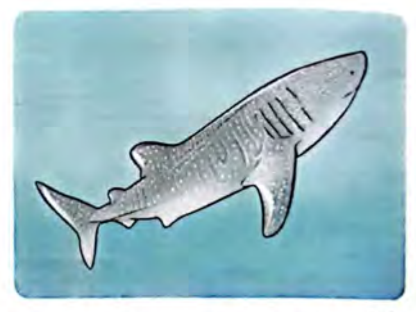


The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.



The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

The **whale shark**[3] is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.





The smallest bird is the **bee hummingbird**[4], which is about 5.5 centimeters long. It lives in Cuba. The biggest bird is the **ostrich**[5]. It can be 2.5 meters tall! Ostriches are faster than **leopards**[6], but they can't fly.

[1] ضخم [2] ضئيل الحجم [3] قرش الحوت [4] طائر طنان النحل [5] نعامة [6] فهد

In 2012, **scientists**[7] discovered a tiny **chameleon**[8] in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimeters long!

But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea. It's 7 millimeters long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.



[7] علماء
[8] حرباء

II Language

1 Comparative صيغة المقارنة

• عند المقارنة بين اثنين (شخصين - شيئين) أحدهما يزيد أو يقل عن الآخر في نفس الصفة القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد تستخدم :

(short adj. صفة قصيرة + er) + than

short adj. صفة قصيرة + er + than

- معظم الصفات → fast يضاف إليها → + er → faster
- المنتهية بـ → حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد big → يضاعف الحرف الأخير + er → bigger
- المنتهية بـ → صفة ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ (- e) مثل (nice) → يضاف للصفة (+ r) → nicer
- المنتهية بـ → صفة ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ (- y) مثل (heavy) → حول (- y) لـ (- i) وأضف (+ ier) heavier

Ants are stronger than humans.

The horse is bigger than the chameleon.

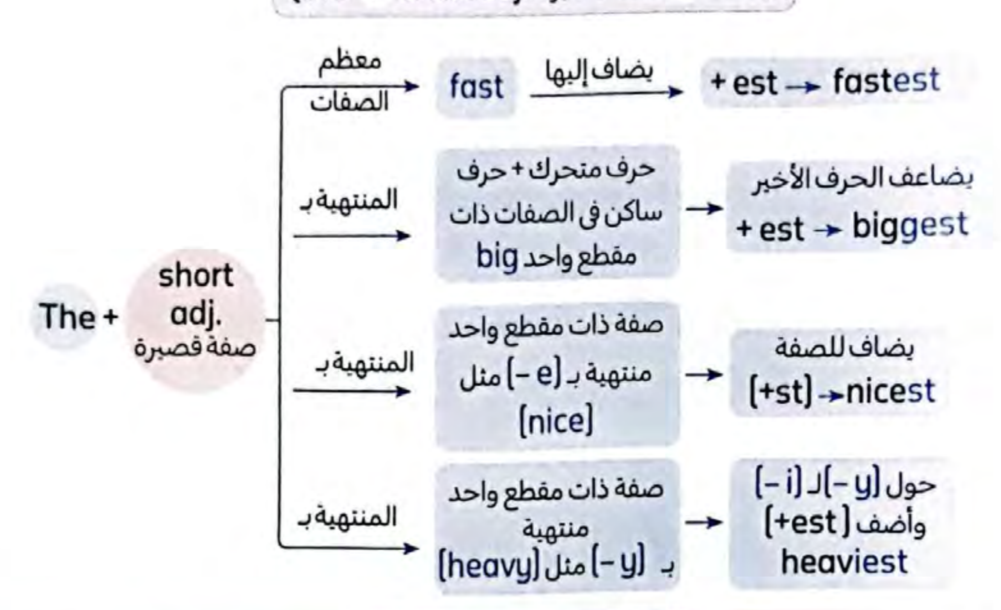
1. Help your child learn how to make comparative short adjectives.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكون صيغة المقارنة للصفات القصيرة.

2 Superlative صيغة التفضيل

• عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (واحد ومجموعة في صفة ذات مقطع واحد) نضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة (est):

(the + short adj. صفة قصيرة + est)




The African elephant is the biggest animal on land.


The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird.


The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The .... vertebrate is a frog in Papua New Guinea.
   a. smaller b. small c. smallest d. smaller than
2. The blue whale is .... than the whale shark.
   a. big b. biggest c. bigger d. the biggest
3. Ahmed is taller .... Ali.
   a. than b. then c. as d. the

Notes for parents

2. Help your child identify how to make a sentence using superlative adjectives.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية تكوين جملة باستخدام صفات التفضيل.

• Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

4. Ants are small, but they are ....

a. strongest b. strong c. as strong d. stronger

5. Who is .... person in your family?

a. the tallest b. taller c. tallest d. taller than

6. December is .... than June.

a. colder b. coldest c. the coldest d. cold

7. She bought .... cake in the bakery.

a. big as b. biggest c. bigger d. the biggest

8. He is the .... of four children.

a. as old b. older c. old d. oldest

9. The red bag is the .... one in the box.

a. heavy b. heavier c. heaviest d. heavier than

10. The plane goes .... the train.

a. fastest b. faster than c. fast d. the fastest

11. He is .... boy in our class.

a. thinnest b. thinner c. the thinnest d. thin as

12. Ayman is .... cleverest student.

a. than b. the c. then d. there

13. The black car is .... than the blue car.

a. cheaper b. cheap c. cheapest d. cheap as

14. Snakes are .... the turtles.

a. longest b. longer c. the longest d. longer than

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a bee – ostrich – An – is – than – hummingbird – bigger.

....

2. discover – did – When – scientists – a tiny – chameleon ?

....

3. than – slower – are – Sloths – giant tortoises.

....

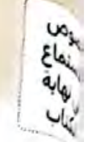
4. anacondas – Green – are – the heaviest – in – the world.

....

• Ask your child to read, order the words and write the sentences correctly.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب الكلمات ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة

General Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar.
   a. Doctors b. Engineers c. Scientists d. Vets
2. People think that chameleon is the .... reptile in the world.
   a. tallest b. biggest c. smallest d. highest
3. The .... is at just 30 millimeters long.
   a. snake b. chameleon c. lion d. elephant
4. This chameleon is bigger than a .... in Guinea.
   a. bird b. cat c. snail d. frog

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. fish – The whale – is – biggest – the – shark.

....

2. blue – big – is – How – whale – a ?

....

3 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c or d.

1. Ants are stronger .... humans.
   a. than b. then c. that d. there
2. The African elephant is .... than the Asian elephant.
   a. biggest b. big c. bigger d. the biggest
3. The blue whale is the .... sea animal in the world.
   a. biggest b. bigger c. big d. small
4. Cars are .... than bikes.
   a. fastest b. fast c. faster d. as fast

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones! The biggest animal on land is a mammal. It's the African elephant. The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....

a. blue whale   b. African elephant
c. Earth   d. world

2. The blue whale lives in the ....

a. forest   b. street   c. sea   d. desert

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the biggest animal on land ?

....

4. What is the text about ?

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Animals in the world

Guiding elements :

1. What is the biggest animal on land ?
2. What are the biggest animals in the sea ?
3. What is the biggest fish ?
4. What is the biggest bird ?

....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 3 ▶ Invertebrates





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


snail حلزون


squid حبار


crab كابوريا


grasshopper الجراد


invertebrates اللافقاريات


dragonfly حشرة اليعسوب


arachnid فصيلة العناكب

Extra vocabulary

protection	حماية	octopus	أخطبوط	insects	حشرات
shell	قوقعة	research	بحث	giant	ضخم
clue	مفتاح الحل	more than	أكثر من	amazing	رائع
Well done !	احسنت !	sea star	نجمة البحر	Atlas moth	حشرة عثّة الأظلس
mystery	لغز - غموض	have ..... back	يستعيد	jellyfish	قنديل البحر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
laugh	يضحك	laughed
finish	ينهي/ينتهي	finished
protect	يحمي	protected

Irregular

Present		Past
find out	يكتشف	found out
fly	يطير	flew
hide	يختبئ - يختفي	hid

 **Read and identify.** اقرأ ونعرف



What does Sami find out ? ماذا يكتشف سامي؟

"Dad, I don't know what to write for my project!" said Sami sadly. "I have to find out about some animals, but I don't know which animals to choose."

"Why don't you write about **invertebrates**[1]?" asked Sami's dad. "More than 90% of all animals are invertebrates."

"Good idea!" said Sami. "Can I look on the internet quickly to find out information, please?"

"Of course," said Dad.

- "Oh wow!" said Sami. "I've found a lot of information! Invertebrates are **cold-blooded**[2]. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for **protection**[3].Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid."



- "Do you have enough information for your project?" laughed Dad.
- "Oh yes!" said Sami. "Wait, I've found more! Some invertebrates, such as snails, have hard shells and move very slowly. Others are faster. Dragonflies can fly very fast. **Insects**[4] are also invertebrates. They have six legs. I think grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump more than a meter!" Did you know the spider is not an insect ? It has 8 legs and is called an arachnid. It can move very quickly.
- "Well done!" said Dad. "Have you finished your research? Can I have my cell phone back now, please ?"

(1) اللافقاريات
(2) ذوات الدم البارد
(3) حماية
(4) حشرات

يقول سامي بحزن "يا أبي، أنا لا أعرف ماذا أكتب لإعداد مشروعي المدرسي!" يجب أن أبحث عن بعض الحيوانات، لكن أنا لا أعرف أي الحيوانات أختار." يسأل والد سامي "لماذا لا تكتب عن اللافقاريات؟ أكثر من ٩٠٪ من الحيوانات هي لافقاريات. يقول سامي "فكرة جيدة!" "هل يمكنني البحث عبر شبكة الإنترنت بسرعة لإيجاد المعلومات، من فضلك؟" يقول الأب "بالطبع". يقول سامي "أوه، واو!" "لقد وجدت الكثير من المعلومات! اللافقاريات من ذوات الدم البارد. يعيشوا على الأرض وفي المياه. بعض اللافقاريات مثل الكابوريا، لديها قشرة صلبة للحماية. آخرون، مثل قنديل البحر، لديها أجسام لينة. بعض اللافقاريات تستطيع السباحة بشكل جيد للغاية مثل الأخطبوط والحبار". يضحك الأب، "هل لديك معلومات كافية لمشروعك؟ يقول سامي "أوه، نعم! انتظر، لقد وجدت المزيد من المعلومات! بعض اللافقاريات مثل القواقع لديها قوقعة صلبة، تتحرك ببطء شديد. الآخرين أسرع منها. يمكن أن يطير اليعسوب بسرعة كبيرة. الحشرات هي أيضًا من اللافقاريات. لديهم ستة أرجل. أعتقد حشرة الجراد أكثر حشرة مذهلة. يمكنهم أن يقفزوا أكثر من متراً. هل عرفت أن العنكبوت ليس حشرة؟ له ثمانية أرجل ويسمى حيوان عنكبوتي. يمكنه التحرك سريعًا جدًا. يقول الأب "أحسنت!" "هل انتهيت من البحث؟ هل يمكنني استعادة هاتفي المحمول الآن، من فضلك؟!"

• Help your child read the text and identify invertebrates. - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعرف على اللافقاريات.

II Language

Adverbs of manner ظروف الحال (الكيفية)

Usage : الاستخدام

To describe how something happens. نصف ظروف الحال كيف يحدث شئ ما.

• الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

adjective الصفة	**adverb** الظرف
Doctors help sick people. Rodina is happy. الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتي قبله أو بعد .(verb to be)	Snails move slowly. الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده.

Regular المنتظم

Adjective		Adverb	
bad	سيء	badly	بطريقة سيئة
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء
loud	عالٍ	loudly	بصوت عالٍ
quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة
slow	بطيء	slowly	ببطء
happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة
sad	حزين	sadly	بحزن
soft	ناعم	softly	بنعومة

Irregular غير المنتظم

Adjective		Adverb	
good	جيد	well	بشكل جيد
fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
hard	صعب	hard	بصعوبة
right	صحيح	right	بطريقة صحيحة

Formation : التكوين

• لتكوين الظرف نضيف (ly) للصفة المنتظمة.

slow → slowly   quick → quickly

• أما الصفات التى تنتهى بـ (y -) تستبدل (y -) بـــ (i) و نضيف (ly).

happy → happily   noisy → noisily   easy → easily

Notes for parents

• Help your child to identify how to form adverbs. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية تكوين الظرف (الحال).

• هناك صفات غير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي لا يضاف إليها (ly-) عند تحويلها إلى ظرف.

good → well

• هناك صفات تبقى كما هي عند تحويلها إلى ظرف (حال).

fast → fast   hard → hard   right → right   late → late



Pop Quiz on Language

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Salma walks .... She is tired.
   a. slow   b. slower   c. slowly   d. slowest
2. Rokaya is .... She has a new dress.
   a. happily   b. happy   c. happier   d. happiest
3. I could hear my neighbors shouting .... at each other.
   a. angry   b. angriest   c. angrily   d. anger
4. The teacher spoke ....
   a. quiet   b. quietly   c. quietest   d. as quiet
5. Dragonflies can fly very ....
   a. fast   b. fastly   c. fastest   d. as fast
6. My sister plays the piano ....
   a. good   b. better   c. well   d. best
7. He usually cuts my hair ....
   a. quick   b. quickly   c. quickest   d. quicker
8. The snail is a .... animal.
   a. slowly   b. slower   c. slow   d. as slow
9. Some spiders can hide very ....
   a. easy   b. easier   c. easily   d. as easy
10. My team is training .... for the next match.
   a. hard   b. hardship   c. hard   d. hardest
11. I can do this exercise ....
   a. easy   b. easier   c. easiest   d. easily
12. Toka is a very .... girl.
   a. clever   b. cleverly   c. cleverer   d. cleverest

• Ask your child to choose the correct word.

• اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Invertebrates are .... -blooded.
   a. cold b. warm c. tall d. high
2. Invertebrates live on .... and in water.
   a. sun b. moon c. sky d. land
3. .... have a hard shell.
   a. Crabs b. Octopuses c. Jellyfish d. Squids
4. Jellyfish have .... bodies.
   a. well b. good c. hard d. soft

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. hard – have – Crabs – shells – protection – for.

....

2. fly – can – Dragonflies – fast – very.

....

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

invertebrates – cold-blooded – dragonflies – vertebrates

Mohamed : Hello, Maged.
Maged : Hello, Mohamed.
Mohamed : I don't know what to write for my project.
Maged : Why don't you write about (1) .... ?
Mohamed : Good idea. Do you have some information about them ?
Maged : Yes. Invertebrates are (2) .... and they live on land and in water.
Mohamed : Can you give me some examples of invertebrates ?
Maged : Of course. Snails and (3) .... are invertebrates.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Invertebrates are animals without a backbone. They're cold blooded. They live on land and in water. Crabs are invertebrates. They have hard shells for protection. Others like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid. Snails are invertebrates, too. They have hard shells and move slowly. Others like dragon flies can fly very fast.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Crabs and .... are invertebrates.

   a. whales   b. fish   c. snails   d. horses

2. This text is about " .... ".

   a. vertebrates   b. healthy life   c. scales   d. invertebrates

B. **Answer the following questions :**

3. What does the underlined pronoun they refer to ?

   ....

4. Why are shells important for crabs ?

   ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Insects live in rainforests because they can find food ....

   a. easy   b. easily   c. easiest   d. as easy

2. She plays the drums ....

   a. fast   b. sad   c. bad   d. good

3. I tried .... , but I couldn't win the race.

   a. hard   b. as hard   c. hardness   d. hardest

4. I did .... in the test. I got 20%.

   a. badly   b. bad   c. good   d. well

6 Write an email of FORTY (40) words about insects and snails. Your name is Seif and your email address is seif@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Fady and his email address is fady@gmail.com.

Guiding words : invertebrates - backbone - slowly - spider

New Message

To:

From :

Subject :

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 4 ▶ CLIL : ART



Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

primary colors	ألوان أساسية	secondary colors	ألوان ثانوية
predator	مفترس	prey	فريسة

• Extra vocabulary

reproduce	يتكاثر	light	فاتح	bright	لامع - زاهى
pollen	حبوب اللقاح	shade	ظل	scene	منظر / مشهد
interesting	ممتع	coral reef	شعاب مرجانية	warning	تحذير
poisonous	مسمم / سام	underwater	تحت الماء	dark	غامق

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

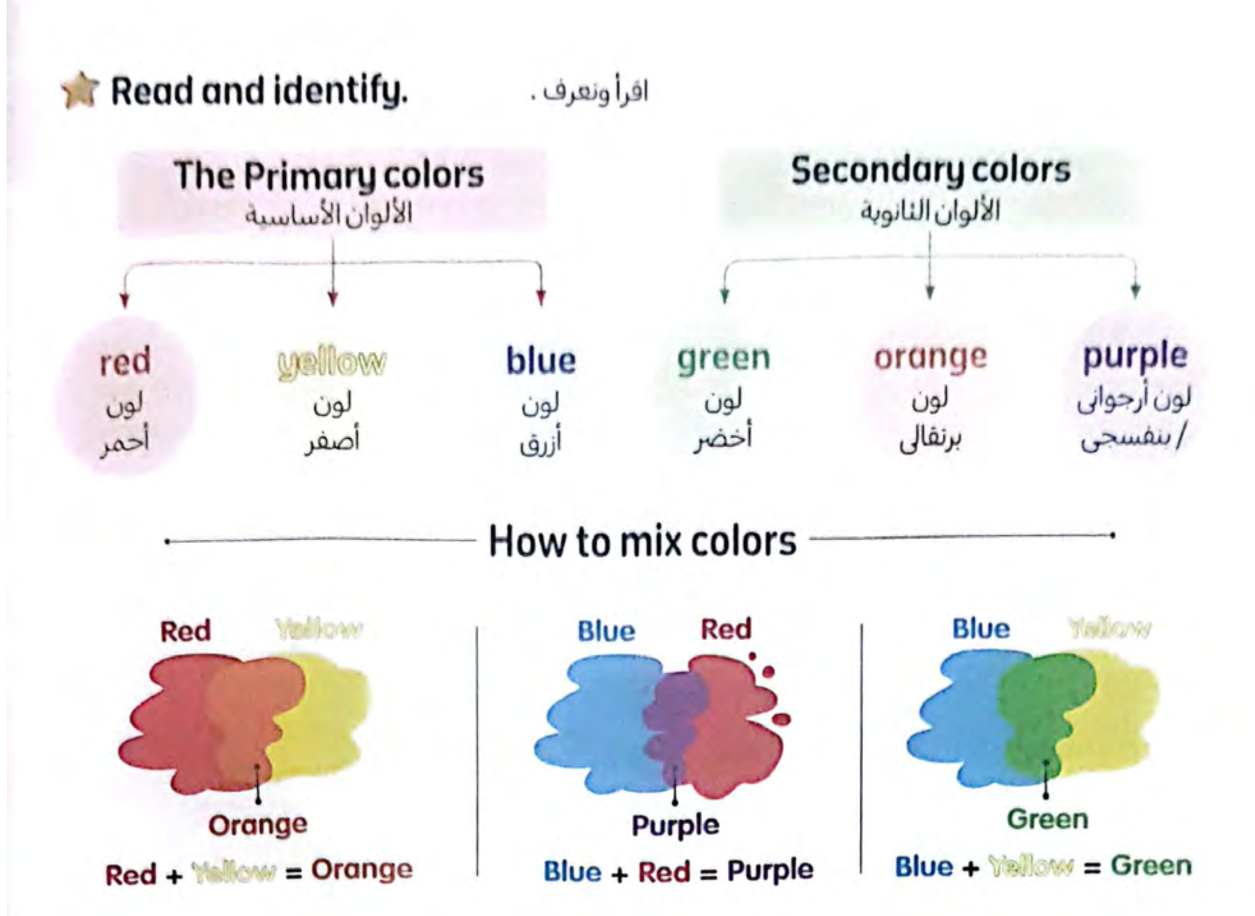
Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
hunt	يصطاد	hunted	hide	يختبئ	hid
mix	يخلط - يمزج	mixed	catch	يصطاد	caught
attract	يجذب	attracted	think	يفكر	thought

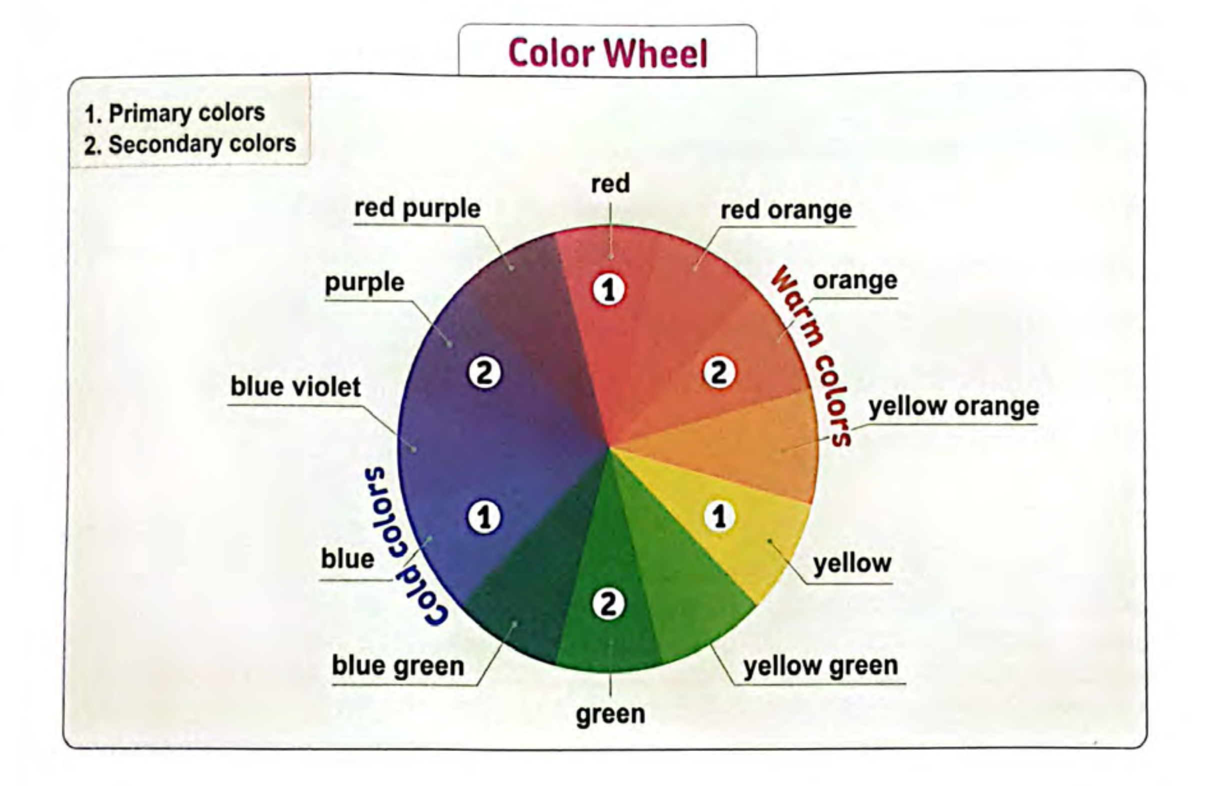
• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- in different colors بألوان مختلفة
- in between ما بين
- make green darker يجعل اللون الأخضر داكن أكثر
- types of أنواع من

Words	Definitions
predator	is the animal that hunts and eats other animals. هو الحيوان الذى يقوم باصطياد وأكل الحيوانات الأخرى
prey	is the animal that is caught and eaten. هو الحيوان الذى يتم صيده وأكله

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف .





• Help your child read and identify warm and cold colors.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الألوان الدافئة والباردة.

Warm colors : الألوان الدافئة 

are linked to "joy, strength, power, energy and passion"

الألوان الدافئة : مرتبطة بـ «المرح، القوة، الطاقة والعاطفة»

Cold colors : الألوان الباردة ●●●●●●

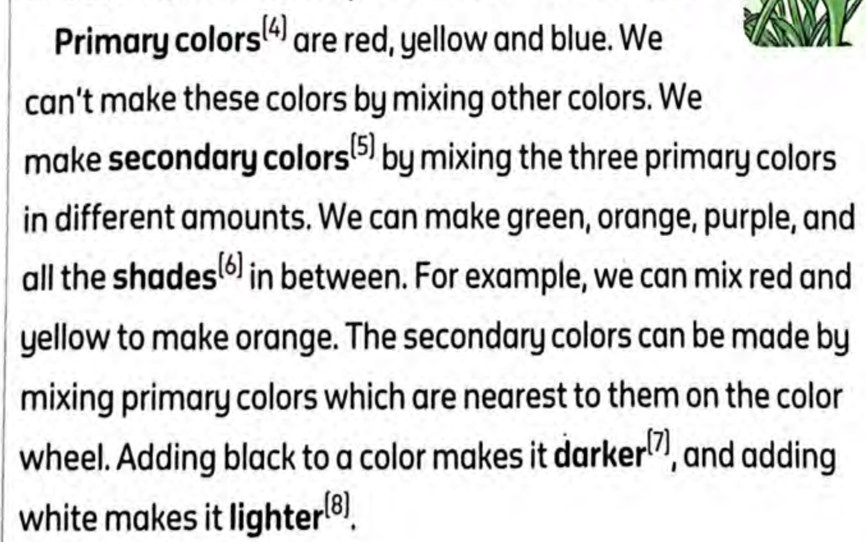
are linked to quietness, sweetness, rest and sadness"

الألوان الباردة : مرتبطة بـ «الهدوء، الجمال، الراحة والحزن»

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Why do flowers have bright colors ?

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The **bright flowers**[1] attract **insects**[2], which carry **pollen**[3] from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

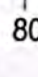


Primary colors[4] are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make **secondary colors**[5] by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the **shades**[6] in between. For example, we can mix red and yellow to make orange. The secondary colors can be made by mixing primary colors which are nearest to them on the color wheel. Adding black to a color makes it **darker**[7], and adding white makes it **lighter**[8].

[1] زهور زاهية اللون
[2] حشرات
[3] حبوب اللقاح
[4] ألوان أساسية
[5] ألوان ثانوية
[6] ظلال
[7] أغمق لوناً
[8] أفتح لوناً

لماذا تحتوى الزهور على ألوان زاهية؟

- يعتقد العلماء أن هناك ما يقرب من ٤٠٠ ألف نوع مختلف من النباتات. معظمها يحتوى على أزهار لها ألوان عديدة ومختلفة. تجذب الأزهار زاهية اللون الحشرات التى تقوم بنقل حبوب اللقاح من زهرة إلى أخرى. وهذا يساعد الزهور على التكاثر. فالألوان الأساسية هى الأحمر، الأصفر والأزرق. لا يمكننا صنع هذه الألوان بمزج ألوان أخرى. نصنع ألوانًا ثانوية عن طريق مزج الألوان الأساسية الثلاثة بكميات مختلفة. يمكننا صنع اللون الأخضر والبرتقالى والأرجوانى (البنفسجى) وكل الظلال بين درجات الألوان. على سبيل المثال، يمكننا أن نخلط الأحمر والأصفر لتكوين البرتقالى. الألوان الثانوية يمكن تكوينها عن طريق خلط الألوان الأساسية القريبة منها على عجلة الألوان. إضافة الأسود إلى أى لون يجعله داكنًا وإضافة الأبيض يجعله فاتحًا.



Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea ! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a **coral reef**[1], having bright colors can help fish to **hide**[2] from **predators**[3]. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish.
In addition, many predators don't eat **prey**[4] that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is **poisonous**[5].

[1] شعاب مرجانية
[2] يختبئ
[3] مفترس
[4] فريسة
[5] سام

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. Where can the fish hide from bigger fish ?
- In a coral reef.

Practice 2. Why do fish have bright colors ?

....

- هناك الكثير من الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام التى يمكنك أن تراها تحت سطح البحر! فبعض الأسماك لها ألوان زاهية جدًا وكذلك بعض النباتات. في الشعاب المرجانية ذات الألوان الزاهية يمكن أن تساعد الأسماك في الاختباء من الحيوانات المفترسة. فالمرجان لامع جدًا وله ألوان مختلفة لذلك يمكن للأسماك الاختباء من الأسماك الأكبر حجمًا. بالإضافة إلى أن العديد من الحيوانات المفترسة لا تأكل الفرائس ذات الألوان الزاهية. فممكن أن تكون الألوان الزاهية تحذيرًا من أن ذلك حيوان سام.



Pop Quiz on Reading

▶ Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. flowers – Why – do – have – color – bright ?

....

2. are – There – things – interesting – the sea - under.

....

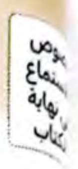
3. different – types – There – are – plants – of.

....

• Help your child look and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ النص

General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Scientists think that there are many different types of ....

   a. plants b. animals c. jobs d. places

2. Most plants have ...., which come in many different colors.

   a. birds b. animals c. flowers d. trees

3. The bright flowers .... insects.

   a. paint b. attract c. warn d. describe

4. .... carry pollen from one flower to another flower.

   a. Trees b. Colors c. Plants d. Insects

2 Listen and complete.

1. There are interesting things to see .... the sea.
2. Bright colors can help fish to .... from predators.
3. The coral is very .... and has different colors.
4. Many predators don't eat .... that are brightly colored.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. make – do – How – you – darker – green ?

   ....

2. to hide – help – fish – Bright – can – colors.

   ....

4 Read and complete the following dialogue with the words in the box.

pollen – attract – repel – reproduce

Rehab : Hi, Doaa. How many types of plants are there ?

Doaa : Hi, Rehab. There are nearly 400,000 different types of plants.

Rehab : Why do flowers have bright colors ?

Doaa : Because bright colors (1) .... insects.

Rehab : What do insects carry from one flower to another ?

Doaa : They carry (2) ....

Rehab : How do the insects help the flowers ?

Doaa : They help flowers to (3) ....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea ! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "hide" is the opposite of ....

   a. see b. bright c. appear d. warn

2. Many predators don't eat .... that are brightly colored.

   a. prey b. birds c. insects d. reptiles

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where can the fish hide from bigger fish ?

   ....

4. Why don't many predators eat animals that have bright colors ?

   ....

Lessons 5 & 6

- Writing
- Project



I Vocabulary

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد .

Key vocabulary

water lily	الزنبق المائي	disadvantages	عيوب
echolocation	تحديد الموقع بالصدى	macro-habitat	بيئة / موطن كبير
advantages	مميزات	micro-habitat	بيئة / موطن صغير

Extra vocabulary

soil	تربة زراعية	bottom	قاع	flat leaf	ورقة شجر مسطحة
roots	جذور	surface	سطح	area	مساحة
stem	ساق نبات	on the top	على القمة	scientific	علمي

II Writing skill

How to link ideas in your paragraph

Learn and identify. تعلم وتعرف.

1. **In addition** بالإضافة → To add more information to the same idea.
لإضافة معلومات لنفس الفكرة.

- Water lily have brightly flowers. **In addition**, their roots spread under water.

2. **However** ومع ذلك → To show a change in topic.
لعرض فكرة مختلفة.

- Most plants grow in soil. **However**, some plants grow in water.

3. **On one hand ... on the other hand** من ناحية ... ومن ناحية أخرى →

To show two different points of view in the same topic.
لتوضيح وجهتين نظر مختلفتين في نفس الموضوع.

- On one hand computer games make children learn to solve problems, **on the other hand** they waste their time.

Notes for parents
- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم



Look, read and complete. انظر، اقرأ وأكمل.

on the other hand - In addition - However - On one hand

Most plants grow in soil. (1)..............., some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat leaf on the surface of the water, and a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. (2)..............., their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area. (3)..............., this can look pretty, but (4)..............., it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.



- تنمو أغلب النباتات في التربة. ومع ذلك بعض النباتات تنمو في الماء مثل زنبق الماء. فهم لديهم ورقة شجر عريضة مسطحة على سطح الماء وساق طويلة والتي تصل إلى قاع البحيرة. فهذه النباتات لها زهور ألوانها زاهية والتي تنتج بذور تطفو على سطح الماء. بالإضافة إلى أن الجذور تنتشر تحت الماء ويمكنها أن تغطي مساحة كبيرة من الماء. فمن ناحية، إنها تبدو جميلة المظهر ولكن من ناحية أخرى، إنها يمكن أن تسبب صعوبة للحيوانات الأخرى والنباتات أن تعيش تحت الماء.



Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Water lily plants

Advantages	Disadvantages
• They have brightly colored flowers. • They can look pretty.	• They make seeds which float on water. • Their roots spread under the water and they can cover a very large area of water. • Their roots can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

• Help your child look, read and complete the text using the words in the box.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدمًا الكلمات في المربع.
• Help your child read and identify the advantages and disadvantages of the water lily plant.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على مميزات وعيوب نبات زنبق الماء.

Zoos

Advantages	Disadvantages
• Zoos protect endangered animals. • Zoos are places of scientific research. • People can see and learn about wild animals. • تحمى حدائق الحيوان الحيوانات المهددة بالخطر. • حدائق الحيوان أماكن لعمل الأبحاث العلمية. • تستطيع الناس أن ترى وتتعلم من الحيوانات.	• Animals are kept in the "wrong" habitats. • Animals are separated from their family groups. • Animals aren't free to live a natural life. • Animals can become stressed and unhappy. • تحفظ الحيوانات في البيئات الخاطئة. • تنفصل الحيوانات عن عائلاتها. • لا تكون الحيوانات حرة لتعيش الحياة الطبيعية. • يمكن أن تصبح الحيوانات مضغوطة وغير سعيدة.



Pop Quiz on Writing

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Zoos

Guiding elements :

• advantages • disadvantages • separated • research

....

....

....

....

....

★ **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

- When we study the natural world, we find animals and plants living together in a habitat. Vertebrates, invertebrates and plants all need each other and they work together to survive.



- عندما ندرس العالم الطبيعي، نجد الحيوانات والنباتات تعيش سويًا في الموطن. الفقاريات، اللافقاريات والنباتات جميعهم يحتاجون بعضهم البعض ويعملون سويًا للبقاء على قيد الحياة.

- Large habitats, or macro-habitats, are forests, deserts, and grasslands.



- البيئات الكبيرة هي الغابات، الصحاري، والمراعي الخضراء.

- A micro-habitat is a small area such as a pond or a tree.

- البيئة الصغيرة هي منطقة صغيرة مثل بركة أو شجرة.

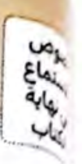
★ **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

Animals and plants that live in the micro-habitats.

pond بركة		cave كهف		tree شجرة	
dragonfly	حشرة اليعسوب	bat	خفاش	butterfly	فراشة
fish	سمك	snake	ثعبان	monkey	قرد
frog	ضفدع	lizard	سحلية	bird	طائر
snail	حلزون	spider	عنكبوت	squirrel	سنجاب
water lily	زنبق الماء				
crab	كابوريا				

Note : Some animals and plants can belong to more than one habitat.
- يمكن لبعض الحيوانات أن تنتمي لأكثر من بيئة.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Most mammals live on ....
   a. desert b. sky c. sea d. land
2. Dolphins live in the ....
   a. sea b. desert c. land d. forest
3. Bats live in trees or ....
   a. caves b. houses c. temples d. nests
4. Bats can fly very fast ....
   a. at midday b. at night
   c. in the morning d. in the afternoon

2 Listen and complete.

1. Zoos are places of .... research.
2. People can learn about .... animals in zoos.
3. Animals are kept in the .... habitats.
4. Animals aren't free to live a natural ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

flowers - difficult - roots - flat

Water lily grows in water. It has a large, (1) .... leaf on the surface of the water. It has a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. It has brightly colored (2) .... Its (3) .... spread under the water. They can cover a very long area. This can look pretty.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. to survive - work - and - Animals - plants - together.

....

2. cover - can - Water lily - large - area - a very.

....



5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

A water lily grows in water and has a long stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. It has brightly colored flowers and it makes seeds which float on water. It has roots that spread under the water, and it can cover a very large area.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....

   a. water lily   b. water   c. lakes   d. roots

2. A water lily has a .... stem.

   a. big   b. long   c. small   d. hard

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where does the stem reach ?

   ....

4. Where does the water lily grow ?

   ....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Water lily

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

advantages - disadvantages - float - seeds

....

....

....

....

....

....



Skills

UNIT 2 | 1 Reading comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى كلمة أو عبارة.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة فى تحديد معنى الكلمة، اقرأ النص جيدًا وخمن المعنى.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a **moist** habitat to survive. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have **smooth** skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

شرح الحل تقرأ الفقرة جيدًا لتحديد معانى الكلمات المستهدفة :

* ناعم smooth   رطب moist

1. The underlined word "**smooth**" is the meaning of the word..................... .
   a. short   b. hard   c. soft   d. big
2. The underlined word "**moist**" has the same opposite as ....
   a. wet   b. dry   c. heavy   d. juicy

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

In 2012, scientists discovered a **tiny** chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimeters long! But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea. It's 7 millimeters long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered. It's really **amazing.**

1. The underlined word "**ting**" means very ....
   a. short   b. small   c. tall   d. big
2. What does the underlined word "**amazing**" mean?
   a. ugly   b. boring   c. wonderful   d. bad

Skills

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال الكتابة معرفتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [الحيوانات] و [الزنبق المائى] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Animals	▶ Write the meaning : اكبر .... ثدييات .... فيل .... ضئيل الحجم .... حوت .... كوكب الارض	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. The biggest animal on land is a .... 2. The blue .... lives in the sea. 3. The African .... is bigger than the Asian elephant. 4. There are some enormous animals, and some .... ones.	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "Animals" ....
The water lily	مسطح .... جذور .... يطفو .... تربة .... سطح .... ماء	1. Most plants grow in .... 2. The water lily has large, ... leaves. 3. Water lily seeds .... on water. 4. Water lily grows in	▶ Write an email using the sentences : "The water lily" ....



3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل لبساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Vertebrates	vertebrates	Vertebrates are animals with a backbone.
	mammals	Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies.
	humans - bats	Bats are the only mammals that can fly.
	reptiles	Most reptiles don't have hair or fur. They have scales.
	eggs	All reptiles lay eggs.
	amphibians	Amphibians have smooth skin.
	cold-blooded	They are cold-blooded and lay eggs in water.
	habitat	Amphibians need water or a moist habitat to survive.
	fish - scales	Fish have scales. They use fins to move.
	breathe - gills	Fish can't breathe air. They take in oxygen through their gills.
	birds	Birds don't have hair or fur. They have feathers.
	wings - beaks	Birds have wings and beaks.
	birds - blooded	Birds are warm-blooded and lay eggs.
Invertebrates	cold-blooded	They are cold-blooded.
	land - water	They live on land and in water.
	hard shell	Some invertebrates have a hard shell for protection, like crabs.
	soft bodies	Others have soft bodies, like jellyfish.
	move - slowly	Some invertebrates move very slowly, like snails.
	fly - fast	Others fly very fast, like dragonflies.
Water lily	soil	Most plants grow in the soil.
	water lily - water	Water lily grows in water.
	flat - leaves	It has large, flat leaves on the surface of the water.
	stem	It has a long stem that reaches to the bottom of the lake.
	brightly - flowers	It has brightly colored flowers.
	roots - spread	Their roots spread under the water and cover a very large area.

Skills



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Invertebrates

Invertebrates don't have backbones.[1] They are cold-blooded.[2] They live in the sea but some live on land.[3] Some have soft bodies and some have hard shells.[4] Some invertebrates can swim and some can walk.[5] Arachnids are not insects.[6]

2 Mammals

Most mammals live on land, but some mammals such as whales and dolphins live in the sea.[7] However, bats are the only mammals that can fly.[8] Bats live in groups in trees or caves.[9] They sleep during the day and hunt for food at night.[10] They can fly very fast at night because they can see using a special skill called echolocation.[11] In addition, bats are helpful to humans and the environment.[12]

3 What animals do to protect themselves

There are many animals that can protect themselves.[13] Some invertebrates have a hard shell for protection.[14] Some animals such as bears have big teeth and claws to protect themselves.[15] Some have poisonous bites, such as snakes and some spiders.[16] Birds can fly away to protect themselves.[17] Other animals can run fast.[18]

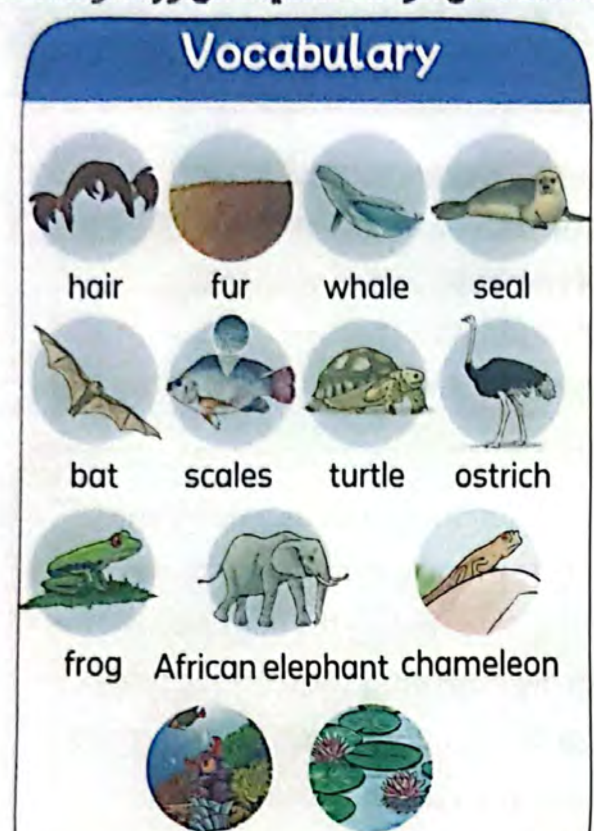
4 Having a pet

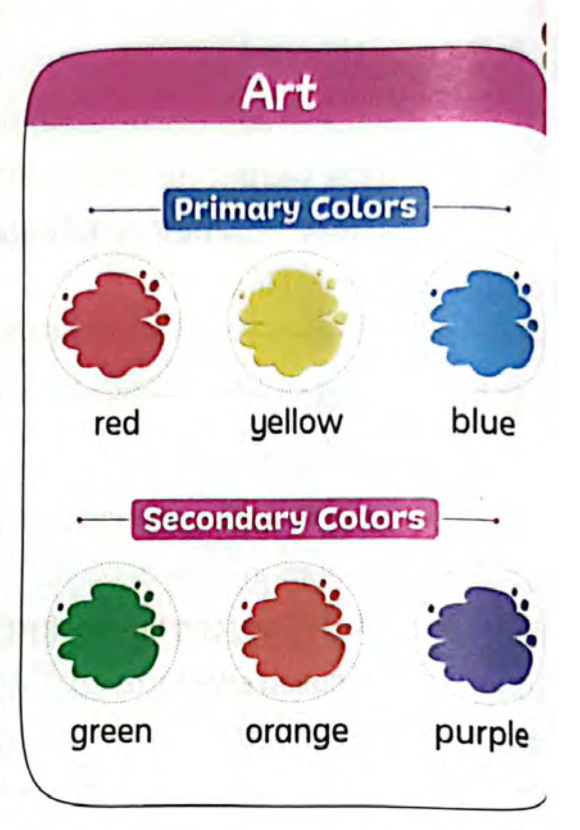
It's fun to watch pets.[19] It's good to learn about how to look after them.[20] You can learn about their species.[21] Some animals such as dogs need to walk.[22] They need a lot of care and attention.[23] It can be expensive to have a pet.[24]



Review on unit 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية فى ورقة واحدة





Language

1 Comparative adjectives

short adj. + er + than

- The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.



2 Superlative adjectives

the + short adj. + est

- A frog is the smallest vertebrate.



3 Adverbs of manner ظروف الحال (الكيفية)

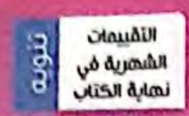
Usage : الاستخدام

To describe how something happens.

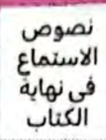
ف ظروف الحال كيف يحدث شئ ما.

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى.

adjective الصفة	adverb الظرف
Doctors help sick people.	Snails move slowly.
Rodina is happy.	الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتى بعده.
الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتى قبله أو بعد (verb to be).	



Test 3 on Unit 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Reptiles are .... - blooded.
   a. hot b. warm c. cold d. cool
2. Reptiles have to spend time in the .... to keep warm.
   a. sun b. water c. sea d. lake
3. Reptiles have four legs and ....
   a. hair b. scales c. fur d. fins
4. Reptiles come to land to .... their eggs.
   a. drink b. lay c. eat d. have

2 Listen and complete.

1. Mammals have .... or fur on their bodies.
2. Mammals are .... - blooded.
3. Mammals .... their babies with milk.
4. Mammals don't .... eggs .

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

colors - animals - doing - fastest

Israa : What are you doing, Nada ?
Nada : I'm (1) .... research.
Israa : What is it about ?
Nada : It is about (2) .... and birds.
Israa : What is the (3) .... animal ?
Nada : It is the cheetah.
Israa : Is it dangerous ?
Nada : Of course.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats. Salt water, fresh water and wetlands.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
   a. fins b. tails c. scales d. gills
2. Fish use .... to move.
   a. scales b. fur c. fins d. gills

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Can fish breathe air?

....

4. What are different water habitats?

....

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa is an engineer.		
2. Zeinab's friends are very clever.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Zeinab and her .... visited the shop.
   a. father b. mother c. grandmother d. grandfather
2. Grandpa likes sewing .... and geometric patterns.
   a. sun flower b. lotus flower c. rose d. daisy

6 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed is .... than Waleed.
   a. strong b. strongest c. stronger d. as strong
2. The snake is .... than the ant.
   a. longer b. longest c. long d. the longest
3. Summer is the .... season of the year.
   a. hot b. hotter c. hottest d. hotter than
4. My father is the .... person in my family.
   a. tall as b. taller c. tall d. tallest

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. lay – in water – Amphibians – their – eggs.

....

2. discovered – Scientists – a tiny – chameleon.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Birds

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements: warm-blooded - fur - hair - feathers

....

....

....

....

Test 4 on Unit 2

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d. (Cairo 2023)

1. The .... elephant is the biggest mammal on land.
   a. African b. American c. European d. Asian
2. The African elephant is .... than the Asian elephant.
   a. older b. bigger c. smaller d. taller
3. The blue whale is a/an ....
   a. bird b. amphibian c. mammal d. reptile
4. The whale shark is .... than the blue whale.
   a. bigger b. older c. taller d. smaller

2 Listen and complete. (Cairo 2023)

1. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
2. Fish are .... and they lay eggs.
3. Fish use .... to move.
4. There are thousands of different .... of fish.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box. (Beni Suief 2023)

whale – meters – Where – wall

Asmaa : What type of animal is the biggest animal in the world ?
Teacher : The biggest animal in the world is a mammal.
Asmaa : (1) .... does it live ?
Teacher : It lives in the sea.
Asmaa : How long is it ?
Teacher : It can be up to 30 (2) .... long.
Asmaa : Is it the whale shark ?
Teacher : No, it's the blue (3) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below. (Cairo - Madiant Nasr 2023)

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some mammals live in the sea. The mammals that live in the sea include whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mammals have hair or ....
   a. beaks b. fins c. fur d. feathers
2. Whales and seals are ....
   a. reptiles b. mammals c. amphibians d. birds

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where do most mammals live ?
   ....
4. What are the only mammals that can fly ?
   ....

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False). T F

1. Grandpa's eyes are very good now. ☐ ☐
2. Lobna invents things all the time. ☐ ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... said, "I wish I could sew and help you."
   a. Zeinab b. Lobna c. Doha d. Rasha
2. When grandpa was young, he wanted to be a/an ....
   a. engineer b. doctor c. singer d. pilot (Giza 2023)

6 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Turtles are .... than the lizards. (Assuit - Abo Teeg 2023)
   a. slowest b. slow c. slower d. slowly
2. The ant is one of the .... insects. (Giza - Omrania 2023)
   a. small b. smaller c. smallest d. as small
3. The whale shark is a .... fish. (Qalyoubia - Obour 2023)
   a. bigger b. big c. biggest d. bigger than
4. The ostrich is .... than the leopard. (Fayoum - Itsa 2023)
   a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. very fast

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the – blue – The – whale – in – sea – lives. (Giza - Atfeh 2023)

....

2. the biggest – is – the world – What – animal – in ? (Minya - Edwa 2023)

....

8 Write an email of FORTY (40) words about amphibians. Your name is Tarek. Your friend's name is Tamer. And your email address is tarek@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tamer@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements: live - land - water - survive - reptiles

New Message – ☐ ✕

To:

From :

Subject :

....

....

....

....

....

....

(Cairo - El-Marg 2023)



Unit 3 My world
عالمى

Aims of Unit Three : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- understand what makes a community.
  - أفهم ما يكّون المجتمع.
- understand and use possessive forms.
  - أفهم وأستخدم صيغ الملكية.
- learn about the history of Egypt.
  - أتعلم عن تاريخ مصر.
- form and use regular and irregular past simple verbs.
  - أكون وأستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة والغير منتظمة.
- read about the governorates of Lower and Upper Egypt.
  - أقرأ عن محافظات الوجه البحري والقبلى من مصر.
- read about the development of farming.
  - أقرأ عن تطوير الزراعة.
- learn about Egyptian folk music.
  - أتعلم عن الموسيقى الشعبية المصرية.
- make a tourist information guide.
  - أعد دليل معلومات سياحية.

Lesson 1 ▶ My Community



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

community	مجتمع	sports club	نادى رياضى
neighborhood	حى (مكان الإقامة)	citizenship	المواطنة
neighbors	جيران	mixture	مزيج / خليط

• Extra vocabulary

group	مجموعة	street	شارع	activities	أنشطة
shop	محل (متجر صغير)	ideas	أفكار	society	مجتمع
city	مدينة كبيرة	weather	الطقس	village	قرية
games	ألعاب	kind	عطوف / طيب	cousin	ابن / ابنة (العم/الخال)
fair way	طريقة عادلة	clothes	ملابس	polite	مهذب
civilization	حضارة	helpful	متعاون	tourists	سائحون

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
believe	يؤمن/يصدّق	believed	include	يشمل/يتضمن	included
share	يشارك	shared	behave	يتصرف	behaved
act	يؤدى/يفعل	acted			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

part of	جزء من	What is special about ... ?	ما المميز عن ... ؟
good for	جيد بالنسبة لـ	look after	يعتنى بـ
work hard	يعمل بجد		
close to	بالقرب من		

Read and identify these definitions. اقرأ وتعرف.

Word	Definition
community مجتمع	a group of people who live together in the same area and share activities and ideas مجموعة من الناس يعيشون معًا فى نفس المنطقة ويتشاركون فى الأنشطة والأفكار
neighborhood حى	the streets, houses, shops and schools close to where you live الشوارع والمنازل والمحلات والمدارس القريبة من المكان الذى تعيش فيه
citizenship المواطنة	behaving in a way that helps your society أن تتصرف بطريقة ما لتساعد مجتمعك

Did you know ? هل تعلم؟

Egypt is one of the oldest civilizations on Earth. It became powerful over 5,000 years ago.

مصر واحدة من أقدم الحضارات على الأرض. أصبحت قوية منذ أكثر من ٥٠٠٠ عام.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

• **Choose the correct answer from a ,b, c or d.**

1. Our .... is the place close to where we live.
a. club b. neighborhood c. class d. supermarket

2. A group of people who live together in the same area are called ....
a. friends b. parents c. community d. clubs

3. When you help your society, that's good ....
a. citizenship b. exercise c. trip d. visit

4. We can do many water .... in the Red Sea.
a. studies b. homework c. activities d. meals

5. I do many sports in the sports ....
a. house b. hospital c. bank d. club

6. We have kind .... on the fourth floor.
a. neighbors b. parents c. tourists d. scribes

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ

My community



A **community**[1] is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your **neighborhood**[2]. It is a **mixture**[3] of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school.

There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I am part of the community at my sports club too.

When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good **citizenship**[4]. This means that you work hard to help other people, and **behave**[5] in a kind and **fair**[6] way. Good citizenship is a good part of being in a community.

I am always **polite**[7] and **helpful**[8] at school, and at my sports club.

[1] مجتمع
[2] حى
[3] خليط
[4] مواطنة
[5] يتصرف
[6] عادل
[7] مهذب
[8] متعاون

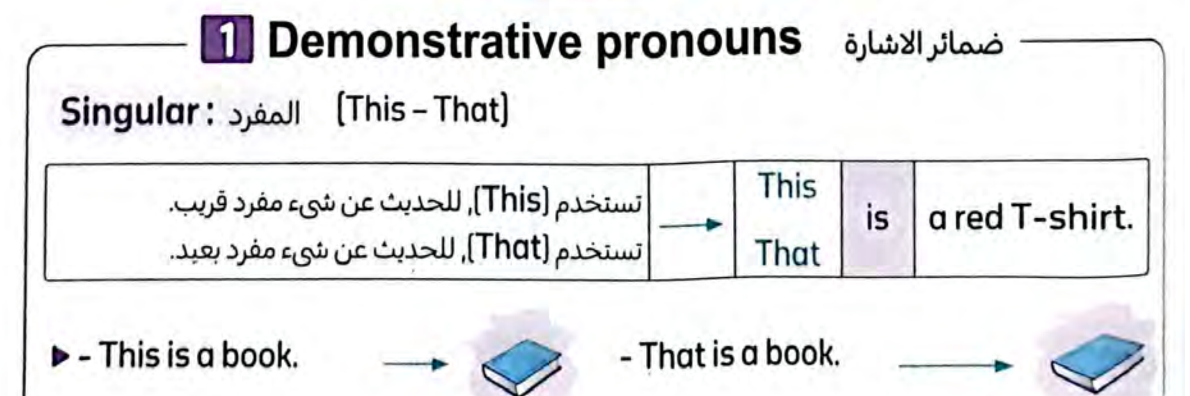
المجتمع هو مجموعة من الأشخاص يعيشون ويعملون سويًا فى نفس المنطقة. المجتمع هو أكثر من منزلك، عائلتك أو الحى الخاص بك. هو مزيج من الأشخاص والأماكن والأنشطة والأفكار. يشمل مجتمعى عائلتى، أصدقائى ومدرستى.

وهناك على الأرجح أماكن مهمة فى مدينتك أو قريتك غالبًا ما تزورها. يمكنك أيضًا أن يكون لديك مجتمع هناك. بالنسبة لى، أنا جزء من المجتمع فى النادى الرياضى الخاص بى أيضًا.

فعندما تتصرف بطريقة جيدة تجاه مجتمعك فهذه مواطنة جيدة. وهذا يعنى أنك تعمل بجد لتساعد الأشخاص الآخرون وتتصرف بطريقة لطيفة وعادلة. إن المواطنة الجيدة هى جزء جيد من كونك فى المجتمع. أنا دائمًا مهذبة ومتعاونة فى المدرسة وفى النادى الرياضى الخاص بى.

II Language

1 Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الاشارة



Singular : المفرد (This – That)

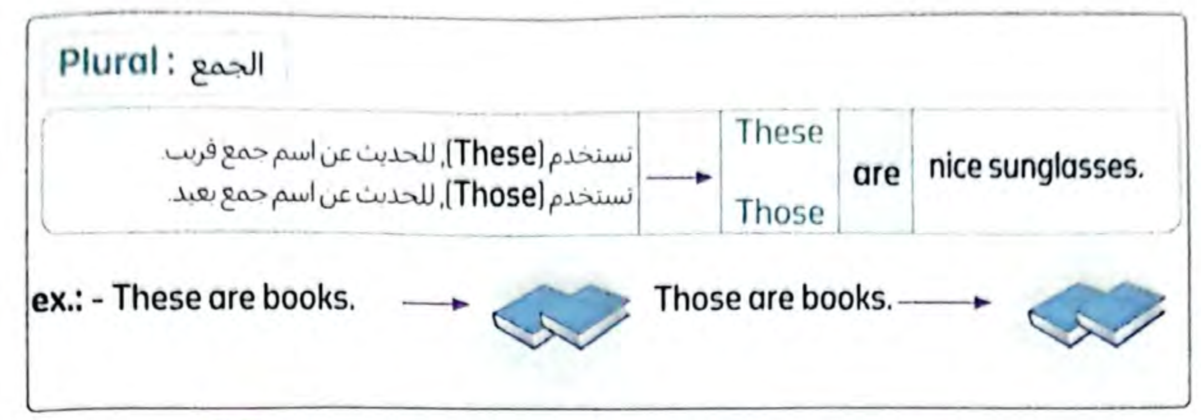
تستخدم (This)، للحديث عن شىء مفرد قريب. تستخدم (That)، للحديث عن شىء مفرد بعيد.	→	This That	is	a red T-shirt.

▶ - This is a book. →

- That is a book. →

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures, listen to the text and read it. ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع إلى النص ويقرأه.


Plural : الجمع

تستخدم (These) للحديث عن اسم جمع قريب. تستخدم (Those) للحديث عن اسم جمع بعيد.	→	These Those	are	nice sunglasses.

ex.: - These are books. → Those are books. →

2 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية			Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	
تستخدم قبل الفعل		تستخدم قبل الاسم المملوك			تستخدم بدلًا من صفات الملكية والمملوك معًا ولا يأتى بعدها اسم	
I	أنا	my		ملكى	mine	ملكى
You	أنت/أنتم	your		ملكك/ملككم	yours	ملكك / ملككم
He	هو	his		ملكه	his	ملكه
She	هى	her	+ noun	ملكها	hers	ملكها
We	نحن	our		ملكنا	ours	ملكنا
They	هم	their		ملكهم	theirs	ملكهم
It	هو/هى لغير العاقل	its		ملكه/ملكها (لغير العاقل)	—	—


تستخدم ضمائر الملكية للتعبير عن ملكية شخص أو أشخاص لشئ معين.

- This book is mine. هذا الكتاب ملكى.



- This umbrella is hers. هذه الشمسية ملكها.


ضمائر الملكية غالبًا ما تأتى فى نهاية الجملة.

- That ice cream is mine! It isn't yours.

ذلك الآيس كريم ملكى! إنه ليس ملكك.



- That is his shirt. It's his. ذلك قميصه. إنه ملكه.

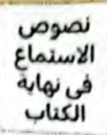


Pop Quiz on Language

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. They're Aya's running shoes. They are ....
   a. my b. mine c. her d. hers
2. This isn't my pencil. It's ....
   a. yours b. mine c. your d. our
3. .... uniform is blue and white.
   a. Her b. Hers c. She d. Yours
4. This is my cousin's house. It's ....
   a. him b. his c. my d. your
5. .... are their clothes.
   a. This b. That c. These d. It
6. Those shoes are ....
   a. her b. theirs c. they d. our
7. It's .... community. We live in it.
   a. his b. our c. ours d. their
8. There are twelve players in .... team.
   a. hers b. mine c. my d. yours
9. They're our bags. They're ....
   a. ours b. our c. mine d. her
10. It's Fares and Mustafa's neighborhood. It's ....
   a. hers b. his c. mine d. theirs
11. .... is my doll. It's mine.
   a. These b. That c. Those d. They

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A .... is a group of people who live together in the same area.
   a. citizenship b. community c. neighborhood d. city
2. My community includes my family, my .... and my school.
   a. friends b. sisters c. brothers d. cousins
3. A good .... is acting in a way that is good for your community.
   a. neighbor b. village c. citizenship d. community
4. I am always .... and helpful at school.
   a. polite b. ugly c. lazy d. angry

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

sports club - family - city - work

Nabil : Good morning, Mourad. Where do you live ?
Mourad : Good morning, Nabil. I live in a (1) ....
Nabil : Who do you live with ?
Mourad : I live with my (2) ....
Nabil : What are the places you can go at the city ?
Mourad : I can go to the (3) ....
Nabil : That's great !
Mourad : Yes, of course.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. That is my cat. It is ....
   a. his b. hers c. yours d. mine
2. I didn't believe .... story.
   a. her b. yours c. ours d. hers
3. .... boots look very expensive.
   a. They b. These c. That d. This
4. This .... a fun game.
   a. do b. have c. are d. is

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - a mixture - A community - people - of.

....

2. polite - helpful - I'm - and - school - at.

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your community

Guiding elements :

1. Where do you live ?
2. Who do you live with ?
3. What is special about your community ?
4. What things can you do ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2 ▸ The History of Egypt



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


pharaoh فرعون


hieroglyphs اللغة الهيروغليفية


scribe كاتب


tomb مقبرة


papyrus reeds عيدان نبات البردى


museum متحف


pyramid هرم

Extra vocabulary

history	تاريخ	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلي	Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
unite	يوحد	Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري	Ptolemy dynasty	سلالة البطالمة
interesting	ممتع / شيق	special	مميز / خاص		
BCE "Before the Common Era"	قبل الميلاد	powerful	قوى - ذو نفوذ	Old Kingdom	المملكة القديمة
		separate	منفصل	ink	حبر
Middle Kingdom	المملكة الوسطى	New Kingdom	المملكة الجديدة	ruling dynasties	السلالات الحاكمة
symbols	رموز	north	الشمال	south	الجنوب
main	أساسى - رئيسى	signs	علامات	script	مخطوطة / وثيقة
The Pyramid of Djoser	الهرم المدرج للملك زوسر				

Did you know ? هل تعلم؟

The Pyramid of Djoser is the oldest pyramid in the world. People started building it in about 2648 - 2627 BCE.

- يعتبر هرم زوسر أقدم هرم فى العالم. حيث بدأ الناس فى بناؤه منذ عام ٢٦٤٨ - ٢٦٢٧ قبل الميلاد.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
start	يبدأ	started	become	يصبح	became
flow	يتدفق	flowed	build	يبنى	built
rule	يحكم	ruled	mean	يعنى	meant
control	يتحكم	controlled	read	يقرأ	read
sail	يبحر	sailed	make	يصنع	made
join	ينضم / يتصل	joined	spend	يقضى	spent
die	يموت	died	write	يكتب	wrote

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at first	في البداية	at the time	في عصر / عهد
flow through	يمر / يتدفق من خلال	write down	يدون - يسجل
in about	في حوالي	work for	يعمل لدى
the Pyramid of Djoser	الهرم المدرج للملك زوسر	made from	مصنوع من
		near the Nile	بالقرب من النيل
know so much about	يعرف الكثير عن	flow out to sea	تتدفق إلى مياه البحر



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Follow the road .... when you go by car.
   a. signs b. stars c. clouds d. moons
2. Ancient Egyptians wrote in ....
   a. Arabic b. hieroglyphs c. English d. French
3. I saw many .... in the temple.
   a. schools b. tombs c. hospitals d. clubs
4. The .... were built of many big stones.
   a. Pyramids b. reeds c. boats d. cars
5. The ruler in Ancient Egypt was called a ....
   a. teacher b. doctor c. pharaoh d. nurse



II Reading

 **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

What are the three main parts of the history of ancient Egypt ?

Egypt is a **country**[1] with a very long and interesting **history**[2]. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE.

At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile **flows**[3] through the deserts of Africa. In about 3200 BCE, one **pharaoh**[4], Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

There are three main parts to the history of ancient Egypt :

the Old Kingdom	the Middle Kingdom	the New Kingdom
[2800 - 2200 BCE]	[2065 - 1775 BCE]	[1570 - 1098 BCE]

Important **dynasties**[5] controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

[1] دولة
[2] تاريخ
[3] يتدفق
[4] فرعون
[5] سلالات حاكمة

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. Mena joined the north and south to .... Egypt.
a. start b. divide c. unite d. mix

Practice 2. A dynasty was an important .... that ruled for many years.
a. person b. family c. pharaoh d. kingdom

مصر هى دولة ذات تاريخ طويل جدًا وممتع. بدأ الناس العيش بالقرب من النيل منذ حوالى ٩٠٠٠ عام، فى عام ٧٠٠٠ قبل الميلاد. فى البداية، كان هناك منطقتان منفصلتان. هى الوجه البحرى وكانت فى الشمال حيث يتقابل النيل مع البحر وصعيد مصر فى الجنوب، حيث يتدفق النيل عبر صحارى أفريقيا. فى حوالى ٣٢٠٠ قبل الميلاد، ضم أحد الفراعنة ويدعى مينا الجزئين لتوحيد دولة مصر. كانت مصر تتحكم فى نهر النيل حتى تستطيع القوارب أن تبحر فيه، لذلك أصبحت ذات نفوذ قوى.

يوجد ثلاثة أجزاء رئيسية لتاريخ مصر القديمة :

١- المملكة القديمة من عام ٢٨٠٠ إلى ٢٢٠٠ قبل الميلاد. ٢- المملكة الوسطى من عام ٢٠٦٥ إلى ١٧٧٥ قبل الميلاد.
٣- المملكة الحديثة من عام ١٥٧٠ إلى ١٠٩٨ قبل الميلاد.

سيطرت سلالات حاكمة هامة على مصر لسنوات عديدة. هذه العائلات الهامة هم من حكموا البلاد.

• Help your child look at the picture and read the text.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.



Listen, look and read. استمع، انظر واقرأ.

How do we know so much about the history of Egypt?
Egyptians[1] at that time used scribes to write down everything that happened. **Scribes**[2] were very important people. They worked for the **ruling dynasties**[3].

They wrote in **hieroglyphs**[4], which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from **papyrus reeds**[5].

[1] المصريين
[2] الكتبة
[3] الأسر الحاكمة
[4] اللغة الهيروغليفية
[5] أعواد نبات البردى

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What's the main idea of the second paragraph?
- The language in ancient Egypt.

Practice 2. Where can we see hieroglyphs today?
....

كيف لنا أن نعرف الكثير عن تاريخ مصر؟ استخدم المصريون الكتبة في عصرهم ليدونوا كل شيء حدث. كان الكتبة أشخاص مهمين للغاية. لقد كانوا يعملون لدى الأسر الحاكمة. كانوا يكتبون بالهيروغليفية والتي كانت عبارة عن صور أو رموز التي كانت تعني كلمة واحدة أو عدة أفكار. يمكننا أن نرى الكتابة الهيروغليفية اليوم في المقابر والمتاحف. لقد تعلم الأطفال ليصبحوا كتبة في المدارس. فالكتبة كانوا يكتبون على الأحجار أو على الورق المصنوع من أعواد نبات البردى.

III Language

The Past Simple Tense with "Regular verbs" and "Irregular verbs".
زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة.

Usage الاستخدام


يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي.

A. Regular verbs :

Subject الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + (ed / d / ied)


1 Affirmative Statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

▶ - She listened to stories.





Notes for parents
- Help your child to listen, look at the picture and read the text.
- Help your child learn about the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن زمن الماضي البسيط.

Did you know ?!
There are over 700 hieroglyphic symbols.
هل تعلم أن هناك أكثر من ٧٠٠ رمز للغة الهيروغليفية.

B. Irregular verbs :

 يتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل غير المنتظم [يحفظ كما هو].

Meaning	Present	Past
يشرب	drink	drank
يرى	see	saw
يأكل	eat	ate
يملك/يتناول	have	had

Meaning	Present	Past
يفوز	win	won
يشترى	buy	bought
يذهب	go	went
يأخذ	take	took



I / He / She / It / They / You / we/ + did not (didn't) + مصدر الفعل (inf.)

- - She didn't watch the sunrise.
- - He didn't clean the tent.
- - They didn't see the show.

---

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Did + I / he / she / it / you / we / they + مصدر الفعل [inf.] + باقي السؤال ?

Short answers الإجابات المختصرة

Yes, / No, + I / he / she / it / you / we / they + did. عند الإثبات / didn't. عند النفى

- - Did you listen to stories? - Yes, I did.
- - Did she clean the tent? - No, she didn't.

 لاحظ أن عند السؤال بـ "هل ... ؟» باستخدام [Did] يكون الفعل فى المصدر [inf.].

عند تكوين السؤال المبدوء بكلمة استفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم :

Question word + did + he / she / it / we / you / they + مصدر الفعل [inf.] + باقي السؤال ?

- Where did you go yesterday? - I went to the zoo.

C. Verb to (Be) in the Past Simple Tense : الفعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative and negative statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتة والمنفية

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد +	was (not)
They / You / we/ اسم جمع +	were (not)

- Rami was at the Pyramids yesterday.
- She wasn't at home two hours ago.
- They weren't at the zoo last week.



Key words :

من الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط

in the past	في الماضي
(فترة زمنية) + ago	منذ
yesterday	أمس

last	→ year	السنة الماضية
	→ month	الشهر الماضي
	→ week	الأسبوع الماضي
	→ Tuesday	الثلاثاء الماضي



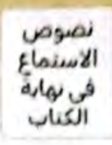
Pop Quiz on Language

- **Choose the correct answer from a ,b, c or d.**

1. Not everyone in ancient Egypt .... to read and write.
   a. learns   b. learned   c. learn   d. learning
2. Scribes .... with reed brushes and ink in the past.
   a. writing   b. writes   c. write   d. wrote
3. .... she play the piano ? - Yes, she did.
   a. Has   b. Does   c. Did   d. Do
4. She .... to the zoo yesterday.
   a. go   b. went   c. goes   d. going
5. They .... hieroglyphs in the past.
   a. studied   b. study   c. studies   d. to study
6. People .... to live near the Nile in 7000 BCE.
   a. starting   b. started   c. start   d. starts



General Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egyptians in ancient Egypt used .... to write down everything that happened.
   a. vets b. scribes c. engineers d. doctors
2. Scribes worked for the ruling ....
   a. dynasties b. symbols c. stones d. signs
3. Scribes wrote in ....
   a. Arabic b. English c. hieroglyphs d. French
4. Children learnt to become a scribe at ....
   a. home b. office c. hotel d. school

2 Listen and complete.

1. Egypt is a country with a very long ....
2. People started to live near the .... about 9,000 years ago.
3. Lower Egypt was in the ....
4. Upper Egypt was in the ....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. Egypt – Where – Upper – was ?

....

2. wrote – stones – on – Scribes .

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Upper Egypt was in the ....
   a. north　　b. south　　c. east　　d. west
2. Boats could .... on the Nile of Egypt.
   a. unite　　b. miss　　c. control　　d. sail

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where was Lower Egypt ?

....

4. Who united the two parts of Egypt ?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. What .... you visit last week ?
   a. do　　b. doing　　c. did　　d. does
2. My dad didn't .... to work yesterday.
   a. go　　b. goes　　c. went　　d. going
3. Ancient Egypt .... very powerful.
   a. becomes　　b. became　　c. don't become　　d. become
4. In the past, they .... papyrus to write.
   a. using　　b. use　　c. uses　　d. used

6 Write an email of FORTY (40) words about scribes in ancient Egypt. Your name is Osama. Your friend's name is Ramy. Your email address is osama@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ramy@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : write down – in hieroglyphs – symbols – papyrus

New Message

To :

From :

Subject :

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

▸ The Governorates of Egypt



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

governorate	محافظة	Damietta	محافظة دمياط
capital city	عاصمة	Ismailia	محافظة الإسماعيلية
Cairo	محافظة القاهرة	Aswan	محافظة أسوان
Giza	محافظة الجيزة	New Valley	محافظة الوادى الجديد
Alexandria	محافظة الإسكندرية	Red Sea	محافظة البحر الأحمر
Qalyubia	محافظة القليوبية	Aswan	محافظة أسوان
Suez	محافظة السويس	Asyut	محافظة أسيوط
Port Said	محافظة بورسعيد	Beni Suef	محافظة بنى سويف
Beheira	محافظة البحيرة	Minya	محافظة المنيا
Monufia	محافظة المنوفية	Luxor	محافظة الأقصر
Sharqia	محافظة الشرقية	Matruh	محافظة مطروح
Gharbia	محافظة الغربية	North Sinai	محافظة شمال سيناء
Dakahlia	محافظة الدقهلية	South Sinai	محافظة جنوب سيناء
Kafr El Sheikh	محافظة كفر الشيخ	Sohag	محافظة سوهاج
Faiyum	محافظة الفيوم	Qena	محافظة قنا

• Extra vocabulary

on the map	على الخريطة	region	منطقة	large cities	مدن كبرى
the countryside	الريف	sail in / out	يبحر داخل / خارج	popular	محبوب / مشهور
Which ... ?	أيهما ...؟ (للتخيير)	scuba diving	الغطس تحت الماء (باستخدام أنبوب التنفس)	How big .... ?	كم الحجم ....؟
farthest	الأبعد			water sports	رياضات مائية
port	ميناء	the High Dam	السد العالى	natural features	السمات الطبيعية
oasis	واحة	population	عدد السكان		

II Listening and Reading

★ **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The governorates of Egypt

There are 27 **governorates**[1] in Egypt today. Look at the **map**[2]. Where do you live ?



[1] محافظات
[2] خريطة
[3] الغوص تحت الماء (باستخدام أنبوب التنفس)
[4] عاصمة



I'm Fares, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for **scuba diving**[3] and water sports.





I'm Nadia, and I live in Aswan Governorate. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its **capital**[4] is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.





I'm Ibrahim, and I live in Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

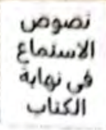


Read and learn

- Cairo has the biggest number of people.
- New Valley is the biggest governorate.
- Damietta is the smallest governorate.

وحد سبعة وعشرون محافظة فى مصر اليوم. انظر إلى الخريطة. أين تعيش ؟
- أنا فارس، وأعيش فى محافظة البحر الأحمر. إن بها شاطىء يبلغ طوله ١,٠٠٠كم. إنه مكان مشهور جدا للزيارة من أجل رياضة الغوص تحت الماء والرياضات المائية.
- أنا نادية، وأعيش فى محافظة أسوان. إنها الأبعد فى جنوب صعيد مصر وعاصمتها هى مدينة أسوان. فى عام ١٩٧٠ ، أنهى المهندسون بناء السد العالى فى أسوان.
- أنا إبراهيم، وأعيش فى محافظة الإسكندرية. إنها محافظة هامة لأن الكثير من السفن تبحر إلى داخل وخارج الميناء. كانت مدينة الإسكندرية عاصمة لمصر فى الماضى.

General Exercises on Lesson 3



1 **Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c , or d.**

1. Nadia lives in .... Governorate.
   a. Red Sea b. Aswan c. Luxor d. Alexandria
2. It's the farthest south in .... Egypt.
   a. Lower b. Upper c. Up d. Down
3. .... finished the Aswan High Dam in 1970.
   a. Vets b. Doctors c. Engineers d. Nurses
4. Aswan High Dam is a very important ....
   a. tower b. project c. city d. town

2 **Listen and complete.**

1. New Valley doesn't have a big ....
2. The .... of New Valley Governorate is Kharga.
3. Kharga is an .... town.
4. Kharga is in the .... of this region.

3 **Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.**

When – important – Where – ships

Walaa : Welcome to Cairo. Is it your first visit to Cairo ?
Basma : Yes, it is.
Walaa : (1) .... do you live ?
Basma : I live in Alexandria.
Walaa : Why is Alexandria (2) .... ?
Basma : Because lots of (3) .... sail in and out of the port.
Walaa : Great ! I wish you would enjoy your visit in Cairo.
Basma : Thank you.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. North - live - Governorate - I - in - Sinai.

....

2. live - in - people - Egypt - How - many ?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c , or d.

1. Egypt has lots .... people.
   a. at b. of c. from d. over
2. There .... 27 governorates in Egypt.
   a. is b. do c. does d. are
3. Look .... the map.
   a. at b. from c. to d. behind
4. Engineers .... the Aswan High Dam in 1970.
   a. finish b. finished c. to finish d. finishing

6 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I'm Amr, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1,000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.

I'm Ali, and I live in the Alexandria Governorate. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Red Sea Governorate has a/an .... which is over 1,000 km.
   a. oasis b. beach c. desert d. village
2. In Alexandria, ... sail in and out of the port.
   a. ships b. boats c. buses d. trains

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can you do at the Red Sea Governorate ?

....

4. Why is Alexandria important ?

....

Lessons **4 & 5**

- CLIL : Music
- Writing
- Folk dancing in Egypt





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


ney آلة الناى


qanun آلة القانون


rebaba آلة الربابة


oud آلة العود


shabbaba آلة الشبابة


wind instrument
آلة نفخ موسيقية


string instrument
آلة موسيقية وترية


oboe
آلة أوبو (مزمار)


violin
آلة الكمان

Extra vocabulary

folk dancing	الرقص الشعبى	style	أسلوب	Nubian music	الموسيقى النوبى
musician	موسيقار	Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا		
tradition	تقليد - عُرف	shaabi music	موسيقى شعبية	Saidi music	الموسيقى الصعيدى
simsimeya	آلة السمسمية	culture	ثقافة		
lively	مفعم بالحيوية والنشاط	occasion	مناسبة	costumes	أزياء خاصة
dancer	راقص	poetry	الشعر	Tahtib	التحطيب
the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	tent maker	صانع الخيام	rhythm	إيقاع - تناغم
international	عالمى	drumming	قرع الطبول	fighting	قتال
craft	حرفة	complicated	معقد	patterns	أنماط
skilled	ماهر	decorate	يزين	carpet	سجادة

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular				Irregular		
Present		Past		Present		Past
link	يربط	linked		know	يعرف	knew
include	يشمل	included		make	يصنع	made
step	يخطو	stepped		wear	يرتدي	wore
perform	يؤدي	performed				

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

such as	مثل	all over Egypt	في جميع أنحاء مصر
farther south	أقصى الجنوب	put ...... into	يضع بداخل
the home of	موطن لـ	It is linked to	إنه مرتبط بـ
look like	يشبه	beatfully designed	ذات تصميم جميل



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. A violin is a .... instrument.
   a. wind b. string c. glass d. folk
2. Dancers wear special ....
   a. tables b. subjects c. costumes d. rulers
3. The violin and the guitar are musical ....
   a. subjects b. clothes c. instruments d. books
4. The .... is a wind instrument.
   a. qanun b. oud c. oboe d. assaya



Notes for parents

• Music was important in ancient Egypt, too. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

• كانت الموسيقى شيء هام فى مصر القديمة أيضًا. نعرف ذلك لأن الكتبة رسموا صور لموسيقيين يعزفون على الآلات ووضع المصريون القدماء الآلات داخل الأهرامات.

II Reading

 **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

What kind of music do you like ?

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country.



Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses **string instruments**[1] such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part. Farther south is the home of Nubian music. **Clapping**[2] and **drumming**[3] is an important part of this type of music. Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt. Sometimes it is **mixed**[4] with other modern styles of music.

The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba. Bedouin music also often includes singing. Songs are usually about special events.

[1] الآلات الوترية
[2] التصفيق
[3] قرع الطبول
[4] تدمج

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. The oboe is a .... instrument.
a. modern b. string c. key d. wind

Practice 2. Folk musicians from .... Egypt play Saidi music.
a. Lower b. Upper c. Middle d. Down

- ما نوع الموسيقى التي تحبها؟
- إن مصر لديها الكثير من الموسيقى الشعبية التقليدية. هناك أنماط مختلفة من أجزاء مختلفة من البلاد. فالموسيقيون الشعبيون من صعيد مصر يعزفون الموسيقى الصعيدية. فيستخدم هذا النوع من الموسيقى الآلات الوترية مثل الكمان وآلات النفخ مثل أوبوا (مزمار). الغناء وقرع الطبول هو أيضًا جزء أساسي. أقصى الجنوب هو موطن الموسيقى النوبية. ويعد التصفيق وقرع الطبول جزء هامًا من هذا النوع من الموسيقى. إن الموسيقى النوبية معروفة حاليًا على مستوى مصر. أحيانًا تُدمج مع أنواع حديثة أخرى من الموسيقى. أشهر الآلات الموسيقية البدوية هي الشبابة والربابة. تشمل الموسيقى البدوية الغناء. غالبًا تكون الأغاني حول المناسبات الخاصة.

• Help your child to look at the picture and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Folk dancing in Egypt



Folk dancing[1] has a long history in Egypt. It is **linked to**[2] the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the **rhythm**[3] of the music.

Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the **tradition**[4] of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with **sticks**[5] in a way that looks like fighting.

Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned.

In the cities alongside the Suez Canal, there are international types of music and dance. Musicians play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

[1] الرقص الشعبي
[2] ارتبط بـ
[3] إيقاع
[4] تقليد
[5] عِصِي

Describe the relationship between ideas. وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What's the most famous dance in Saidi musical tradition?
- Raqs Assaya.

Practice 2. What do the dancers wear in Saidi music?
....

إن الرقص الشعبي له تاريخ طويل في مصر. وهو مرتبط بالموسيقى الشعبية في مناطق مختلفة. فالرقص النوبي ذو حيوية وبهجة. الناس يحركون أذرعهم وأقدامهم على إيقاع الموسيقى. إن الرقص بالعصا على الأرجح هو الرقص الأكثر شهرة في الموسيقى الصعيدية التقليدية. يستخدم الراقصون العصا (العصايا) ويخطون بسرعة في أنماط خاصة. أيضًا التحطيب من تقاليد الموسيقى الصعيدية، حيث يقوم الراقصون بالرقص بعناية بالعصا بطريقة تشبه القتال. يرتدي الراقصون أزياء خاصة. ويمكن أن تكون الملابس داكنة وسادة (ذات لون واحد) أو زاهية اللون بها نقوشات. في المدن المجاورة لقناة السويس هناك أنواع عالمية من الموسيقى والرقص. يعزف العازفون على آلة السمسمية وهي آلة بدوية مثل الطبول.

Notes for parents
- Help your child look, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

III Writing Skill

How to write a paragraph كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا ١ سم) في السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
٢. أن تبدأ كل كلمة بحرف Capital.
٣. أن تضع (.) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة.
٤. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
٥. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوع بدايات الجمل.
٦. استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذي تكتبه.
٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
٨. اجتهد في تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
٩. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

The main parts of a paragraph الأجزاء الرئيسية للفقرة الإنشائية

1. The first sentence

- It is a topic or introduction sentence.
- إنها جملة الموضوع أو المقدمة.
- It explains the main idea of the paragraph. تشرح الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة.

2. The last sentence

- It presents a summary of the topic in other words.
- تقدم ملخصًا للموضوع بعبارات أخرى.

Topic sentences in paragraphs should be developed with facts, definitions, and details.

يجب تدعيم جمل الموضوع في الفقرات الإنشائية بالحقائق والتعريفات والتفاصيل.

Description وصف

When you write a description, use a mixture of adjectives and adverbs to make your writing more interesting.

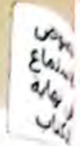
عندما تكتب وصفًا ما، استخدم مزيج من الصفات والظروف لجعل كتابتك ممتعة أكثر.

Remember

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتي بعد (V. to be)
الظرف يصف الفعل ويأتي بعده ويتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة
وهناك صفات غير منتظمة مثل

- bad → badly
- good → well

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5



• 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Music was important in .... Egypt.
   a. Ancient b. Upper c. Lower d. Modern
2. .... were playing instruments in Ancient Egypt.
   a. Players b. Doctors c. Vets d. Musicians
3. .... made pictures of musicians playing instruments.
   a. Teachers b. Artists c. Scribes d. Engineers
4. Ancient Egyptians put instruments into ....
   a. homes b. pyramids c. schools d. museums

• 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

musician – colorful – tradition – Assaya

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. Nubian dancing is lively and (1).................... . Raqs (2) .... is propably the most famous dance. The Tahtib is also from the (3).................... of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks.

• 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are khayameya and carpet making. In the past. tent makers created khayameya to decorate **huge** tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Today you can buy khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

Carpet making is another Egyptian craft. A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet. The patterns are bright and colorful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "**huge**" means very ....
   a. small b. big c. fast d. slow
2. We can buy khayameya in many traditional .... and markets.
   a. banks b. stores c. hospitals d. schools

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What are the most popular crafts ?

....

4. Why did tent makers create khayameya ?

....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - lively - and - Nubian - colorful - dancing.

....

2. music - do - like - What kind - you - of ?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Marina is playing with the teddy bear ....
   a. happiest   b. happier   c. happy   d. happily
2. Amal was nervous and couldn't talk ....
   a. clear   b. clearly   c. clearest   c. clearer
3. Mohammed is a .... driver.
   a. careful   b. carefully   c. care   c. caring
4. Walk .... or you may miss the bus.
   a. quickest   b. quicker   c. quickly   c. quick

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Music

Guiding elements : instruments - musicians - folk music - singing

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 6 ▸ Project



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

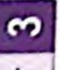
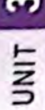
location	موقع	history	التاريخ
geography	الجغرافيا	attractions	عناصر الجذب

Extra vocabulary

entertainment	تسلية	Montazah Palace	قصر المنتزه	section	جزء - فقرة
Maamoura Beach	شاطئ المعمورة	brochure	كتيب / نشرة	concert	حفل موسيقى
headings	عناصر رئيسية	Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	Alexander the Great	الإسكندر الأكبر
coastline	خط ساحل	facts	حقائق		
art exhibition	معرض فنى	tourist information guide	دليل استعلامات سياحى		
illustrate	يوضح	features	سمات		

Read and identify these definitions. اقرأ وتعرف على هذه التعريفات.

Word	Definition
1. Location	where a place is in the country مكان فى الدولة
2. Geography	the environment and any natural features البيئة وأى سمات طبيعية
3. Attractions	what you can do and see in a place ما تستطيع أن تفعله أو تراه فى المكان
4. History	information about what happened here in the past معلومات عن ما حدث هنا فى الماضى
5. Culture	traditional art, entertainment, food, and music الفن التقليدى ، الترفية ، الطعام والموسيقى

- Help your child read and identify the definition of each word.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف كل كلمة.

Listen, read and learn. استمع، اقرأ وتعلم

Section	Tourist Information Guide
Geography	There are high mountains next to a river. هناك جبال عالية بجانب النهر
Attractions	There's an art exhibition at the museum and a market every Tuesday. هناك معرض فني في المتحف وسوق كل ثلاثاء.
Culture	People play traditional music on string instruments. يعزف الناس الموسيقى التقليدية على الآلات الوترية.
Location	It's in the north of the country. إنها في شمال البلاد.
History	People used to make paper from papyrus reeds. اعتاد الناس صنع الورق من عيدان نبات البردي.



Pop Quiz on Definitions

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. .... shows us where a place is in the country.
   a. Culture b. Location c. History d. Geography
2. The environment and any natural features are called ....
   a. location b. geography c. history c. culture
3. .... is what you can do and see in a place.
   a. Music b. Culture c. Attraction c. Feature
4. The things that happened in the past are called ....
   a. history b. games c. music c. country

• Help your child listen, read and learn about sections of the tourist information guide.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ ويتعلم عن أقسام دليل المعلومات السياحية.



UNIT 3 | 1 Reading comprehension

Make logical inferences from the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استنتاج بعض المعلومات وقد تكون الإجابة غير موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيدًا لأن الإجابة قد تكون غير موجودة بشكل مباشر فى النص وتكون استنتاج للمعلومات الواردة.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

I'm Habiba. For me, I'm a part of the community at my sports club. When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship. This means that you work hard to help other people, and behave in a kind and fair way. I'm always polite and helpful at school, and at my sports club.

شرح الحل تفهم المعلومات الواردة جيدًا لكى تتمكن من استنتاج معلومات أخرى مثلًا :

* حبيبة مهذبة ومتعاونة فنستنتج من ذلك أن يحبها المعلمون والأصدقاء .
* حبيبة تذهب إلى نادى للألعاب الرياضية فنستنتج أنها تمارس رياضة.

1. Do you think Habiba's teachers like her ?
- Yes, because she is polite and helpful at school.

2. Do you think Habiba does anything healthy ?
- Yes, she goes to a sports club.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

I'm Fares, I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is 1000 km. It's a very popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports. I think, life is good in the Red Sea Governorate.

1. Is Fares happy in the Red Sea Governorate ?
- ....

2. Can we go swimming in the Red Sea Governorate ?
- ....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال الكتابة معرفتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [الموسيقى الشعبى فى مصر] و [محافظات مصر] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Folk music in Egypt	▶ **Write the meaning :** تقليدى .... موسيقى صعيدى .... آلة الكمان .... التصفيق .... آلة الشبابة .... آلة موسيقية وترية	▶ **Complete the sentences :** 1. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play .... 2. .... and drumming is an important part of Nubian music. 3. The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the .... and rebaba. 4. Egypt has a lot of .... folk music.	▶ **Write a paragraph using the sentences :** "Folk music in Egypt" ....
The governorates of Egypt	شاطئ .... الأبعد .... عاصمة .... تبحر .... خريطة .... ميناء	1. Aswan is the .... south in Upper Egypt. 2. The Red Sea Governorate has a .... which is over 1000 km. 3. Alexandria used to be the .... city of Egypt . 4. The ships sail in and out the	▶ **Write an email using the sentences:** "The governorates of Egypt" ....

Skills 3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل لتساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The history of Egypt	history	Egypt has a very long and interesting history.
	Nile - live	People started to live near the Nile about 9.000 years ago.
	area	There were two separate areas.
	Lower Egypt	Lower Egypt was in the north.
	Upper Egypt	Upper Egypt was in the south.
	Mena - joined	Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.
The governorates of Egypt	The Red Sea Governorate	I live in the Red Sea Governorate.
	beach	The Red Sea has a beach.
	water sports	The Red Sea is a popular place to visit for scuba diving and water sports.
	Aswan	I live in Aswan Governorate.
	High Dam	The Aswan High Dam is very important to Egypt.
	Alexandria	I live in Alexandria Governornate.
	ships	Lots of ships sail in and out of the port in Alexandria.
	capital	Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.
Folk music and dance	traditional	Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
	folk - Saidi	Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music.
	instruments	Saidi music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe.
	Raqs Assaya	Raqs Assaya is the most famous dance.
	Nubian	Nubian music is popular all over Egypt.
	clapping	Clapping and drumming are important parts of this type of music.
	dancing	Nubian dancing is lively and colorful.
	Bedouin	Bedouin music includes singing.



Skills



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة)

1 Scribes in Ancient Egypt

Not everyone in ancient Egypt learned to read and write.[1] This was a job for scribes.[2] Scribes were very important people in society[3]. To become a scribe, children went to a special school.[4] In the school, they studied hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts.[5] The children had to learn lots of different signs and symbols.[6]

2 My Community

The girls at my running club are my community.[7] We are all from different parts of town and we go to different schools, but that doesn't matter.[8] We have lots of friends and families who live in our neighborhood[9] We are always visiting each other's houses.[10] Our favorite time is the summer when everyone has fun together in the park.[11] I think good citizenship is about looking after where you live and being kind to people.[12]

3 New Valley Governorate

New Valley Governorate is the biggest governorate in Egypt.[13] It's a very large area but New Valley doesn't have a big population.[14] The population is about 245,000.[15] The capital of New Valley Governorate is Kharga.[16] Kharga is a famous place.[17] Kharga is an oasis town in the south of this region.[18]

4 An Egyptian craft

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt.[19] The most popular crafts are Khayameya and carpet making.[20] Carpet making is an Egyptian craft.[21] A skilled person can work quickly, but it takes many years to learn how to make an Egyptian carpet.[22] The patterns are bright and colorful.[23] Each carpet is made carefully using Egyptian wool.[24]

Review on unit 3



مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثالثة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary


community


neighborhood


colorful


pyramid


papyrus reeds


museum



hieroglyphs


the Red Sea Governorate


ney


tomb


violin


oboe



Raqs Assaya


pharaoh


scuba diving


shabbaba

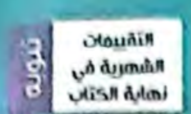

qanun


rebaba

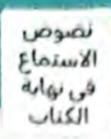
Language

Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية			Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	
تستخدم قبل الفعل		تستخدم قبل الاسم المملوك			تستخدم بدلًا من صفات الملكية والمملوك معًا ولا يأتى بعدها اسم	
I	أنا	my		ملكى	mine	ملكى
You	أنت/أنتم	your		ملكك/ملككم	yours	ملكك / ملككم
He	هو	his		ملكه	his	ملكه
She	هى	her	+ noun	ملكها	hers	ملكها
We	نحن	our		ملكنا	ours	ملكنا
They	هم	their		ملكهم	theirs	ملكهم
It	هو/هى لغير العاقل	its		ملكه/ملكها (لغير العاقل)	—	—



Test 5 on Unit 3



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous ....
   a. song b. dance c. instrument d. star
2. The dancers use ....
   a. sticks b. rulers c. chairs d. tables
3. The dancers step .... in special patterns.
   a. slowly b. quickly c. happily d. sadly
4. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of .... music.
   a. Cairo b. Saidi c. Red Sea d. Alexandria

2 Listen and complete.

1. Omar lives in .... Governorate.
2. Alexandria is in the .... of Egypt.
3. Lots of .... sail in and out of the port.
4. Alexandria used to be the .... city of Egypt.

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

governorate – arms – Where – which

Adel : Hello, Maged ! Where do you live ?
Maged : Hi, Adel! I live in Upper Egypt.
Adel : (1) .... is Upper Egypt ?
Maged : It is in the south.
Adel : What (2) .... do you live in ?
Maged : I live in Aswan.
Adel : Great ! What is it famous for ?
Maged : Nubian dancing. It's lively and colorful. We move our (3) .... and feet to the rhythm of the music.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for ruling dynasties. Important dynasties controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

Ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about "................ in ancient Egypt".
   a. doctors b. scribes c. museums d. swimming
2. Ancient Egyptians scribes .... down everything that happened.
   a. wrote b. gave c. played d. knocked

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What are dynasties ? ....

4. Summarize the second paragraph. ....

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa's favorite design is lotus flowers.		
2. Zeinab doesn't like sewing.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Grandpa's .... taught him how to sew.
   a. mother b. father c. uncle d. aunt
2. When Grandpa was young, he wanted to be a/an ....
   a. singer b. engineer c. doctor d. pilot

6 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. This is Aliaa's bag. It is ....
   a. his b. hers c. her d. mine
2. These shoes belong to Mazen. They are ....
   a. his b. theirs c. him d. hers
3. This carpet is made ...., using Egyptian wool.
   a. care b. caring c. careful d. carefully
4. It's your house. It's ....
   a. their b. yours c. ours d. mine

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. hard – help – Work – people – to – other. ....
2. area – large – It – a very – is. ....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Folk dancing in Egypt

Guiding elements :

1. What is the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition ?
2. How do dancers perform it ?

....

....

....

....

....

Test 6 on Unit 3

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d. (Cairo - El Mataria 2023)

1. Egypt has a very .... history.
   a. short b. boring c. long d. small
2. People started to live near the .... about 9,000 years ago.
   a. Nile b. Tower c. Pyramids d. Red Sea
3. At first, Egypt had .... separate areas.
   a. three b. ten c. two d. four
4. Upper Egypt was in the ....
   a. south b. north c. east d. west

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل. (Kafr El-Sheikh)

1. Luxor is a big governorate in .... Egypt.
2. Millions of .... come to Luxor every year.
3. There isn't a beach but there is the .... in Luxor.
4. You can see .... sailing in the river.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box. (Ismailia 2023)

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة من الكلمات فى المربع.

school – live – Where – What

Malak : Hi Sara! Where do you live ?
Sara : I live in a nice community.
Malak : (1) .... is a community ?
Sara : It's a group of people that (2) .... and work together.
Malak : What does your community include ?
Sara : My family, my friends and my (3) ....
Malak : Do you like your community ?
Sara : Yes, I do.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below. (Cairo - El Marg 2023)

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Egypt is a country with a very long interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Upper Egypt was in the ....
   a. north b. south c. east d. west
2. Boats could .... on the Nile of Egypt.
   a. unite b. miss c. control d. sail

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where was Lower Egypt ? ....

4. Who united the two parts of Egypt ? ....

5 The reader

(Beheira - Damanhour 2023)

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa's eyes are not good now.		
2. Zeinab loved the picture of flower best at the shop.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Zeinab said, "Let's go to visit .... ".
   a. grandma b. brother c. grandpa d. father
2. Zeinab's grandparents were very .... to see her.
   a. pleased b. sad c. excited d. thirsty

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. This is .... new math teacher, Mr Hany. (Cairo - Wali 2023)
   a. my b. mine c. me d. yours
2. Those are Reem's clothes. They are .... (Beheira - Edko 2023)
   a. her b. she c. hers d. his
3. Why are you running .... Ahmed ? (Qalyobia - Shobra El-Khima 2023)
   a. quick b. fast c. slow d. noisy
4. Monkeys can climb trees .... (Minya - Maghagha 2023)
   a. easy b. easier c. easily d. easiest

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. school – am – polite – I – at – always. (Minya - Malawi 2023)

....

2. north – Egypt – is – Lower – in the. (Kafr El-Sheikh 2023)

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب نص من (٤٠) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.

How we know about the history of Egypt مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

scribes – write down – hieroglyphs – pictures or symbols – tombs and museums

....

....

....

....

(Luxor - 2023)

Review 1 General Revision on Units 1,2&3

I Vocabulary

Unit 1

digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي	muscle	عضلة	champion	بطل
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي	bones	عظام	medal	ميدالية
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	touch	حاسة اللمس	volleyball	كرة طائرة
heart	قلب	hearing	حاسة السمع	runner	عدّاء
stomach	معدة	smell	حاسة الشم	code	شفرة
blood	دم	sight	حاسة الإبصار	blind	أعمى
lungs	رئتين	taste	حاسة التذوق		

Unit 2

vertebrates	فقاريات	fins	زعانف	leopard	فهد
bat	وطواط	scales	قشور	crab	كابوريا
reptiles	زواحف	invertebrate	لافقاريات	snail	حلزون
amphibians	برمائيات	ostrich	نعامة	squid	حبار
fur	فراء	primary colors	ألوان أساسية	secondary colors	ألوان ثانوية
beak	منقار	enormous	ضخم	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
gills	خياشيم	blue whale	الحوت الأزرق	insects	حشرات

Unit 3

community	مجتمع	history	تاريخ	tourist	سائح
neighborhood	حي	tomb	مقبرة	hieroglyphs	هيروغليفية
sports club	نادي رياضي	Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري	dynasty	سلالة حاكمة
weather	طقس	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلي	Papyrus reeds	نبات البردي
citizenship	مواطنة	unite	يوحد	pharaoh	فرعون
activities	أنشطة	museum	متحف	pyramid	هرم
polite	مهذب	scribe	كاتب	symbols	رموز

II Language

• Unit 1 — The Present Simple Tense

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative	Short answers
- I / You / We / They work.	- I / You / We / They don't work.	- Do I / you / we they work?	- Yes, subj. do / does.
- He / She / It works.	- He / She / It doesn't work.	- Does he/she/it work?	- No, subj. don't / doesn't.

• Unit 2 — Comparison "short adjectives"

Comparative adjectives

short adj. + er + than → - The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.



Superlative adjectives

the + short adj. + est → - A frog is the smallest vertebrate.



• Unit 3 — Possessive Pronouns

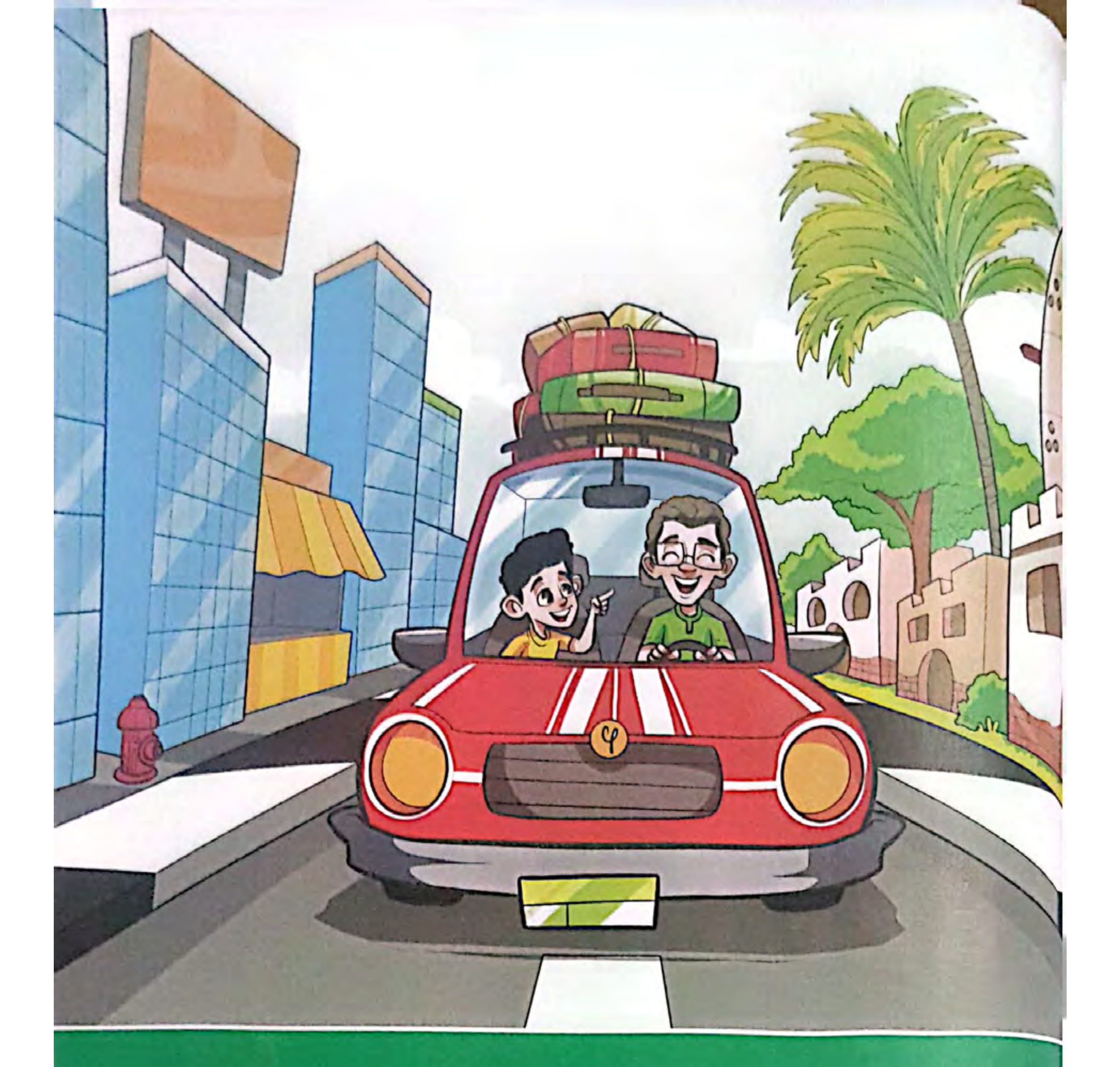
Subject pronouns		Possessive adjectives		Possessive pronouns	
I	أنا	my	ملكي	mine	ملكي
You	أنت/أنتم	your	ملكك/ملككم	yours	ملكك / ملككم
He	هو	his	ملكه	his	ملكه
She	هي	her	ملكها	hers	ملكها
We	نحن	our	ملكنا	ours	ملكنا
They	هم	their	ملكهم	theirs	ملكهم
It	هو/هي لغير العاقل	its	ملكه/ملكها (لغير العاقل)	—	—

2

THEME

Myself and others





Unit 4 City and country
المدينة والريف

Aims of Unit Four : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- compare life in the city and in the country.
  - أقارن بين الحياة فى المدينة وفى القرية.
- form and use regular and irregular plural nouns.
  - أكون وأستخدم أسماء الجمع المنتظمة والغير منتظمة.
- read about crafts and heritage industries.
  - أقرأ عن الحرف والصناعات التراثية.
- use subordinating conjunctions in sentences.
  - أستخدم أدوات الربط فى الجمل.
- multiply and divide numbers.
  - أضرب وأقسم الأرقام.
- add and subtract fractions.
  - أجمع وأطرح الكسور.
- plan smart growth for a city.
  - أخطط نمو ذكى لمدينة.

Lesson 1

▶ Rural and urban places



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary


urban حضري / مدني


rural قروي / ريفي


isolated معزول


pedestrian مشاة


sparsely populated
كثافة سكانية منخفضة


densely populated
كثافة سكانية عالية


metropolitan
عاصمي


congestion
ازدحام

• Extra vocabulary

sparse	ضئيل/قليل	workshops	ورش عمل
dense	كثيف/كثير	environment	بيئة
services	خدمات	Greater Cairo	القاهرة الكبرى
city	مدينة (كبيرة)	population	تعداد السكان
village	قرية	inhabitants	السكان
close to	قريب من	tell about	يخبر عن



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We should keep our .... clean.
   a. moon b. sun c. environment d. sky
2. My uncle is a mechanic. He works in his ....
   a. club b. workshop c. hospital d. school
3. My grandpa is a farmer. He lives in a small ....
   a. sea b. village c. lake d. ocean

II Listening and Reading

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Rural and Urban places


Fareeda

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a **metropolitan area**[1] and **densely populated**[2]. There are more than 20 million **inhabitants**[3], so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also **congestion**[4]. If you are a **pedestrian**[5], you have to be very careful.




Zein

Hi there. I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's **sparsely populated**[6] – only about 700 people live here. It's also a very traditional place. It's in the desert so it's an **isolated**[7] place, too. We have a lot of services close to my family's home though, like shops, workshops, and my school.

[1] منطقة حضرية
[2] ذات كثافة سكانية عالية
[3] سكان
[4] ازدحام
[5] مشاة
[6] ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة
[7] معزول



Demonstrate understanding of specific details

Learn 1. Where does Fareeda live?
- She lives in Greater Cairo.

Practice 2. What services are in Zein's village?
....

- مرحبًا، أسمى فريدة وأريد أن أخبرك عن مكان سكنى. أنا أعيش فى القاهرة الكبرى. إنها منطقة حضرية وذات كثافة سكانية عالية. فهناك أكثر من ٢٠ مليون ساكنًا، لذلك إنه مكان مزدحم جدًا. يوجد الكثير من السيارات لذلك يوجد أيضًا ازدحام. فإذا كنت من المشاة يجب أن تكون حذرًا جدًا.
- مرحبًا. أنا زين. سأخبرك عن قريتى. إنها ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة. حوالى ٧٠٠ شخص فقط يعيشون هنا. إنه أيضًا مكان تقليدى جدًا. إنه فى الصحراء لذا فهو مكان معزول أيضًا. لدينا الكثير من الخدمات بالقرب من منزل عائلتى، مثل المحلات، ورش العمل ومدرستى.



Notes for parents
- *Help your child look at the pictures and read the text.*
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

More people live in rural areas than urban areas in Egypt.
- يعيش فى مصر معظم الناس فى المناطق الريفية أكثر من المناطق الحضرية.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Zein lives in a/an ....
   a. city b. oasis c. village d. town
2. Zein lives in a very .... place.
   a. new b. traditional c. old d. metropolitan
3. Zein's village is in the ....
   a. desert b. city c. forest d. sea
4. We have a lot of services close to my family's ....
   a. museum b. home c. office d. city

2 Listen and complete.

1. Fareeda lives in .... Cairo.
2. The Greater Cairo is a .... populated area.
3. There are .... than 20 million inhabitants.
4. If you are a pedestrian , you have to be very ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

sparsely - workshops - pedestrian - village

Ahmed : Where do you live ?
Ali : I live in a (1) ....
Ahmed : Is it sparsely or densely populated ?
Ali : It's (2) .... populated - only about 700 people live here.
Ahmed : What services are there ?
Ali : We have a lot of services, like shops,(3) ...., and schools.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Hello, my name is Fareeda and I want to tell you where I live. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful. My city is very busy, but I like it, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fareeda tells us about where she ....

a. lives   b. plays   c. works   d. goes

2. Fareeda's city is very ....

a. lazy   b. crazy   c. busy   d. isolated

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many people are there in Fareeda's area ?

....

4. Why is there congestion in Fareeda's city ?

....

5 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. place - village - traditional - My - a very - is.

....

2. populated - Is - sparsely - it - densely - or ?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your city

Guiding elements :

- densely
- congestion
- pedestrian

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2

- Reading
- Language



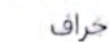
I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

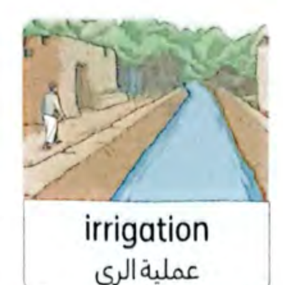

copper نحاس


coal فحم


geese أوز



sheep خراف


aluminum
معدن الألومنيوم


irrigation
عملية الري


buffalo(es)
جاموس


goslings
صغار الأوز

Extra vocabulary

several	العديد	program	برنامج
goods	بضائع	lucky	محظوظ
geographic features	خصائص جغرافية	man - men	رجل - رجال
historically	تاريخيًا	person - people	شخص - أشخاص
natural resources	المصادر الطبيعية	child - children	طفل - أطفال
interview	مقابلة رسمية		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
develop	يطور	developed
wonder	يتساءل/يتعجب	wondered
imagine	يتخيل	imagined
trade	يقايض/يتاجر	traded

Irregular

Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew
have	يملك	had
give	يعطي	gave

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• on the Nile	على شاطئ النيل	• half of	منتصف
• of course	بالطبع	• used to + (inf.)	اعتاد أن
• have in common	لديهم نقاط مشتركة	• grown up	بالغ - راشد



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are four .... swimming in the river .
   a. goose b. geese c. sheep d. buffaloes
2. .... , coal and aluminum are natural resources.
   a. Air b. Clothes c. Copper d. Clouds
3. He is .... He got a gold medal.
   a. lazy b. ugly c. unhealthy d. lucky



Reading



Look, listen and read.



My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

My family lives in a traditional home . There are seven people living in it. There are two men in my family - my dad and my grandpa - and two women - my mom and my grandma. And of course, there are some children too! I have two sisters, but there aren't any babies because we're all grown up. Do you have any brothers or sisters ?



اسمى وليد، أعيش فى قرية صغيرة على النيل. أبى مزارع. هو يزرع الطماطم، البطاطس، البلح والبصل. لدينا بعض الحيوانات أيضًا. فيوجد ستة من الخراف واثنان من الجاموس. يوجد بعض الحمير فى قريتى، ولكن عائلتى لا تمتلك أى منهم الآن. يمكنكم أن تروا القطط فى الشارع، وإذا كنت محظوظًا، سترى بعض الأوز المصرى الجميل فى النهر. تعيش أسرتى فى منزل تقليدى. يوجد سبعة أفراد يعيشون فيه. يوجد رجلان فى عائلتى هما أبى وجدى، وامرأتان هما أمى وجدتى. وبالطبع، هناك بعض الأطفال أيضًا! أنا لدى أختان ولكن لا يوجد أطفال رُضع لأننا جميعًا كبرنا. هل لديك أى أخوة أو أخوات؟



III Language

1 Regular plural nouns ١. أسماء الجمع المنتظمة

Plural صيغة الجمع

Noun الاسم	Plural الجمع	Examples أمثلة
Most nouns معظم الأسماء	يضاف لها [s]	girl ▸ girls cat ▸ cats
Nouns end in [z/s/ss/x/o/sh/ch]	يضاف لها [es]	fox ▸ foxes tomato ▸ tomatoes
Some nouns end in [o]	بعض الأسماء المنتهية بحرف [o] يضاف لها [s] فقط	zoo ▸ zoos radio ▸ radios
Nouns end in [consonant + y]	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف [y] قبله حرف ساكن يحول حرف [y] إلى [i] ويضاف [es]	city ▸ cities baby ▸ babies family ▸ families
Nouns end in -f	الأسماء المنتهية بحرف [f] يحول حرف [f] إلى [v] ويضاف لها [es]	shelf ▸ shelves scarf ▸ scarves

2 Irregular plural nouns ٢. أسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة

We don't add -s or -es but they are learnt as they are.

لا يضاف لها [-s] أو [-es] ولكنها تحفظ كما هي



Note : تحذف أداة [a/an] عند جمع الاسم

Singular	Plural
a woman	women
a goose	geese
a man	men
a child	children
a fish	fish
a sheep	sheep
a tooth	teeth
a foot	feet
an ox	oxen
a mouse	mice
a person	people

• Help your child identify regular and irregular plural nouns. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على جمع الأسماء المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة

05 Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and tick (✓) the correct answer.

1. My grandmother has four ....
   - ◯ children
   - ◯ child
2. Tigers have sharp ....
   - ◯ tooth
   - ◯ teeth
3. My .... hurt.
   - ◯ feet
   - ◯ foot
4. Cats like to catch ....
   - ◯ mice
   - ◯ mouse
5. A .... has two wings.
   - ◯ geese
   - ◯ goose
6. Three .... are waiting in line.
   - ◯ woman
   - ◯ women
7. The farmer has twelve ....
   - ◯ sheep
   - ◯ a sheep
8. Many .... like pizza.
   - ◯ people
   - ◯ person

2 Read and write the correct plural form of the words.

1. My (child) .... hate eating pasta.
2. The (tomato) .... I bought are in the fridge.
3. They're sending some (man) .... to fix the broken tables.
4. How many (mango) .... do you eat ?

3 Write the plural form.

1. a man	men	2. a desk	....
3. a fish	....	4. a woman	....
5. a baby	....	6. a foot	....
7. a mouse	....	8. a cherry	....
9. a tooth	....	10. a glass	....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to tick (✓) the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to read and write the correct plural for the given words.
3. Ask your child to write the plural to the given words.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ يضع علامة (✓).
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب صيغة الجمع الصحيحة للكلمات المعطاة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب صيغة الجمع للكلمات المعطاة.



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ

Presenter : Have you ever wondered why cities develop where they do ? As you can probably imagine, there are several reasons. Today we are talking to Dr. Hossam about this topic. Welcome to our program, Dr. Hossam.

هل تساءلت يومًا لماذا تتطور المدن في مكان إقامتها؟ كما يمكنك أن تتخيل على الأرجح، هناك عدة أسباب. اليوم نتحدث مع الدكتور حسام حول هذا الموضوع. مرحبًا بكم في برنامجنا يا دكتور حسام.

Dr. Hossam : Thank you. So, one of the main reasons is for food and transportation. Have you ever noticed that a lot of cities are developed near bodies of water ? These can be rivers, lakes or oceans.

شكرًا لك. لذا، فإن أحد الأسباب الرئيسية هو الطعام والمواصلات. هل سبق لك أن لاحظت أن الكثير من المدن قد تم تطويرها بالقرب من المسطحات المائية؟ يمكن أن تكون هذه الأنهار أو البحيرات أو المحيطات.

Presenter : So why are bodies of water important for cities then ?

فلماذا تعتبر المسطحات المائية مهمة للمدن إذن؟

Dr. Hossam : For one thing, they have animals in them, like fish and birds, which gives people food to eat. Another important reason is that people can use them for transportation. If a city wants to trade its goods with other places, they can be more easily moved to other places on boats. Another very important reason is that fresh water can be used for irrigation. Farmers need to water their plants, you know.

لأحد الأسباب ، لديهم حيوانات فيها، مثل الأسماك والطيور، مما يعطى الناس طعامًا ليأكلوه. سبب آخر مهم هو أن الناس يستخدمونها للتنقل. إذا أرادت مدينة أن تتاجر بسلعها مع أماكن أخرى، فيمكن أن يتم نقلهم بسهولة إلى أماكن أخرى على متن القوارب. سبب آخر مهم للغاية هو أنه يمكن استخدام المياه العذبة للري. يحتاج المزارعون إلى سقى نباتاتهم، كما تعلم.

Presenter : Are there any other geographic features which make good places to start a city ?

هل هناك أي ميزات جغرافية أخرى تشكل أماكن جيدة لبدء مدينة؟

Dr. Hossam : Yes, there are. Mountains are another place around the world where cities develop. Cities develop in the mountains because historically they are easier to **protect**. There are also minerals and good water sources in some mountains. The only bad part is that transportation is more **difficult** so they might be more isolated than cities near water.

نعم ، يوجد. هناك الجبال هى مكان آخر حول العالم تتطور فيه المدن. تتطور المدن فى الجبال لأنها تاريخيًا يسهل حمايتها. كما توجد معادن ومصادر مياه جيدة فى بعض الجبال. الجزء السيئ الوحيد هو أن التنقل أصعب لذا فقد يكونون أكثر عزلة من المدن القريبة من المياه.

Presenter : Oh, I didn't think of that. Are there any more reasons ?

أوه، لم أفكر فى ذلك. هل هناك أسباب أخرى؟

Dr. Hossam : Let me see. Well, a third big reason is because of natural resources. If there is a lot of natural resources in an area, a city may develop there.

دعنى أرى. حسنًا، السبب الرئيسى الثالث هو الموارد الطبيعية. إذا كان هناك الكثير من الموارد الطبيعية فى منطقة ما، فقد تتطور المدينة هناك.

Presenter : Can you give us an example ? هل يمكنك أن تعطينا مثالاً؟

Dr. Hossam : Of course - there are a lot of them, but oil, coal, aluminum, or copper are a few examples. Forests also give us a very important natural resource - paper.

بالطبع هناك الكثير منها، لكن النفط ، الفحم ، الألومنيوم والنحاس أمثلة قليلة. توفر لنا الغابات أيضًا موردًا طبيعيًا مهمة للغاية - الورق.

Presenter : Very interesting. Thank you very much, Dr. Hossam.

مثير جدًا. شكرًا جزيلًا لك دكتور حسام.

Determine the meaning of words.
وضح معانى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The underlined word "**protect**" means ....

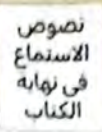
a. cute b. save c. try d. ask

Practice 2. The underlined word **difficult** is the opposite of ....

a. hard b. hot c. tired d. easy



General Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My family lives in a traditional ....
   a. room b. home c. apartment d. tent
2. There are two .... in my family.
   a. girls b. boys c. teachers d. men
3. There aren't any .... in my family.
   a. babies b. men c. sisters d. boys
4. We live .... together.
   a. badly b. slowly c. hard d. happily

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

irrigation - sheep - fish - goods

A lot of cities are developed near rivers, lakes or oceans. They have animals, like (1) .... and birds, which give people food to eat. A city trades its (2) .... with other places, they can be more easily moved to other places on boats. Fresh water can be used for (3) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. How many .... does your cat catch ?
   a. mouse's b. mice c. goose d. mouse
2. There are three .... work in my office.
   a. a person b. person's c. person d. people
3. Three .... are waiting in line.
   a. woman b. women c. a woman d. man
4. .... like water.
   a. Geese b. Goose c. A fish d. A goose

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. from - get - the water - People - food-can.

....

2. a small - I - village - live in - the Nile - on.

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Hello, I'm Waleed's dad and this is my farm. I've got some sheep and two buffaloes on my farm. We used to have donkeys but we don't have any now. I grow a lot of dates, onions and some potatoes. We live near the river and this year, there are two Egyptian geese on the river. And they have three young goslings. They're really small.

I live in a traditional house with my family. I have three children. Waleed is my youngest child. The women in my family are my wife and my mother. And there are two men, me and my dad.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Waleed's family lives near the ....
   a. ocean b. desert c. river d. forest
2. There are two Egyptian geese with three young ....
   a. donkeys b. sheep c. buffaloes d. goslings

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What animals does Waleed's dad have on his farm.

....

4. What does Waleed's dad grow ?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The village life

Guiding elements :

1. Where do you live ?
2. What is your father's job ?
3. What does he do ?
4. What services are there ?

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lesson 3 ▸ Language



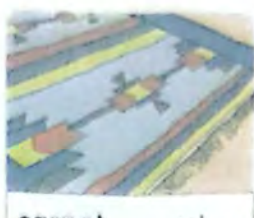


I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary


wool صوف


weave ينسج


carpet سجادة


dye صبغة


yarn خيط / غزل


warp خيوط النسيج


machine ماكينة


spin يغزل / ينسج

Extra vocabulary

artisans	حرفيون	spun cotton	القطن المنسوج
craft	حرفة / مهارة	loom	نول [اسم آلة]
dark colors	ألوان غامقة - داكنة	geometric patterns	أشكال هندسية
synthetic	صناعي - مصطنع	skill	مهارة
structure	تركيب - أساس	traditional	تقليدى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Regular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
explain	يشرح	explained	decorate	يزين	decorated
collect	يجمع	collected	guess	يخمن	guessed
prefer	يفضل	preferred	dry	يجفف	dried
design	يصمم	designed	boil	يغلي	boiled

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• make by hand	يصنع يدويًا	• pick out	يختار / يلتقط
• ready for	مستعد لـ	• make it into	يصنعوا منه / يحولوا إلى
• the same	مطابق - مماثل		



Reading



Visiting a Carpet Workshop

زيارة لورشة سجاد



Last summer I really wanted to learn about traditional Egyptian **crafts**[1]. So, my grandma took me to a **spinning**[2] and **weaving**[3] workshop so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them **weave**[4].

[1] حرف
[2] غزل
[3] نسيج
[4] ينسج
[5] حرفيون
[6] خيط - غزل

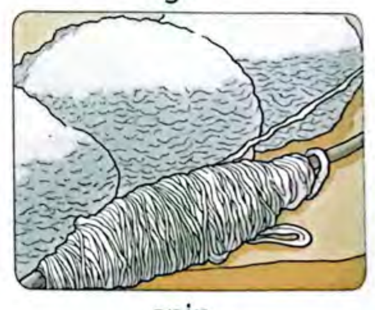
First, they collect the wool from sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. The **artisans**[5] spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it.



dye

Then, they need to dye the **yarn**[6]-that is how it gets its color. I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors.

These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes. My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional.



spin

ِ الصيف الماضى كنت أريد حقًا أن أتعلم عن الحرف المصرية التقليدية. لذلك، أخذتنى جدتى إلى ورشة الغزل والنسيج لكى أستطيع أن أتعلم ن هذه الحرفة. قام المرشد بتوضيح كيف يصنع الحرفيون السجاد بينما كنا نشاهدهم وهم ينسجون. أولًا، يقومون بجمع الصوف من ‌غنام. وعليهم أن ينظفوا ويغسلوا ويجففوا الصوف قبل أن يستخدموه. يقوم الحرفيون بغزل الصوف ليصنعوا منه خيوط بعد تنظيفه. ثم حتاجون إلى أن يقومون بصبغ الخيط هذه هى الطريقة التى تحصل بها على لونها. اعتقد أن الألوان الزاهية هى الأكثر جمالًا على الرغم من أن ض الناس يفضلون الألوان الداكنة. يستخدم هؤلاء الحرفيون فقط الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية، على الرغم من أن بعض ورش العمل الأخرى ستخدم الأصباغ الصناعية. أنا وجدتى نحب الأصباغ النباتية الطبيعية لأنها تقليدية أكثر.

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the text and read it.

اعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى النص ويقرأه.

So, now I guess you're wondering how they dye the wool. Well, I learned that different plants and roots are first grown in a **rural**[7] village.

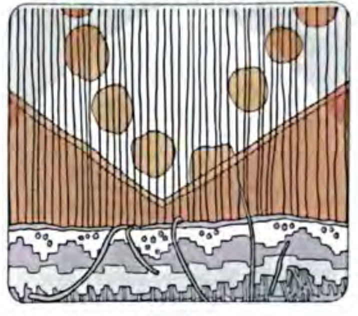
Then they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool. They have to **boil**[8] the yarn with the dyes, and then let it dry.
As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

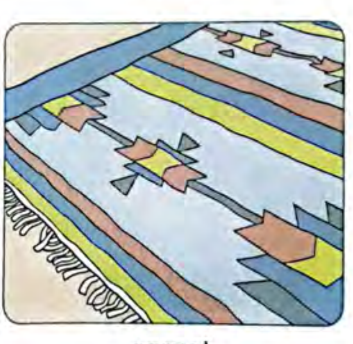
Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the **warp**[9]. The warp is the structure of the **carpet**[10]. They make the warp using spun Egyptian **cotton**[11]. Later, they use the warp and the dyed **wool**[12] to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

My grandma let me pick out a carpet for my bedroom. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make just one carpet.

[7] قروى
[8] يغلى
[9] خيوط سداة النسيج
[10] سجادة
[11] قطن
[12] صوف


yarn


warp


carpet

لذلك، الآن أنا أخمن أنك تتسائل كيف يقومون بصباغة الصوف. حسنًا، لقد تعلمت أن النباتات والجذور المختلفة نمت في البداية في قرية ريفية. ثم يستخدمون هذه النباتات والجذور لصنع أصباغ جميلة لتلوين الصوف. يجب أن يقوموا بغلى الخيوط مع الأصباغ وبعد ذلك يتركوه ليجف. فمجرد أن يجف، يستطيعون أن يستخدموه في نسيج سجادة. قبل أن ينسج الحرفيون السجاد كان عليهم أن يصنعوا خيوط النسيج. فالخيوط هي بنية السجاد. أنهم يصنعون الخيوط باستخدام القطن المصرى المغزول. ومؤخرا يستخدمون بنية السجاد والصوف المصبوغ لصنع سجاد جميل. يقوم الحرفيون بصناعة السجاد اليدوى مستخدمين ماكينة تسمى النول. إنهم يضيفون ألوان مختلفة من الغزل لصنع أنماط هندسية. جعلتنى جدتى أختار سجادة لغرفة نومى. ففى كل مرة انظر إليها، أتذكر مدى العمل والمهارة التى استغرقت لعمل سجادة واحدة فقط.

III Language

The conjunctions الروابط

1 After بعد

▶ **After** I went to the club, I met my friends there.

2 Before قبل

▶ We had to chop the vegetables **before** we cooked them.

3 So that لكى — so that + الغرض أو السبب

▶ Salma is studying English **so that** she can be a journalist.

4 Although على الرغم من — لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

▶ Tamer couldn't eat **although** he was hungry.

5 Even though رغم أن — لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

▶ I watched Amr play football **even though** I don't like sports.

6 While بينما / أثناء — لربط حدثين فى نفس التوقيت.

▶ We chatted with our friends **while** we waited for the bus.

7 Every time كل مرة

▶ My little sister dances **every time** she hears this song.

8 As soon as بمجرد أن — لربط فكرتين أو حدثين متتاليتين.

▶ Malak ran inside **as soon as** it started raining.

• Help your child to identify the conjunctions. • ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الروابط.



Pop Quiz on Language



★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... I was tired, I managed to finish the work.

   a. Although b. But c. And d. Or

2. It was late .... I went home.

   a. so that b. as soon as c. but d. because

3. He was watching TV .... I was studying.

   a. when b. while c. although d. what

4. Hamza ran upstairs to see his little brother .... he got home.

   a. but b. as soon as c. even though d. and

5. I opened the present yesterday .... I came back home.

   a. after b. but c. or d. because

6. .... the lesson ends, I'll go home.

   a. As soon as b. Before c. Until d. So

7. I have lunch .... I get home from school.

   a. as soon as b. while c. even though d. so that

8. I understand what I learned .... I do my homework.

   a. while b. before c. so that d. even though

9. She was studying .... she was sick.

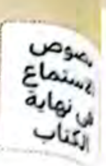
   a. while b. although c. every time d. before

10. .... I went home, I took a shower.

   a. Before b. So that c. While d. As soon as

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises on Lesson 3



1 Listen and complete.

1. The artisans can .... the carpets.
2. The warp is the structure of the ....
3. The artisans make the carpets by .... using looms.
4. They add the different colored .... to make geometric patterns.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. from - wool - The artisans - sheep - the - collect.

....

2. use - weave - They - to - a carpet - yarn - can.

....

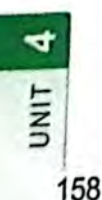
3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

loom - carpet - artisans - wool

Salma's grandma took her to a spinning and weaving workshop. The guide at the workshop explained how the (1).................... make the carpets. They collect the wool from the sheep. They have to clean, wash and dry the (2)........................ before they can use it. Artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn. They dye the yarn then they can weave a (3)..................... .

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I change my clothes .... I get home from school.
   a. so that b. as soon as c. also d. even though
2. I don't talk .... the teacher is talking.
   a. while b. before c. even so d. as soon as
3. I do my homework .... I can get good grades.
   a. before b. every time c. while d. so that
4. I'll have a bath .... I go to work.
   a. as soon as b. while c. before d. every time



5 Read the text and answer the questions below.

My grandma and I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional. So, now I guess you're wondering how the artisans dye the wool. Well, I learned that **different** plants and roots are first grown in a rural village. Then, they use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**different**" is the opposite of ....
   a. the same b. nice c. good d. ugly
2. You wonder how the .... dye the wool.
   a. artisans b. roots c. farmers d. teachers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do they like natural vegetable dyes ?

....

4. Why do they use plants and roots ?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Traditional Egyptian crafts

Guiding elements :

- yarn
- carpet
- weave
- dye

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....





Lesson 4 ▸ CLIL : Math

1 Multiplication (X)

Using repeated addition	Using skip counting	Using objects
2 + 2 + 2 = 6	2 , 4 , 6 (+2, +2)	These are 3 rows of 2 arrays. There are 6 objects.

So, 3 x 2 = 6





Pop Quiz on Multiplication ⭐ Read and solve the problem.

- Ali downloaded 3 games onto his tablet. The next day he downloaded 3 more.

How many games has he downloaded ?



....

2 How to solve word problems on division.

كيفية حل المسائل الكلامية على القسمة.



When you divide, you separate into equal groups

PROBLEM :

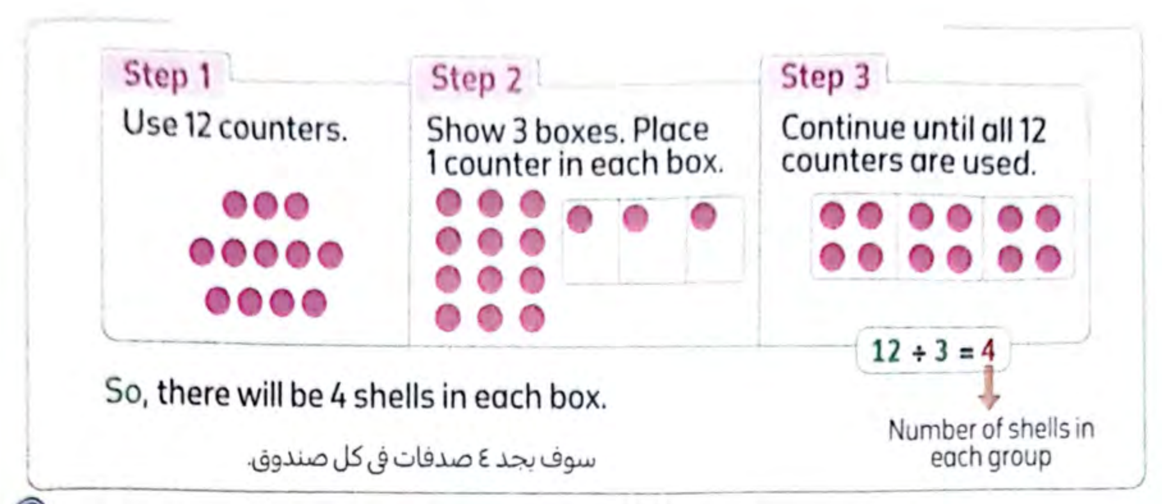
Wael has 12 shells. He wants to put the same number of shells in each of 3 boxes.

How many shells will be in each box ?



find 12 ÷ 3 as follows :







Pop Quiz on Division

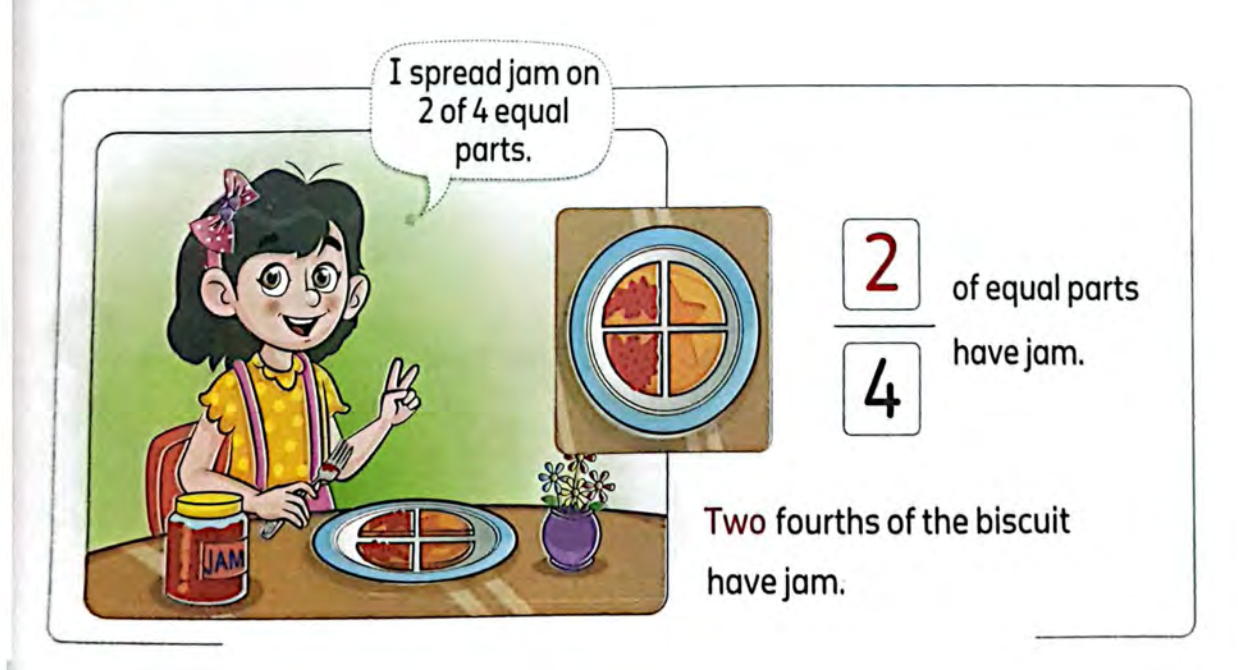


Read, think and solve.

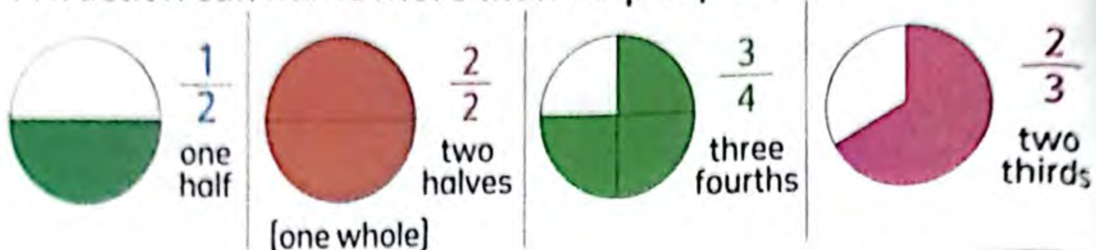
A boy gives his dog 2 dog treats each day. He has 14 dog treats. How many days will the dog treats last ?



3 Fraction



A fraction can name more than 1 equal part of a whole.





Pop Quiz on Fraction

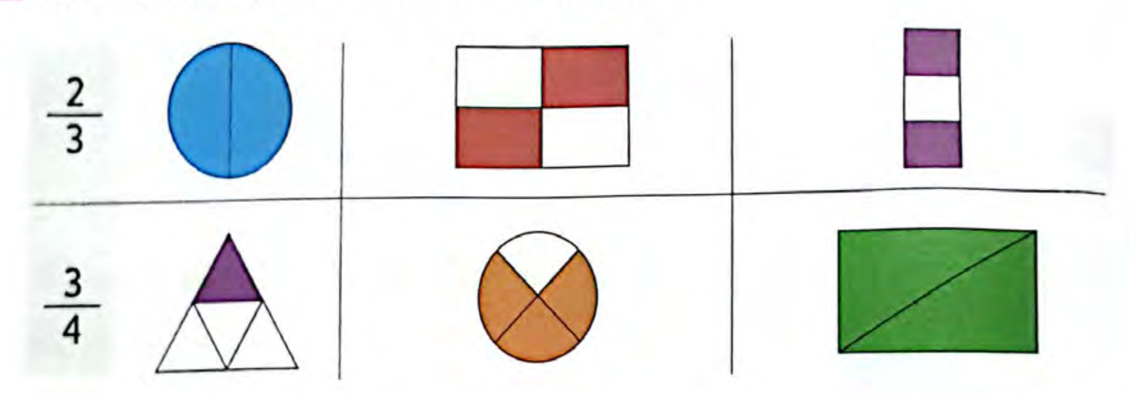
1 Look and name the fraction.







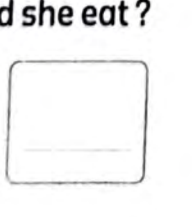
2 Circle the shape that shows the fraction.



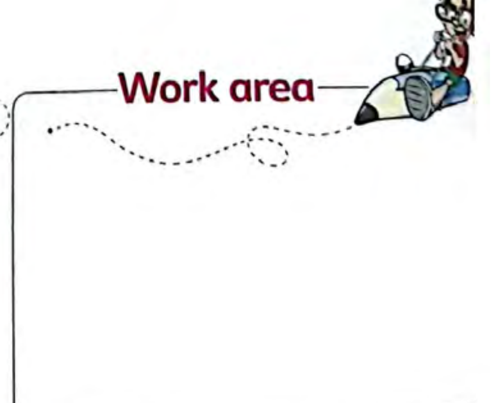
3 Read, think and solve.

Yara has one apple.
She chopped it into four equal pieces and ate three of them.

- What fraction of the apple did she eat?

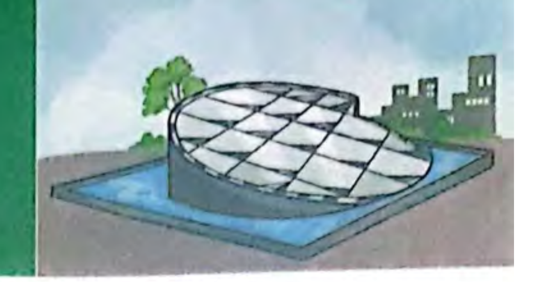






Lessons 5&6

▸ My city
▸ Writing



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

port	ميناء	transportation	وسائل المواصلات (النقل)
neighborhood	حى	location	موقع
smart growth	النمو الذكى	planners	مخططين

• Extra vocabulary

Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط	services	خدمات
industry	صناعة	Montaza Palace	قصر المنتزه
apartment	شقة	important	هام
parents	الوالدين	wherever	أينما - فى أى مكان

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked	have	يملك	had
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	buy	يشترى	bought
use	يستخدم	used	know	يعرف	knew
visit	يزور	visited			
protect	يحمى	protected			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- as you might know كما قد تعلم
- the second largest city ثانى أكبر مدينة



II Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Alexandria
الإسكندرية

I'm Dina and I'm going to tell you about myself today.

1 My city

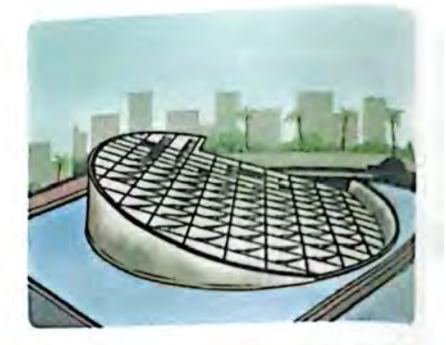
I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the **Mediterranean Sea**[1]. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a **population**[2] of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too.

Dina



2 My neighborhood

I live with my family in an apartment in a **neighborhood**[3] called Amrya.
There are 6 people in my family :
my parents, my grandparents, my brother Magdy and me. Our **apartment**[4] isn't big, but it isn't small either.





3 What I like

I like my city because we have a lot of **services**[5]. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is **Montaza Palace**[6]. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.
I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

[1] البحر المتوسط
[2] تعداد سكانى
[3] حى
[4] شقة سكنية
[5] خدمات
[6] قصر المنتزه

أنا دينا وسوف أخبركم عن نفسى اليوم.

١- مدينتى : أنا أعيش فى مدينة الإسكندرية. إنها مدينة جميلة على البحر المتوسط. كما قد تعرف أنها ثانى أكبر مدينة فى مصر بتعداد سكان يصل إلى أكثر من ٥ مليون شخص. أن بها ميناء هام ويوجد الكثير من الصناعات هنا أيضا.

٢- الحى الخاص بى : أعيش مع عائلتى فى شقة سكنية فى حى يدعى «العامرية». يوجد ٦ أشخاص فى عائلتى : والداى وأجدادى، أخى مجدى وأنا. شقتنا ليست كبيرة ولكنها ليست صغيرة أيضًا.

٣- ما أحب : أحب مدينتى لأن لدينا الكثير من الخدمات. فلدينا مدارس، مستشفيات والكثير من المحلات حيث تستطيع شراء أى شئ تريده. يمكننا أيضًا أن نستخدم الأتوبيس لنذهب إلى أى مكان نريده. واحد من الأماكن المفضلة لدى هو قصر المنتزة. يوجد حدائق جميلة والتى أحيانًا أزورها مع عائلتى. أنا أحب مدينتى كثيرًا وأتمنى أن تزور الإسكندرية يومًا ما.

• Help your child to listen and read the text. · ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص





What is Smart Growth ?

Smart growth[1] is a way to **plan**[2] new areas of a city. Smart growth **planners**[3] want to protect the **environment**[4] and **improve**[5] the lives of people living in them. Here are some of the ideas behind smart growth :

- People can walk to work or school.
- There's good **public transportation**[6] and no cars.
- People have all of the services that they need close to their homes: shops, markets, doctors , **government offices**[7], etc.
- There are **green spaces**[8] for people to enjoy.

[1] النمو الذكي
[2] يصمم / يخطط
[3] مخططين
[4] بيئة
[5] يحسن
[6] مواصلات عامة
[7] مكاتب الحكومة
[8] مساحات خضراء

III Writing skill


Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

How to write a clear paragraph

1. Use several short paragraphs instead of one or two long ones.
   استخدم فقرات قصيرة متعددة بدلًا من فقرة أو فقرتين طوال.
2. You can give each paragraph a heading. يمكنك إعطاء عنوان لكل فقرة.



Pop Quiz on Writing skill

▶ **Write a text about your city.** اكتب نص عن مدينتك.

- Your city ⟶ location / population / famous places
- Your neighborhood ⟶ where you live / who you live with
- What you like about your areas ⟶ favorite places / services.

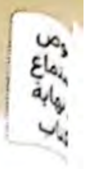
....

....

....

....

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dina lives in ....
   a. Luxor b. Cairo c. Aswan d. Alexandria
2. Alexandria is a / an .... on the Mediterranean Sea.
   a. village b. city c. town d. oasis
3. Alexandria is the .... largest city in Egypt.
   a. first b. second c. third d. fourth
4. Alexandria has an important ....
   a. port b. lake c. river d. ship

2 Listen and complete.

1. .... growth is a way to plan new areas of a city.
2. Smart growth planners want to protect the ....
3. There is good .... transportation and no cars.
4. There are green .... for people to enjoy.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

Mediterranean – family – Alexandria – services

Nada : Hello ! My name's Nada.
Shorouk : Hello ! I'm Shorouk. Where do you live ?
Nada : I live in (1) ....
Shorouk : Oh ! It's a beautiful city on the (2) .... Sea.
Nada : That's right. I like my city because we have a lot of (3) ....
Shorouk : That sounds good.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. six - in - There - my family - are - people.
....
2. can - to work - People - walk - school - or.
....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

My name's Hossam. I live in Marsa Matruh. I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Alexandria Street. There are six people in my family : My parents, my grandparents, my brother Ahmed and me. Our apartment isn't big, but it isn't small either. We can use the bus to go wherever we want.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about " .... ".
   a. Hossam's games   b. Hossam's city
   c. A trip to Luxor   d. An exciting game

2. We can use the .... to go wherever we want.
   a. plane   b. bus   c. truck   d. van

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many members does Hossam's family have ?

....

4. Who does Hossam live with ?

....

6 Write a text of about FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Where you live

Guiding elements :

- neighborhood
- populated
- shops
- services

....

....

....

....

....

Skills



UNIT 4 | 1 Reading comprehension

Demonstrate understanding of specific details

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى أجد صعوبة فى استخراج بعض المعلومات الموجودة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا وتكون الإجابة موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

I'm Fareeda. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars, so there's congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

شرح الحل تقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا وتستخرج الإجابة مباشرة من النص.

1. Fareeda lives in Greater.................... .

a. Fayoum b. Cairo c. Aswan d. Giza

2. There are more than .... million inhabitants in Cairo.

a. thirty b. forty c. twenty d. fifty

3. There are a lot of ...., so there's congestion.

a. cars b. bikes c. trees d. animals

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

I'm Noha. I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too.

1. Noha lives in ....

a. Cairo b. Alexandria c. Giza d. Aswan

2. Alexandria is the .... largest city in Egypt.

a. first b. second c. third d. forth

3. Alexandria has an important ....

a. port b. pyramid c. tower d. river

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال الكتابة معرفتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [مدينتى] و [النمو الذكى] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Healthy diet	▶ Write the meaning : الثانى .... جميلة .... يعيش .... ميناء .... تعداد سكان .... البحر المتوسط	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. I .... in Alexandria. 2. It's a .... city. 3. It has an important .... 4. The .... of Alexandria is more than 5 million people.	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "My city" ....
Unhealthy habit	يحمى .... عام .... مخططين .... مساحات .... يزرع .... يخطط	1. Smart growth is a way to .... new areas of a city. 2. There is good .... transportation. 3. Smart growth .... want to protect the environment. 4. There are green .... for people to enjoy.	▶ Write an email using the sentences : "Smart growth" ....



3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التى درستها بجمل ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Living in a city [urban places]	Cairo - live	I live in Greater Cairo.
	metropolitan	It's a metropolitan area.
	populated	It's densely populated.
	inhabitants	There are more than 20 million inhabitants.
	congestion	There is congestion.
Living in a village [rural places]	village	I live in a small village on the Nile.
	populated	It's sparsely populated.
	traditional	My family lives in a traditional home.
	animals	We have some animals.
	farmer - grow	My dad is a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates and onions.
Smart growth	planners - protect	Smart growth planners protect the environment.
	improve	They want to improve the lives of people.
	walk	People can walk to work or school.
	transportation	There's good public transportation and no cars.
	services	People have all the services close to their homes.
	green spaces	There are green spaces for people to enjoy.
A carpet workshop	wool - sheep	They collect the wool from sheep.
	artisans - yarn	The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn.
	dye - boil	They dye the yarn. They boil the yarn with the dyes.
	cotton	They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton.
	loom	The artisans make the carpets by hand using the loom.
	beautiful	They make beautiful carpets.

Skills

4 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤ جملة].

1 An urban environment

I live in Greater Cairo.[1] It's an urban environment.[2] It's a metropolitan area and densely populated.[3] There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place.[4] There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion.[5] If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.[6]

2 Your village

My name's Amr.[7] I live in a small village on the Nile.[8] My dad is a farmer.[9] He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions.[10] We have some animals, too.[11] There are six sheep and two buffaloes.[12]

3 Mountains

Cities develop in the mountains.[13] They are good places to start a city.[14] Historically, they are easier to protect.[15] There are minerals and good water sources in some mountains.[16] Transportation is more difficult there.[17] It's an isolated place.[18]

4 Alexandria

Alexandria is a beautiful city.[19] It's on the Mediterranean Sea.[20] It's the second largest city in Egypt.[21] There are more than five million people live in Alexandria.[22] It has an important port.[23] There is a lot of industry in it.[24]

Review on unit 4



مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الرابعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary


city


village


dense


irrigation


urban


sparsely populated


congestion


isolated


rural


pedestrian


goose


sheep


date


copper


coal


buffalo


donkey

Language

The conjunctions

- **while** بينما (لربط حدثين)
- We don't talk while the teacher is talking.

- **as soon as** بمجرد أن (لربط حدثين)
- I do my homework as soon as I get home from school.

- **so that** لكى (لذكر سبب)
- I do well at school so that I can get good grades.

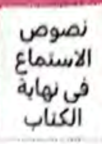
- **After** بعد
- ▸ **After** I went to the club, I met my friends there.

- **Before** قبل
- ▸ We had to chop the vegetables **before** we cooked them.

- **Although** على الرغم من (لتوضيح التناقض)
- ▸ Tamer couldn't eat **although** he was hungry.



Test 7 on Unit 4



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Rahma lives in a .... city.
   a. small b. big c. new d. far
2. Rahma's city is a/an .... environment.
   a. urban b. rural c. unhealthy d. close
3. It's a .... populated city.
   a. lightly b. densely c. hard d. sparsely
4. It's not .... to travel around her city.
   a. hard b. far c. important d. easy

2 Listen and complete.

1. There are many reasons to .... cities.
2. A lot of cities are developed near bodies of ....
3. Water is very .... for cities.
4. Fish and .... give people food to eat.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

artisans – crafts – yarn – wool

Last week, my dad took us to a spinning and weaving workshop so that we could learn about this craft. The owner of the workshop explained how the (1) .... make the carpets while we watched them weave. First, they collect the (2) .... from the sheep. They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it. The artisans spin the wool to make it into (3) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions below.

I'm Adam. I live in Alexandria. I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family. I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. Alexandria b. Montaza Palace c. services d. gardens
2. Adam lives in a/an .... environment.
   a. rural b. desert c. urban d. isolated

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What's Adam's favorite place ?

....

4. Why does Adam like his city?

....

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Grandpa loves his job.
2. Zeinab's friends don't like khaymeya.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Grandpa was one of the ....
   a. Shoe makers b. bus drivers c. tent makers d. dentists
2. Zeinab's .... met her at the train station.
   a. uncles b. grandparents c. friends d. cousins

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are nine .... on the farm.
   a. goose b. gooses c. geese d. geeses
2. He came to the birthday party .... he was busy.
   a. although b. while c. so that d. because
3. She asked me to revise well .... the exam.
   a. while b. before c. so that d. after
4. I have three cherries. .... are very delicious.
   a. It b. That c. They d. This

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. grow - tomatoes - and - Farmers - onions.

....

2. use - They - to make - beautiful - plants - dyes.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Carpet making

Guiding elements:
1. How do they get wool?
2. How do they make yarn?
3. How do they make dyes?
4. What's the loom?

....
....
....
....

Test 8 on Unit 4

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d. [Cairo - Abbasia 2023]

1. Fareeda lives in a / an .... area.
   a. metropolitan b. isolated c. micro d. deep
2. There are more than 20 million .... in Cairo.
   a. gills b. inhabitants c. congestion d. areas
3. Zein's village is .... populated.
   a. densely b. sparsely c. wide d. high
4. Zein's village is in the desert, so it's an .... area.
   a. isolated b. easy c. urban d. icy

2 Listen and complete. [Cairo - El Marg - 2023]

1. My name is Walid and I live in a small .... on the Nile.
2. My dad is a ....
3. He grows tomatoes and ....
4. We keep some .... , too.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

[Cairo - Maadi 2023]

Where – Port – airport – visit

Basma : Hi, Walaa.

Walaa : Welcome to Cairo. Is it your first (1) .... to Cairo ?

Basma : Yes, it is.

Walaa : (2) .... do you live ?

Basma : I live in Alexandria.

Walaa : What natural features does it have ?

Basma : Lots of ships go in and out of the (3) ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

I am Amr, and I live in the Red Sea Governorate. It has a beach which is over 1.000 KM. It's a very popular place to visit. There are some water sports such as scuba diving and swimming.

I am Ali, and I live in Alexandria. It's important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Red Sea Governorate has a / an .... which is over 1.000 KM.
   a. oasis b. beach c. desert d. village
2. In Alexandria, ... sail in and out of the port.
   a. ships b. boats c. buses d. trains

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the Red Sea Governorate famous for ?

....

4. Why is Alexandria important ?

....

[Aswan - Edfu 2023]

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa's eyes are not very good now.		
2. Zeinab's friends aren't clever to learn about Khayameya.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The big picture with all the flowers took grandpa nearly four ....
   a. days b. weeks c. months d. years
2. Zeinab wishes to .... and help her grandpa.
   a. sew b. saw c. play d. read

[Cairo - Sharabia 2023]

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I go home .... I finish my school. [Damietta - Farskour 2023]
   a. as soon as b. although c. so d. before
2. We .... a nice house. [Alexandria - El-Gomrouk 2023]
   a. has b. have c. does d. do
3. I do my homework .... I go to bed.
   a. before b. while c. but d. though
4. .... she was tired, she went to school. [Beheria - Delngat 2023]
   a. Although b. So that c. While d. Because

7 Order the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. place – village – a – traditional - My - is – very. [Beheria - Rashid 2023]

....

2. lives – family - My - in – house – a – traditional. [Cairo - Maadi 2023]

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The city you live in

Guiding elements :

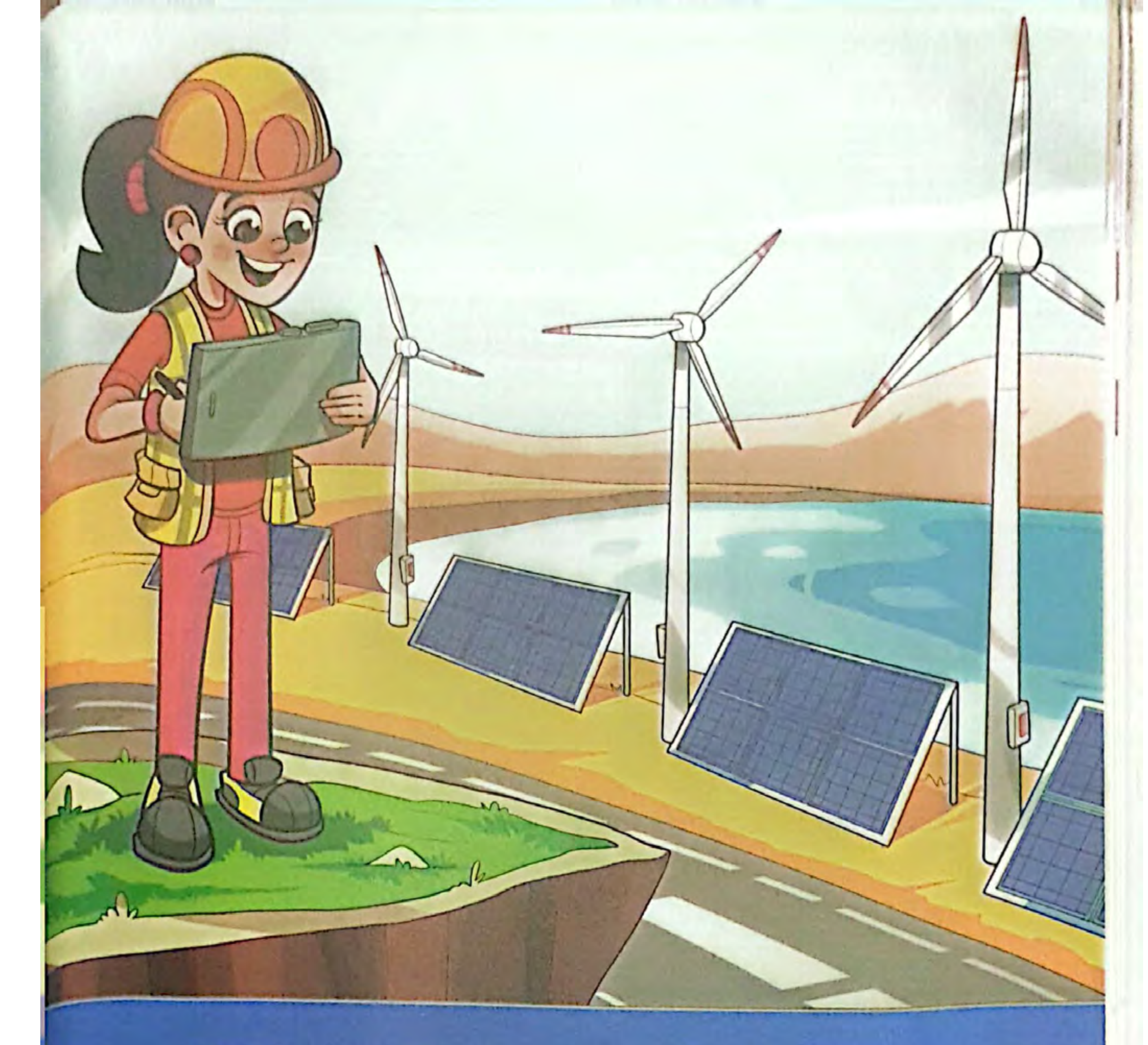
- live - people - densely populated - services - club

....

....

....

[Cairo - Old Cairo 2023]



Unit 5

Resources in our world

الموارد فى عالمنا

Aims of Unit Five : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الخامسة :

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- understand the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources.
  - أفهم الفرق بين الموارد المتجددة وغير المتجددة.
- identify fossil fuels and the problems with them.
  - أتعرف على الوقود الحفرى ومشاكله.
- use the correct form of third person present singular verbs.
  - أستخدم الصيغة الصحيحة لضمائر المخاطب مع الأفعال المفردة فى زمن المضارع.
- explain different types of renewable energy sources.
  - أوضح الأنواع المختلفة لمصادر الطاقة المتجددة.
- match and correctly use pronouns
  - أصل وأستخدم الضمائر بشكل صحيح.
- recognize and use vocabulary related to jobs.
  - أتعرف وأستخدم المفردات المتعلقة بالوظائف.
- understand how to be a good team member.
  - أفهم كيف أكون عضو جيد فى فريق.
- write an email to apply for a job.
  - أكتب بريد إلكترونى للتقدم لوظيفة.
- design a vehicle that runs on a renewable energy source.
  - أصمم عربة تسير بمصدر طاقة متجددة.



Lesson 1 ▸ Natural Resources

Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary



natural resources
موارد طبيعية



renewable resources
مصادر متجددة



non-renewable resources
مصادر غير متجددة

• Extra vocabulary

mineral	معدن	replace	يستبدل	material	مادة خام
soil	تربة زراعية	purpose	غرض	stone	حجر
frame	إطار / هيكل	metal	معدن	gold	ذهب
petroleum	بترول	silver	فضة	construct	يبني
common	شائع	plastic	بلاستيك	guess	يخمن
raise	يربي	grain	حبوب	grind	يطحن

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- for different purposes لأغراض مختلفة
- look around يتجول
- made of
  مصنوع من (المادة الخام لا تتغير بعد التصنيع)
- made from
  مصنوع من (المادة الخام تتغير بعد التصنيع)
- come from يأتي من
- made up of يتألف من/يتكون من
- run out ينفذ، يُستهلك، ينتهي

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Our Natural Resources
مواردنا الطبيعية

Natural resources[1] are materials that we get from **nature**[2]. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of ? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now ? Is it **made of**[3] wood ? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom ? Plastic is made from petroleum, which is ... that's right – a natural resource! Can you find any **minerals**[4] in your classroom ? What about the door **handle**[5], the window frame, or the watch your teacher is wearing ? Is part of your desk or chair metal ? There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. **Gold**[6] and **silver**[7] are two **common**[8] ones. And they are all natural resources.

[1] موارد طبيعية
[2] الطبيعة
[3] مصنوع من
[4] معادن
[5] مقبض الباب
[6] ذهب
[7] فضة
[8] شائع

- الموارد الطبيعية هى الخامات التى نحصل عليها من الطبيعة. يستخدم الناس تلك الخامات لأغراض مختلفة. إذا نظرت حولك فى فصلك الدراسى، سوف ترى حتمًا أنواع مختلفة منهم. مما تُصنع مدرستك ؟ نحن نستخدم الحجارة لإنشاء المبانى والكبارى وأحيانًا المدارس أيضًا. على ماذا تجلس الآن ؟ هل هو مصنوع من الخشب؟ الغابات والأخشاب التى نحصل عليها منها تعتبر مورد طبيعى هام آخر. هل يوجد أى شئ مصنوع من البلاستيك فى فصلك الدراسى؟ يُصنع البلاستيك من البترول، والذى هو .... هذا صحيح - مصدر طبيعى ! هل يمكنك أن تجد أى معادن فى حجرة الدراسة الخاصة بك ؟ ماذا عن مقبض الباب، إطار الشباك أو ساعة اليد التى يرتديها معلمك ؟ هل جزء من مكتبك أو الكرسى مصنوع من المعدن؟ يوجد العديد من الأنواع المختلفة من المعادن والتى تعتبر أشكال من المعادن. إن الذهب والفضة هما نوعان شائعين وجميعهم موارد طبيعية.

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. What is plastic made from ?
- It's made from petroleum.

Practice 2. Mention two types of minerals mentioned in the text.

....

• Help your child look, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

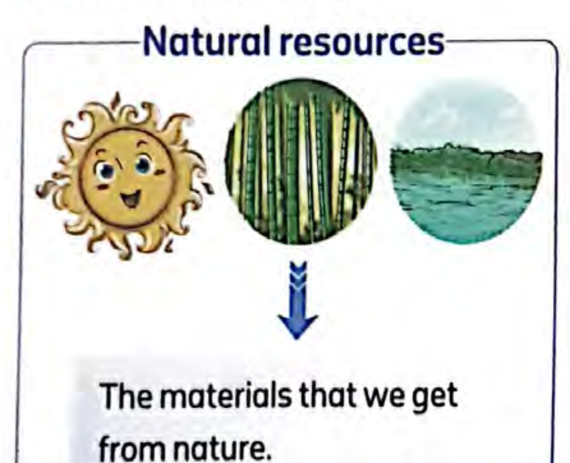
The water you drink at lunch is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from ? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call **soil**[9]. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource. Some resources are what we call **renewable**[10]. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources. Then there are **non-renewable**[11] resources. These are things like metals and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

(9) تربة
(10) متجدد
(11) غير متجدد

الماء الذى تشربه على الغداء مصدر طبيعى. من أين تأتى البطاطس التى نتناولها؟ إنها تزرع فى الأرض وهذه الأرض تتكون مما ندعوه تربة زراعية.لذلك نعم، التربة الزراعية أيضًا مصدر طبيعى. بعض المصادر نطلق عليها متجددة. فالمصادر المتجددة يمكن أن تُستبدل بشكل طبيعى عندما تنفذ. إن الشمس والرياح والمياه المتدفقة أمثلة على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة. إذن يوجد مصادر غير متجددة. وهذه أشياء مثل المعادن والبترول. إذا استخدمنا جميعها، لا يمكننا إيجاد المزيد منها على كوكب الأرض.

Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

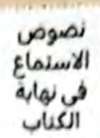








General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Natural resources are materials that we get from ....

a. forest   b. school   c. nature   d. people

2. We use .... to construct buildings and bridges.

a. wood   b. stone   c. plastic   d. soil

3. We get wood from ....

a. trees   b. colors   c. plants   d. insects

4. .... and silver are two types of minerals.

a. Gold   b. Wood   c. Stone   d. Bridge

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Meat – non-renewable – renewable – raise

Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a (1) .... resource because we can grow more. (2) .... is also a renewable resource because farmers can (3) .... more animals for you to eat. Wood is a renewable resource, too.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. a – natural – Soil – resource – is.

....

2. stone – buildings – to – use – construct – We.

....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of ? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now ? Is it made of wood ? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom ? Plastic is made from petroleum.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....

a. renewable resources b. non-renewable resources
c. natural resources d. wind energy

2. We use .... to construct buildings.

a. wood b. food c. plastic d. stone

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is plastic made from ?

....

4. Give two examples of natural resources.

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Natural resources

Guiding elements :

• minerals • renewable • nature • materials

....
....
....
....



Lesson 2

- Listening
- Language
- Fossil Fuels





I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

a crude oil well	بئر بترول خام	greenhouse gases	غازات محتبسة
fossil	حفرية	fossil fuels	وقود حفرى
global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى	natural gas	غاز طبيعى
climate change	تغير المناخ	coal	فحم

• Extra vocabulary

energy	طاقة	dishes	أطباق	geologist	عالم جيولوچى
heat	حرارة	dinosaur	ديناصور (حيوان منقرض)	power	قوة
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى	industry	صناعة	heating	التدفئة
deep	عميق	serious	جاد / خطير	petroleum	بترول
problem	مشكلة	seal	فقمة / سبع البحر	whales	حيتان

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
relax	يسترخى	relaxed
create	يولد / ينتج	created
kiss	يُقبل	kissed
brush	ينظف بالفرشاة	brushed
dry	يجفف	dried
raise	يربى	raised
produce	ينتج	produced
generate	يولد	generated
process	يُعالج/يحول	processed

Irregular

Present		Past
fly	يطير	flew
catch	يلحق	caught
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
do	يفعل	did
go	يذهب	went
burn	يحرق	burned / burnt
lie	يرقد	lay / lain

Today, around 80 % of the energy used around the world comes from fossil fuels.
- اليوم، حوالى ٨٠٪ من الطاقة المستخدمة حول العالم تأتى من الوقود الحفرى.

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• turn into	يتحول إلى	• a lot of	كثير من
• catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس	• raise his hand	يرفع يده
• make dinner	يعد وجبة العشاء	• is taken out	يستخرج / يتم استخراجه
• on Fridays	في أيام الجمعة		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

▸ **Look and write the missing letters.**

1. 

di _ o _ _ _ r

2. 

c _ _ l

3. 

d _ _ _



Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

A fuel → is a material that we burn to produce power or heat.
الوقود هو مادة نقوم بحرقها لإنتاج طاقة أو حرارة.

Fossil fuels →
- are a non-renewable resource. الوقود الحفري هو مورد غير متجدد.
- were plants and animals that lived before the dinosaurs.
الوقود الحفري هو النباتات والحيوانات التي عاشت قبل الديناصورات.

Crude oil →
- is turned into petroleum. الزيت الخام يتحول إلى بترول.
- We get it from oil wells. نحصل عليه من آبار البترول الخام.
- is taken out of the ground. الزيت الخام يُستخرج من الأرض.

Coal and natural gas → are used in homes for heating and cooking
الفحم والغاز الطبيعي نستخدمه في المنازل في التسخين والطهي.

Notes for parents
- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters. اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة.
- Help your child read and identify the words. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الكلمات.

The global warming and climate change	→	are serious problems because of fossil fuels. الاحتباس الحرارى وتغير المناخ هى مشكلات خطيرة بسبب الوقود الحفرى.
Greenhouse gases	→	- are gases collected in the atmosphere. الغازات المحتبسة هى غازات مجمعة فى الغلاف الجوى. - are very bad for the environment. هى سيئة للبيئة جدًا. - help to create global warming. هى تساعد على إحداث الاحتباس الحرارى. - make the problems of climate change worse. هى تجعل مشاكل تغير المناخ أسوأ.



II Listening



Listen, read and learn. استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.



Fossil fuels الوقود الحفرى

Professor Kamal

For many years, people around the world have burned fossil fuels. There are different types of fossil fuels, but all of them are non-renewable resources. We all probably use at least one of them every day.

الأستاذ كمال : لسنوات عديدة لقد أحرق الناس حول العالم الوقود الحفرى. هناك أنواع مختلفة من الوقود الحفرى، لكنها كلها موارد غير متجددة. ربما نستخدم جميعًا واحدًا منهم على الأقل كل يوم.



For example, oil wells take crude oil out of the ground, it is processed into petroleum, and then we use it in our cars, buses, and airplanes. Natural gas is also taken from inside the Earth and sent to some of our homes for cooking, and for heating homes in colder climates. Coal, this dark rock taken from mines deep inside the Earth, is used in industry, to generate our electricity, and in some people's homes for heating and cooking.

• *Help child listen, read the text and learn about the fossil fuels.*

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ النص ويتعلم عن الوقود الحفرى.

على سبيل المثال، تقوم آبار النفط بإخراج النفط الخام من الأرض، ويتم معالجته إلى بترول، ثم نستخدمه في سياراتنا وحافلاتنا وطائراتنا. يتم استخراج الغاز الطبيعي أيضًا من داخل الأرض وإرساله إلى بعض منازلنا للطهي وتدفئة المنازل في المناخ البارد. الفحم، هذه الصخور الداكنة المأخوذة من المناجم الموجودة في أعماق الأرض، يستخدم في الصناعة لتوليد الكهرباء، وفي منازل بعض الناس للتدفئة والطهي.



But why do we call them fossil fuels ? Maybe you have heard of the dinosaurs ? Well, like the dinosaurs, fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived a very long time ago. It's hard to imagine just how long ago though because they actually lived before the dinosaurs did. Over time, these plants and animals were buried deep inside the earth and changed into fossil fuels.

لكن لماذا نطلق عليهم اسم الوقود الحفري ؟ ربما سمعت عن الديناصورات ؟ حسنًا، مثل الديناصورات، كان الوقود الحفري نباتات وحيوانات عاشت منذ زمن طويل جدًا. من الصعب تخيل المدة التي مرت منذ ذلك الحين لأنهم عاشوا بالفعل قبل الديناصورات. بمرور الوقت، تم دفن هذه النباتات والحيوانات في أعماق الأرض وتحويلها إلى وقود حفري.

It sounds like fossil fuels help us a lot, doesn't it ? Well, that is kind of true. Fossil fuels have helped us develop into modern nations with great technological advancements. We have built cities with hospitals and universities, and can easily travel through the desert in our cars and over the oceans in airplanes. But there is a serious problem. The problem with fossil fuels is that when they are burned, they produce greenhouse gases. These gases collect in the atmosphere and make the problems of global warming and climate change even worse.

يبدو أن الوقود الحفري يساعدنا كثيرًا، أليس كذلك ؟ حسنًا، هذا نوعًا ما حقيقي. لقد ساعدنا الوقود الحفري على التطور إلى دول حديثة ذات تطورات تكنولوجية كبيرة. لقد بنينا مدنًا بها مستشفيات وجامعات، ويمكننا بسهولة السفر عبر الصحراء في سياراتنا وعبر المحيطات في الطائرات. لكن هناك مشكلة خطيرة. مشكلة الوقود الحفري هي أنه عندما يتم حرقه، فإنه ينتج غازات دفيئة. تتجمع هذه الغازات في الغلاف الجوي وتزيد من تفاقم مشاكل الاحتباس الحراري وتغير المناخ للأسوء.

Notes for parents

III Language

The third person singular in the present simple.

◂ استخدام الأفعال مع ضمائر الفاعل المفرد الغائب في زمن المضارع البسيط.

Formation التكوين



He /She / It / (Ali) اسم مفرد + inf. مصدر الفعل

- s → • معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s)
- or es → • أما التي تنتهي بـ (sh, ch, ss, x, o) يضاف لها (es)
- or ies → • أما التي تنتهي بـ (y) يسبقها حرف ساكن (consonant + y) يضاف له (ies)

▸ - Youssef's dad is a mechanic. He fixes cars.
- Our cat drinks a lot of water when it's hot out.
- The baby cries when she's hungry.



Pop Quiz on Language

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. She always .... her homework.
   a. do b. does c. did d. doing
2. Emy .... TV every day.
   a. watch b. watches c. watched d. watching
3. Hamza often .... his laptop for his school project.
   a. uses b. use c. used d. using
4. She .... her teeth every day.
   a. brushing b. brush c. brushed d. brushes
5. My grandpa .... in a two-bedroom apartment.
   a. living b. lives c. live d. don't live
6. My sister .... a bicycle.
   a. ride b. riding c. rides d. don't ride
7. Our cat .... a lot of water when it's hot out.
   a. drinks b. drink c. are drinking d. drinking
8. Salma .... her room every day.
   a. tidies b. tidy c. tidying d. don't tidy

• *Ask your child to choose the correct answer.* - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

General Exercises on Lesson 2



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Gameela wakes up for .... at 7 o'clock.
   a. park b. hospital c. museum d. school
2. She catches the .... to go to school.
   a. car b. bus c. van d. truck
3. Younis .... and dries the dishes.
   a. cuts b. plays c. washes d. eats
4. Gameela's family watches a movie after ....
   a. lunch b. breakfast c. dinner d. snacks

2 Listen and complete.

1. Fossil fuels are .... resources.
2. Crude .... is turned into petroleum.
3. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived .... the dinosaurs.
4. There are serious problems with .... fuels : global warming and climate change.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

animals – fossil fuels – natural gas – airplanes

Renad : Hello, Dalia. Our lesson today was about fossil fuels.
Dalia : That's great ! Can you give me examples of (1) .... ?
Renad : Of course. Oil, coal and (2) ....
Dalia : Why do we call them fossil fuels ?
Renad : Because the plants and (3) .... lived a very long time ago.
Dalia : How can people use fewer fossil fuels ?
Renad : I think they can install solar panels on their roof at home so they can generate more renewable energy.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It often .... in winter.
   a. rained b. raining c. rains d. rain
2. Alia .... the family car every week.
   a. washes b. washed c. wash d. washing

3. He .... to work every day.

a. drove b. driving c. drive d. drives

4. I .... cereal in the morning.

a. eat b. to eat c. eats d. eating

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resource-There are different types of fossil fuels. We all probably use at least one of them every day. For example, oil wells take crude oil out of the ground, it is processed into petroleum, and then we use it in our cars, buses and airplanes. Natural gas is also taken from inside the Earth and sent to some of our homes for cooking and heating. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived a very long ago. Over time these plants and animals were buried deep inside the earth and changed into fossil fuels.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This text is about "................".

a. Renewable resources b. Solar energy

c. Fossil fuels d. Dinosaurs

2. We use fossil fuels in our homes for .... and heating.

a. cooking b. swimming c. driving d. flying

B. Answer the following questions :

3. How are fossil fuels formed ?

....

4. What transportation can we use fossil fuels for ?

....

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your day

Guiding elements : - wake up - brush teeth - take the bus - have breakfast

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

- Reading
- Renewable energy



I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary


wave power
طاقة الأمواج


solar power
الطاقة الشمسية


tidal power
طاقة المد والجزر


wind power
طاقة الرياح

• Extra vocabulary

rock	صخرة	solar panels	ألواح شمسية
sunshine	شروق الشمس	trip	رحلة قصيرة
different	مختلف	excited	متحمس
make electricity	ينتج كهرباء	solar energy	طاقة شمسية
electrical energy	طاقة كهربائية	engineer	مهندس
dusty	ملئ بالغبار	soon	قريبًا
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية
change from .... to ...	يتحول من ..... إلى	solar farm	محطة شمسية
		easy	سهل

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
turn into	يتحوّل إلى	turned into
destroy	يدمّر	destroyed
transfer	يحول / ينقل	transferred

Irregular

Present		Past
build	يبنى	built
burn	يحرق	burnt
tell	يخبر	told
run out	ينفذ	ran out



II Reading



Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم

Solar panels in the Desert ألواح شمسية في الصحراء

[1] صحراء
[2] ملئ بالغبار
[3] سحلية
[4] ضوء الشمس
[5] عمال
[6] كهرباء
[7] وقود حفري
[8] مهندسين

Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the **desert**[1]. It is usually hot, sunny and **dusty**[2] on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the desert. Sometimes Seleem saw a **lizard**[3], but most of the time, he just saw rocks and **sunshine**[4]. Now things are different. He sees lots of **workers**[5] and trucks in the desert. They are building a solar farm. At school, Seleem's teacher asks the class a question. "What is renewable energy ?"

Seleem puts his hand up. "Renewable energy is from a resource that won't run out." he said.

"Very good," said Mr Ali. "We need to make **electricity**[6]. We can burn fossil **fuels**[7] like oil and gas, but they will run out. We can also make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. Tomorrow we will go on a short school trip to learn more about renewable energy here in Aswan".



The next day, Seleem and his class are very excited. Mr Ali takes them to the new solar farm. They meet the workers.

Some of the workers are putting solar panels in the desert. Some workers are driving trucks. Some workers are **engineers**[8].

One of the engineers tells the class, 'We will have more electricity in the city soon, and in your school too! We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the perfect place for a solar farm. The solar panels collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes".

يمشى سليم إلى المدرسة كل يوم. الطريق بجانب الصحراء. وعادة ما يكون الجو حار، مشمسا وملىء بالغبار على الطريق. السنة الماضية لم يكن هناك شىء فى الصحراء. وكان سليم أحيانًا يرى سحلية، ولكن فى معظم الأوقات كان يرى فقط الصخور وضوء الشمس. الآن اختلفت الأمور فهو يرى الكثير من العمال والشاحنات فى الصحراء. هم يبنون محطة الطاقة الشمسية. فى المدرسة، يسأل مدرّس سليم الفصل سؤال «ما هى الطاقة المتجددة» ؟

يرفع سليم يديه. «الطاقة المتجددة هى من مصدر لن ينفذ. قال أستاذ على »جيد جدًا". قال الأستاذ. على : «نحتاج أن ننتج الكهرباء. يمكننا حرق الوقود الحفرى مثل البترول والغاز، لكنهم سينفذوا. يمكننا أيضًا أن ننتج الكهرباء من مصادر متجددة مثل الرياح والمياه. غدًا سنذهب إلى رحلة مدرسية قصيرة لنتعلم عن الطاقة المتجددة هنا فى أسوان". فى اليوم التالى، سليم وزملاؤه متحمسون جدًا. يأخذهم الأستاذ على إلى مزرعة الطاقة الشمسية الجديدة ليقابلوا العمّال. بعض العمّال يضعون ألواح شمسية فى الصحراء. بعض العمّال يقودون الشاحنات. بعض العمّال من المهندسين. كان أحد المهندسين يخبر الفصل «سيكون لدينا المزيد من طاقة الكهرباء فى المدينة قريبًا، وفى مدرستكم أيضًا ! لدينا الكثير من ضوء الشمس فى الصحراء، لذا فهو مكان مثالى لمحطة الطاقة الشمسية. تجمع الألواح الشمسية الطاقة من الشمس ويمكننا تحويلها إلى كهرباء لمنازلنا».

• Help your child look and read the text. - ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ النص.

Read and identify the solar energy. اقرأ وتعرف على الطاقة الشمسية.

Advantages المميزات

Solar panels are easy to look after.
الألواح الشمسية سهلة العناية بها.



Electricity from solar power is cheap. الكهرباء من الطاقة الشمسية رخيصة الثمن.

Disadvantages العيوب

Solar farms need a very big space.
مزارع الطاقة الشمسية تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة جدًا.



Solar panels are expensive.
الألواح الشمسية باهظة الثمن.



We can't make solar power on a rainy day.
لا يمكننا أن نصنع الطاقة الشمسية في يوم ممطر.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

We can't **destroy**[1] energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use **solar panels**[2] to collect **sunlight**[3], the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this **electrical energy**[4] for a television, it is now **mechanical energy**[5].

[1] يدمر
[2] الواح شمسية
[3] ضوء الشمس
[4] طاقة كهربائية
[5] طاقة ميكانيكية

لا يمكننا أن ندمّر الطاقة. يمكننا فقط تحويلها من أحد أنواع الطاقة إلى نوع آخر. هذا يسمى بتحويل الطاقة. عندما نستخدم الألواح الشمسية لتجميع ضوء الشمس، تتحول الطاقة الشمسية إلى طاقة كهربائية. عندما تستخدم هذه الطاقة الكهربائية للتلفاز، هي الآن طاقة ميكانيكية.



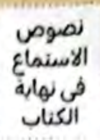
Demonstrate the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين الأفكار.

Learn 1. We can't .... energy.
a. use b. cell c. destroy d. need

Practice 2. We use solar panels to collect ....
a. water b. sunlight c. wave d. tidal

• Ask your child to read and identify the advantages and disadvantages of solar energy.
• اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على مميزات وعيوب الطاقة الشمسية.
• Help your child listen and read text.
• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

General Exercises on Lesson 3



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Wave power is when energy is captured from ....
   a. tidal b. sun c. waves d. water
2. .... power uses wind turbines to generate electricity.
   a. Wave b. Wind c. Solar d. Tidal
3. .... power uses light from the sun.
   a. Wind b. Wave c. Solar d. Water
4. Solar power is a .... energy.
   a. hot b. clean c. dirty d. ugly

2 Listen and complete.

1. Solar panels are ....
2. We can't make solar power on a .... day.
3. Solar farms need a very big ....
4. Solar panels are .... to look after.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

electrical – mechanical – sunlight – oil

When we change one kind of energy into another kind of energy, it is called transfer of energy. Solar panels collect (1) .... The solar panels turn the solar energy into (2) .... energy. When you use this energy to turn on a light, it becomes (3) .... energy.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. make – from – We – electricity – can - renewable resources.

   ....

2. need – space – big – Solar farms – a very.

   ....





I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary

experience	خبرة	career	مهنة
talent	موهبة	promotion	ترقية
skill	مهارة	presentation	عرض - تقديم

• Extra vocabulary

project	مشروع	practice	ممارسة
nervous	عصبى / متوتر	knowledge	معرفة
twins	توأم	computer programming	برمجة الحاسب الآلى
ability	قدرة		
training	تدريب	senior manager	مدير أول
wind turbine	توربينات (محركات الرياح)	university	جامعة
option	خيار	junior engineer	مهندس مبتدئ
calm	هادئ	interview	مقابلة شخصية
interviewer	محاور		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
present	يقدم	presented
practice	يمارس	practiced

Irregular

Present		Past
forget	ينسى	forgot
hear	يسمع	heard
teach	يدرس	taught

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• do a project on	يقوم بمشروع عن	do a job	يقوم بوظيفة
• neither of	لا أحد من	do naturally	يقوم بأداء شئ بشكل طبيعي
• each of	كلاً من	apply to	يقدم طلبا ل
• at the end of	في نهاية	train for	يتدرب لمدة



Read and identify these definitions.

Word	Definitions
experience خبرة	knowledge or practice of doing something. معرفة وممارسة لعمل شيء ما
skill مهارة	the ability to do something well after practice and training. القدرة على فعل شئ ما بشكل جيد بعد التدرب والتمرين.
talent موهبة	something that you do well naturally شيء ما تفعله بشكل جيد بالفطرة
career مهنة	all of the different jobs that a person does in their life الوظائف المختلفة التي يعملها الشخص في حياتهم
to train someone أن تدرب شخص ما	to teach someone how to do a job أن تعلم شخص ما كيف يؤدي وظيفة معينة
promotion ترقية	when you get a higher position where you work عندما تحصل على مكانة أعلى في المكان الذي تعمل به



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

• Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Sandy would like to have a .... in medicine.
   a. clouds b. game c. career d. hobby
2. After two years, Amr got a .... to senior manager.
   a. computer b. book c. promotion d. subject
3. Huda's sister has three years' .... as an accountant (محاسب).
   a. experience b. turbine c. options d. cases

• *Help your child read and identify the definitions.* - ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على التعريفات.

II Language

Nouns and corresponding possessive adjectives
الأسماء وصفات الملكية المقابلة لها.

1 Pronouns : الضمائر

Subject Pronouns	Possessive Adjectives
I	my
He	his
She	her
It	its
We	our
You	your
They	their



She presented her project.

2 Rules of using nouns and possessive adjectives :

1. When the noun is a boy (He) → we use (his)

2. When the noun is a girl (She)



we use (her)

3. When it isn't important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl (someone / no one / person)



we use (their)

4. When the noun is plural (They)



we use (their)

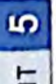
<u>Notice:</u> تعامل هذه الكلمات (Someone - Each - No one - Neither) معاملة المفرد والفعل الذى يليها يكون مفرد بينما الضمير الذى يعود عليها يكون جمع.

- Both → their
- Neither of → their
- Each of → their

Notes for parents

- Help your child use nouns and possessive adjectives.

· ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الأسماء وصفات الملكية.





Pop Quiz on Language

- **Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Neither of the boys has done .... homework.
   a. your b. her c. their d. his
2. One of the boys held .... mother's hand.
   a. his b. its c. their d. her
3. The little boy who lives next door played with .... toys.
   a. their b. him c. her d. his

- **Read and complete with (his - its - her - their) :**

1. She needs to see .... dentist twice a year.
2. He went to see .... favorite basketball team.
3. My parents drank .... coffee.
4. The boat lost .... way in the storm.



III Listening



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



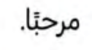


Hello, Mariam. Thank you for coming to this interview today.

مرحبًا يا مريم. شكرًا لقدومك إلى هذه المقابلة اليوم.



Hello.



مرحبًا.



First of all, do you have any experience for this job ?

أولًا قبل كل شيء، هل لديك أي خبرة في هذه الوظيفة ؟



Yes, I do. I studied engineering at Cairo University. And I worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years.

نعم، لدي. درست الهندسة في جامعة القاهرة وعملت في محطة طاقة الرياح في كينيا لمدة ٣ سنوات.


Oh, that's good. Do you have any special skills ?

أوه! هذا جيد. هل لديك أي مهارات خاصة؟


I think so. I am very good at problem solving. I like to think of different ways to solve a problem, and then decide on the best option with my team. I also have good computer programming skills. I learned them at college.

أعتقد ذلك. أنا جيدة جدًا في حل المشكلات. أحب التفكير في طرق مختلفة لحل مشكلة ما، ثم اتخاذ القرار بشأن الخيار الأفضل مع فريقي. أنا أيضًا لدي مهارات برمجة جيدة لقد تعلمتهم في الكلية.


And do you have any special talents ?

وهل لديك أي مواهب خاصة؟


Well, I have always been a calm person. I was just born that way.

حسنًا، لقد كنت دائمًا شخصية هادئة. لقد نشأت بهذه الطريقة.


Why are you interested in working at the Ras Ghareb wind farm ?

لماذا يهمك العمل في محطة رياح رأس غارب؟


I want to continue my career as a wind turbine engineer. I've worked at a turbine factory in Spain, and as you know at a wind farm in Kenya, so this would be my third job. This job will help me build my career.

أريد أن أكمل مسيرتي المهنية كمهندسة لمحركات الرياح. لقد عملت في مصنع محركات في أسبانيا، وكما تعلم أيضًا في محطة رياح في كينيا، فهذه ستكون وظيفتي الثالثة. هذه الوظيفة ستساعدني في بناء مسيرتي المهنية.


Excellent. Well, we have to train you first. That will take 1 month, and then you can start working. How does that sound ?

ممتاز. حسنًا، علينا أن ندربك أولًا. سيستغرق ذلك شهرًا واحدًا، وبعد ذلك يمكنك البدء في العمل. كيف يبدو هذا؟


That sounds good.

هذا يبدو جيدًا.


Do you have any questions about the job ?

هل لديك أي أسئلة حول الوظيفة؟

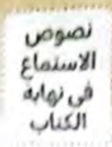

Yes, I do. Is there a possibility of a promotion ?

نعم، لدي. هل هناك إمكانية للترقية؟


Yes, there is. You will start as a junior engineer. After two years, you can get a promotion and become a senior engineer.

نعم، هناك. سوف تبدأين كمهندسة مبتدئة، بعد عامين، يمكنك الحصول على ترقية وتصبحين مهندسة أولى.

General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Mariam studied .... at Cairo University.
   a. farming b. nursing c. teaching d. engineering
2. Mariam worked at a .... farm in Kenya.
   a. solar b. wind c. wave d. animal
3. Mariam worked at a turbine factory in ....
   a. Spain b. Cairo c. Kenya d. England
4. Mariam is a/an .... person.
   a. tired b. angry c. calm d. nervous

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Yassin left .... book on the desk.
   a. its b. his c. their d. her
2. The two dinosaurs looked at .... food.
   a. her b. their c. they d. his
3. My mother ate .... salad.
   a. she b. theirs c. him d. her
4. No one of the students go to .... classes.
   a. them b. they c. his d. their
5. One of my uncles has changed .... address.
   a. his b. their c. its d. her
6. Mr and Mrs Ali bought a plant for .... house.
   a. they b. their c. his d. her

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. their - to - They - project - presented - the class.

   ....

2. train - month - will - for - Mariam - one.

   ....

3. Ras - Ghareb - farm - the - is- Where - wind ?

   ....



Lessons **5 & 6**

- Teamwork
- writing skill

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

responsible	مسئول	supportive	يدعم / مؤيد
collaborate	يتعاون	flexible	مرن / قابل للتكيف
attitude	اتجاه / تصرف / موقف	reliable	موثوق به / جدير بالثقة
application	طلب		

Extra vocabulary

sensitive	حساس	brainstorm	عصف ذهني
problem solver	حلال المشكلة	solution	حل
email	بريد إلكتروني	positive	إيجابي
sender	الراسل	teamwork	عمل جماعي
dear	عزيزي	imagination	خيال
signature	إمضاء / التوقيع	address	عنوان
conclusion	خاتمة	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
advertisement	إعلان	sincerely	بإخلاص
magazine	مجلة	creative	مبدع
individual	فردي	hiring engineers	توظيف مهندسين
contractions	الاختصارات	designer	مصمم
spaceship	سفينة فضاء	active	نشيط

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
complete	يكمل	completed
admit	يعترف	admitted
communicate	يتواصل	communicated
design	يصمم	designed
respect	يحترم	respected

Irregular

Present		Past
feel	يشعر	felt
get	يحصل على	got
find	يجد	found
meet	يقابل	met

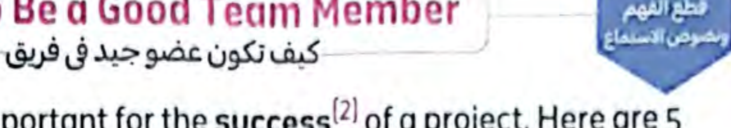
• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work in a team	يعمل في فريق	agree on	يوافق على
share with	يشارك مع	get upset	ينزعج
rely on	يعتمد على / يثق في	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
listen to	يستمع إلى	apply for the job	يتقدم بطلب وظيفة
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	run on	يعمل بواسطة
get worried about	يصبح قلقًا بشأن		



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 15 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



How to Be a Good Team Member
كيف تكون عضو جيد في فريق

Teamwork[1] is very important for the **success**[2] of a project. Here are 5 points to remember when you're working in a team.

[1] عمل جماعي
[2] نجاح
[3] مشاعر
[4] يعتمد على
[5] عصف ذهني
[6] حلول

1. Communicate

Share your ideas and **feelings**[3] with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You should be polite too.

2. Collaborate

Actively work together with your team members to get the best results. You might have a good idea, but make sure to listen to others' ideas too.

3. Be responsible

Remember to complete your part of a project. Your team members are **relying on**[4] you to do your part. If you're finding your role difficult, ask for help.

4. Solve problems

Instead of getting worried about problems, be a problem solver. **Brainstorm**[5] many different **solutions**[6] to the problems with your team members and agree on the best solution.

• Help your child listen and read the text. • ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص

5. Have a positive attitude

There might be some difficult times when working together. Stay calm and don't get upset. If you are positive, you'll help yourself and the other team members be more successful.

العمل الجماعي هام جدًا لنجاح أي مشروع. إليك ٥ نقاط تتذكرها عندما تقوم بالعمل مع فريق.

١ التواصل : شارك أفكارك ومشاعرك مع أعضاء الفريق الآخرين. يجب أن تكون منفتحًا بشأن شعورك تجاه المشروع، تذكر أن تكون حساسًا تجاه شعور الآخرين، يجب أن تكون مهذبًا أيضًا.

٢ التعاون : العمل بنشاط مع أعضاء فريقك للحصول على أفضل النتائج. قد تكون لديك فكرة جيدة ولكن أحرص أيضًا أن تستمع إلى آراء الآخرين.

٣ كن مسئولًا : تذكر أن تكمل الجزء الخاص بك من المشروع. فأعضاء الفريق يعتمدون عليك للقيام بدورك. إذا كنت تجد دورك صعبًا اطلب المساعدة.

٤ حل المشكلات : بدلًا من القلق بشأن المشكلات، كن حلال للمشكلة. قم بإجراء عصف ذهني حول العديد من الحلول للمشكلات مع أعضاء فريقك واتفق على أفضل الحلول.

٥ ليكن لديك اتجاه إيجابي : قد تكون هناك بعض الأوقات العصيبة عند العمل معًا. ابقى هادئًا ولا تنزعج. إذا كنت إيجابيًا فستساعد نفسك وأعضاء الفريق الآخرين أن يكونوا أكثر نجاحًا.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل

Learn 1. How is a teamwork important ?
- It is important for the success of a project.

Practice 2. What's the best solution of the problem ?
....

II Writing skill

How to write an email to apply for a job.

1. Start with Dear, ...
2. Say what you want to write about in the main part.
3. Add the email address to the sender.
4. End your email with "Yours sincerely,"

How to write an email

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Greeting and name : Dear اسم المرسل إليه

Introduction المقدمة

main part الجزء الرئيسي

____

____

____

____

I look forward to hearing from you soon. conclusion الخاتمة

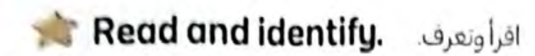
ending Yours sincerely,

signature Adam Nader

Notes for parents

• Help your child identify how to write an email.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني



Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

To apply for a job

New Message

To : rashahesham@mail.com

From :

Subject : job application

Dear Ms. Rasha,

I am writing because I saw your advertisement for the Tidal Power Engineer in New Technologies magazine. I would be very interested in working for you as a tidal power engineer. I studied engineering at Cairo University and I am very interested in renewable energy sources.

I could travel to Giza for an interview or meet online at any time from Sunday to Thursday.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely, → ending النهاية

Adam Nader → signature التوقيع

Greeting and name التحية و الاسم

conclusion الخاتمة

main part الجزء الأساسي

عزيزتي السيدة رشا. أكتب لأنني رأيت إعلان لوظيفة مهندس طاقة المد والجزر في مجلة «نيو تكنولوجي» سوف أكون مهتمًا جدًا بالعمل معك كمهندس لطاقة المد والجزر. لقد درست الهندسة في جامعة القاهرة وأنا مهتم جدًا بمصادر الطاقة المتجددة. يمكنني السفر إلى الجيزة لإجراء مقابلة أو لقاء عبر الإنترنت في أي وقت من الأحد إلى الخميس. أتطلع إلى سماع الأخبار قريبًا.

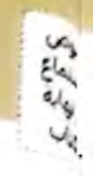
مع خالص تقديري

آدم نادر

• Help your child read and identify a formal letter.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على خطابًا رسميًا

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c , or d.

1. Amir works for a design ....
   a. station b. company c. street d. hospital
2. He is not good at .... to his team members' ideas.
   a. listening b. seeing c. touching d. walking
3. Amir finds it difficult to make ....
   a. design b. project c. work d. friends
4. He gets .... when things are difficult at work.
   a. happy b. excited c. upset d. hungry

2 Listen and complete.

1. Teamwork is very important for the success of a ....
2. In a team, you need .... who are responsible .
3. They need to .... while working with other members.
4. They need to be problem ....

3 Order the words to make correct sentences..

1. and – Stay – get – upset – don't – calm.

....

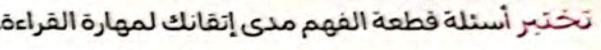
2. interested – Are – you – in – energy – clean ?

....

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

worried – Share – complete – successful

Teamwork is a very important skill for the success of any team. (1) .... your ideas and feelings with the other team members. Remember to (2) .... your part of a project well. Your team members are relying on you to do your part. Instead of getting (3) .... about problems, be a problem solver.



1 Reading Comprehension

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas or pieces of information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي أجد صعوبة في وصف علاقة بين شخصين، حدثين، فكرتين أو معلومتين.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا أكثر من مرة للتمكن من فهم الترابط الموجود بين الأفكار والمعلومات الواردة في النص.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. Non- renewable resources are things like metal and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth. People use these materials for different purposes. We use stone to construct buildings. We use plastic to make pens and bags. Plastic is made of petroleum.

شرح الحل تقرأ النص جيدًا وتفهم الترابط بين الأشخاص والأحداث والمعلومات الواردة.

1. What is plastic made of ?
   - Plastic is made of petroleum.
2. What's the difference between renewable and non-renewable resources?
   - Renewable resources can be naturally replaced but when we have used all of non-renewable resources up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television, it is now mechanical energy.

1. Why do we use solar panels?
2. What is the solar energy turned into?
3. Can we destroy energy ?

Skills

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال الكتابة معرفتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [العمل الجماعى] و [التقديم لوظيفة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Teamwork	▶ Write the meaning : يكمل .... يشارك .... نتائج .... نجاح .... حساس .... مسئول	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. Teamwork is very important for the .... of a project. 2. .... your ideas with the other team members. 3. Remember to .... your part of a project. 4. Actively work together with your team members to get the best	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "Teamwork" ....
To apply for a job	اعلان .... هندسة .... مهتم .... ترقية .... مقابلة .... مهندس	1. I'm writing because I saw your .... 2. I would be .... in working for you. 3. I studied .... at Cairo University. 4. I could travel to Giza for an	▶ Write an email using the sentences : "To apply for a job" ....

Skills

3 Reading & writing

هذا الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل لتساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Natural resources	materials	Natural resources are materials that we get from nature.
	renewable	Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out.
	sun - wind	The sun, wind and falling water are renewable resources.
	non-renewable	When we use all of non-renewable resources up, we can't get any more.
	metals	Metals and petroleum are non-renewable resources.
Renewable energy	source - run out	Renewable energy is from a source that won't run out.
	electricity - wind	We can make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water.
	solar farm	The desert is the perfect place for a solar farm.
	solar panels	We use solar panels to collect sunlight.
	electrical energy	The solar energy is turned into electrical energy.
	cheap	Electricity from solar power is cheap.
Teamwork	success	Teamwork is very important for the success of a project.
	share - ideas	Share your ideas and feelings with the other members.
	best results	Work with your team to get the best results.
	calm - upset	Stay calm and don't get upset.
	brainstorm - solutions	Brainstorm many solutions with your team members.
My day	wake up	I wake up for school at 7 o'clock.
	face - breakfast	I wash my face and eat my breakfast.
	school	I go to school at 7:30.
	bus - home	I catch the bus to go home.
	homework	I do my homework after school.
	movie	We watch a movie after dinner.

Skills 4 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة)

1 Solar panels

Solar panels are expensive.[1] We can't make solar power on a rainy day.[2] Solar panels collect sunlight.[3] Also, solar farms need a very big space.[4] However, solar panels are easy to look after them.[5] Electricity from solar power is cheap.[6]

2 Fossil fuels

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources.[7] Oil, coal and natural gas are fossil fuels.[8] Crude oil is taken out of the ground.[9] It is processed into petroleum which we use in our cars, buses, and airplanes.[10] Coal is taken from deep inside the Earth[11]. It is used to generate electricity.[12] Coal and natural gas are used in our homes for heating and cooking.[13]

3 Working in a team

Aya works for an engineering company.[14] She likes her job and her team members.[15] She's positive, helpful and kind to everyone.[16] She's always polite, too.[17] She works hard, but she often worries about problems that she can't solve.[18] Sometimes she doesn't finish her part of a project.[19]

4 To apply for a job

To : Omarhossam@gmail.com
From : Dinaali83@yahoo.com
Subject : job application
Dear Mr Omar,

I am writing because I saw your advertisement for the Solar Panel Engineer on the Renewable Technologies Website.[20] I would be very interested in working for you as a solar panel engineer.[21] I studied engineering at Cairo University and I worked as a junior engineer on the Benban Solar Park for one year.[22] I could travel to Cairo for an interview or meet online at any time from Monday to Friday.[23] I look forward to hearing from you soon.[24]

Yours sincerely,
Dina Ali



Review on unit 5

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الخامسة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary






wood | soil | stone





metal | petroleum | water





plastic | wind power | solar power




coal | fossil

Resources

Renewable resources

- soil 
- wood 
- water 

Non-renewable resources

- plastic 
- metal 
- petroleum 

Language

• **Rules of using nouns and possessive adjectives :**

1. When the noun is a boy (He)



we use (his)

2. When the noun is a girl (She)



we use (her)

3. When it isn't important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl (someone / no one / person)



we use (their)

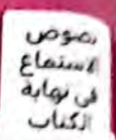
4. When the noun is plural (They)



we use (their)



Test 9 on Unit 5



1 Listen and circle the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Teamwork is very important for the .... of a project.
   a. interview b. success c. career d. signature
2. You should .... your ideas with other team members.
   a. catch b. communicate c. share d. train
3. You should listen to other's ....
   a. resources b. results c. ideas d. purposes
4. If you find your role ...., ask for help.
   a. easy b. difficult c. sensitive d. flexible

2 Listen and complete.

1. We can't .... energy.
2. We can only .... it from one kind to another.
3. We use solar .... to collect sunlight.
4. The solar energy is turned into .... energy.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

panels – electricity – perfect – collect

Mr Ali takes Seleem and his class to the new solar farm. Some workers are engineers. One of the engineers tells the class, "We will have more (1) .... in the city soon, and in your school too" We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the (2) .... place for a solar farm. The solar panels (3) .... energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes".

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amir works for a design company. It is a very busy office and he works hard. He is never late for work. He always finishes his part of a project. He has lots of ideas, but he isn't good at listening to his team members' ideas. Amir finds it **difficult** to make friends. He often gets upset when things are difficult at work.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amir work in a ....
   a. factory b. company c. bank d. workshop
2. The underlined word "**difficult**" is the same as ....
   a. hard b. easy c. boring d. angry

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When does Amir get upset at work?
   ....
4. Is Amir a good team member?
   ....

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False). T F

1. Zeinab's friend Rasha, is good at science.
2. Grandpa welcomed people who wanted to learn.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Khayameya school is traveling all ....
   a. summer b. winter c. autumn d. spring
2. Grandpa's .... are not good to sew now.
   a. hands b. ears c. legs d. eyes

6 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. I .... up for school at 6 o'clock.
   a. wakes b. wake c. waking d. woke
2. My brother does .... homework after school.
   a. his b. her c. she d. him
3. Tarek never .... to school on foot.
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going
4. Omar and Ali bought a present for .... mum.
   a. his b. her c. their d. them

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. buildings - use - We - stone - construct - to.

....

2. make - can - electricity - we - How ?

....

8 Write an email of FORTY (40) words about renewable energy.

Your name is Sama and your email address is samasami@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Samar and your friend's email address is samarali@yahoo.com.

Guiding words : source – electricity – solar panels

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

New Message

To :

From :

Subject :

....

....

....

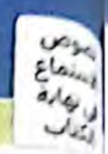
....

....

....

Test 10 on Unit 5

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات



تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I am very good at .... problems.
   a. solving b. making c. playing d. reading
2. I think of different .... to solve a problem.
   a. transports b. ways c. recipes d. books
3. I decide on the best ....
   a. book b. film c. option d. rock
4. I have good computer programming ....
   a. sails b. rails c. skills d. skulls

2 Listen and complete. [Ismailia - Fayed 2023]

1. .... energy can be replaced when they run out.
2. We can get electricity from the ....
3. The fossil fuels are like .... , natural gas and petroleum.
4. The non-renewable energy will .... out.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box. [Damietta 2023]

together – shares – positive – problem

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. The best teamwork is that where each person (1).................... ideas and skills. When you are working in a team, listen to others' ideas. You should be a (2).................... solver when there is a problem. Remember to complete your part of the project. Be (3).................... and help the other team members to become more successful.

4 Read the text and answer the questions below. [Qalyoubia - Benha 2023]

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. Some resources are what we call renewable resources because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable source because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. potatoes b. natural resources
   c. animals d. farmers
2. Wood, wool and plastic are all ....
   a. shapes b. areas c. materials d. languages

B. **Answer the following questions :**

3. Why are the potatoes renewable resources ? ....
4. What are natural resources ? ....

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa wanted to be a vet.		
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandparents.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Some .... make tables and chairs from wood.
   a. farmers b. mechanics c. artisans d. teachers
2. Grandpa was one of the .... makers.
   a. button b. train c. chair d. tent

(Cairo – El-Sahel 2023)

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's my pen. It's .... (Luxor 2023)
   a. mine b. his c. hers d. ours
2. This is your shirt. It's .... (Beni - Suef 2023)
   a. her b. yours c. me d. their
3. I .... two brothers and sisters. (Aswan 2023)
   a. has b. having c. have d. am
4. This bag is .... My father bought it for me. (Ismailia – El-Tal El-Kebir 2023)
   a. me b. my c. mine d. I

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the – resources - What - natural – are ? (Cairo – Zayton 2023)

....

2. renewable – and - Water - resources – wind – are. (Beheira – Damnhour 2023)

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Advantages and disadvantages of solar energy

Guiding elements :

- important – electricity – cheap – solar panels

....
....
....
....

(Giza – El-Harm 2023)



Unit 6 Let's work
هيا نعمل

Aims of Unit six : الأهداف العامة للوحدة السادسة

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- talk about different kinds of transportation.
  - أتحدث عن الأنواع المختلفة لوسائل النقل.
- make predictions about the future.
  - اتنبأ عن المستقبل.
- understand future tech jobs.
  - أفهم الوظائف التكنولوجية المستقبلية.
- use punctuation marks. - أستخدم علامات الترقيم.
- learn to use search engines on the internet.
  - أتعلم كيفية استخدام محركات البحث عبر الإنترنت.
- create strong passwords and passphrases.
  - إنشاء كلمات مرور قوية و عبارات مرور.
- write a well-organized paragraph.
  - أكتب فقرة إنشائية حسنة التنظيم.
- create a business plan. - إنشاء خطة عمل.



Lesson 1

▶ Transportation



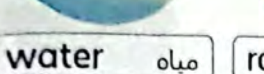
I Vocabulary

• Key vocabulary









water	مياه
rail	قضيب قطار
air	هواء
road	طريق
pipe	ماسورة

• Extra vocabulary

desert town	مدينة صحراوية	Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين
The Suez Canal	قناة السويس	deep	عميق
suburb	ضاحية في المدينة	comfortable	مريح
wide	عرض - عريض	goods	بضائع
river ferry	عبّارة نهرية	electric train	قطار كهربائي
government	الحكومة		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	sit	يجلس	sat
stop	يقف	stopped	build	يبني	built

Note : - The Suez Canal is now 193 kilometers long, 205 meters wide, and 24 meters deep. It was started in 1859 and it took ten years to finish it.
- The first train line in Egypt opened in 1854. It traveled from Cairo to Alexandria.

- إن قناة السويس اليوم أصبحت بطول ١٩٣ كيلو متر، وعرض ٢٠٥ متر، وعمق ٢٤ متر. إنها بدأت عام ١٨٥٩ تم الانتهاء منها خلال ١٠ سنوات.
- أول خط قطار في مصر تم افتتاحه عام ١٨٥٤. كان يمر من القاهرة حتى الإسكندرية.

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get water from	يحصل على المياه من ...
be on a train / bus	يكون على متن القطار / الأتوبيس
travel on an airplane / a ship	يسافر في طائرة / سفينة
take a river ferry	يستقل / يركب معدية في النهر
kinds of	أنواع من
stop in ... for	يتوقف عن .... لـ

II Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



Adam



My uncle, aunt, and cousins all live in Algiers, the capital[1] of Algeria. We want to visit them this year, but it's very far away[2] from where we live in Cairo- about 3.000 kilometers. So, we'll take an airplane. It will be really fun ! I hope my parents let me sit by the window.

[1] العاصمة
[2] بعيد جدًا
[3] صحراء
[4] في المستقبل
[5] يفهم
[6] حكومة
[7] بحيرة ناصر
[8] بترول



Amira



Our teacher was telling us about the new cities that people are building in the desert[3]. She said that a lot of people will be able to live there very happily in the future[4]. We didn't understand[5] how the people can get water in the desert without an oasis. Our teacher explained that the government[6] will send water from Lake Nasser[7] through a pipe in the desert, just like they send oil[8]. The people who live in the new towns will use the water for whatever they need !



Maged



I'm very excited about a new kind of transportation[9] in Egypt. And it's not a car, bus, or boat. It's the new electric trains[10]. The government will finish the new electric line in the future. Did you know that these trains can go 250 kilometers per hour? That's pretty fast!

[9] وسائل المواصلات
[10] قطارات كهربائية
[11] سفينة ملكية
[12] معابد



Lamar



We're studying the ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river. I'll show you a picture of Tutankhamun's royal ship[11] tomorrow.



Fares



Have you ever been to Luxor to visit the famous ancient temples[12] in the Valley of the Kings? I always wanted to go because I love archaeology. So, my dad said we could drive there in our new van for our vacation. It took us a whole day, but we stopped for lunch and dinner in different towns. It was really interesting!



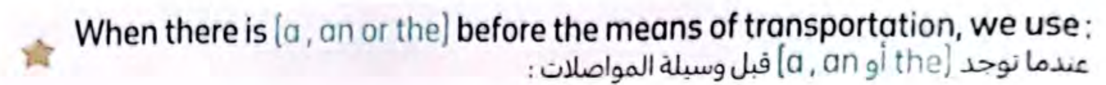
III Language Functions

Prepositions of transport حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

★ We use (by) with means of transportation تستخدم (by) مع وسائل النقل.

- by bus
- by train
- by airplane

★ لاحظ عدم وجود فاصل بين (by) ووسيلة المواصلات.



★ When there is (a , an or the) before the means of transportation, we use :
عندما توجد (a , an أو the) قبل وسيلة المواصلات :

1. (on) with the means that we can stand in.
★ تستخدم "on" مع الوسائل التي يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها :
   - on an airplane
   - on a train
   - on a bus
2. (in) with the means that we can't stand in.
★ تستخدم "in" مع الوسائل التي لا يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها :
   - in a car
   - in a taxi

Asking about using different types of transportation :

Have you ever .... ?

- Yes, I have.
- No, I haven't.



Have you ever traveled on a train ?
هل سافرت من قبل بالقطار؟



Yes, I have.
نعم، لقد سافرت.





Have you ever been on a bus ?
هل انتقلت من قبل بالأتوبيس؟



No, I haven't.
لا، لم أفعل.



General Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

government - fast - train - travel

I'm very excited about a new kind of transportation in Egypt. And it's not a car, bus, or boat. It's the new electric (1) .... The (2) .... will finish the new electric line in the future. Did you know that these trains can go 250 kilometers per hour? That's pretty (3) ....

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. often - by train - don't - I - travel.

....

2. on - a bus - Have - ever - you - been?

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I travel to Alexandria .... train.
   a. at b. by c. in d. on
2. Have you ever been .... a car? - Yes, I have.
   a. to b. at c. on d. in
3. They went to Aswan .... plane.
   a. on b. in c. by d. at
4. Have you ever traveled .... a taxi?
   a. in b. on c. by d. above

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Types of transportation

Guiding elements:

• travel • airplane • ships • train

....
....
....
....
....
....
....



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

robot	إنسان آلي	Mars	كوكب المريخ
future	مستقبل	vacation	أجازة

Extra vocabulary

flying taxi	سيارة الأجرة الطائرة	bridge	كوبرى
podcast	ملف صوتى	roof	سقف
self-driving car	سيارة ذاتية القيادة	career	مهنة
education	تعليم	humans	البشر
royal ship	سفينة ملكية	prepay	يدفع مقدمًا
preview	عرض مسبق	pre-school	ما قبل المدرسة
tech	تكنولوچى	fuel	وقود
government	حكومة	host	مستضيف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

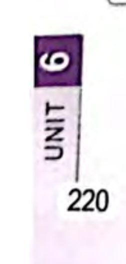
Present		Past
travel	ينتقل	traveled
study	يذاكر	studied

Irregular

Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove
buy	يشترى	bought
fly	يطير	flew
show	يوضح	showed / shown

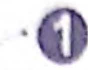
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

travel to ...... for	- يسافر إلى ...... من أجل	travel in	- يسافر فى
		on a ship	- على مَتن سفينة
by the window	- بجانب النافذة	live on	- يعيش على





The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط



To make predictions about the future. ◂ لتوقع تنبؤات عن المستقبل

1 Affirmative (positive) statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subj. + will ('ll) + inf. باقي الجملة

▸ - She will travel on a ship.





2 Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subj. + will not (won't) + inf. باقي الجملة

▸ - Omar won't sit by the window.



3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام



A Yes/No question : السؤال بـ "هل" :

Will + Subj. + inf. باقي الجملة ... ?

For short answer:

Affirmative: Yes + subj. + will.

Negative: No + subj. + won't.

▸ Will they take a train to Aswan?

- Yes, they will. - No, they won't.

B Wh- question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Wh-word + will + subj. + inf. باقي الجملة ?

▸ - How will you travel to France?

- I will travel on an airplane.



• Help your child use the future tense to make predictions. - ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن المستقبل في عمل تنبؤات.

• Help your child identify how to ask with Yes/No question or wh-question in the future tense. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية السؤال بـ «هل» أو بكلمة استفهام في زمن المستقبل

will = 'll will not = won't

- **Key words**

tomorrow	غداً	next ...	التالي ...
in the future	في المستقبل	in 2025, 2026, ...	في عام ٢٠٢٥، ٢٠٢٦، ......
on time	في الوقت		

Read and identify these contractions. اقرأ وتعرف على تلك الاختصارات.

1. I will → I'll	**4.** We will → We'll
2. He will → He'll	**5.** They will → They'll
3. She will → She'll	**6.** You will not → You won't

This is called a contraction; two words are joined together and a letter, or some letters are dropped.

هذا ما يسمى الاختصار وفيه يتم دمج كلمتين معًا مع حذف حرف أو بعض الحروف.

تستخدم (How) للسؤال عن وسيلة المواصلات.

- How will you travel to Aswan ? - On a river ferry.

How to make a sentence using the future tense

1 Statement :

① Subj.	② will / won't	③ inf.	④ باقي الجملة .
I	will	take	a flying taxi to school.

2 Question :

① Will	② Subj.	③ inf.	④ باقي السؤال ?
Will	you	travel	to the Moon one day ?

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn how to make a sentence using the future tense. ساعد طفلك أن يكون جملة مستخدمًا زمن المستقبل.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. He won't .... (doing) his homework today.
2. .... (Do) you get up early tomorrow morning ? - Yes, I will.
3. A : "The phone's ringing". B : OK, I will .... (answered) it.
4. Class 1A will .... (has) a test next Monday.
5. The doctor will .... (is) with you in a moment.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He .... arrive on time tomorrow.
   a. will b. are c. is d. does
2. He is late. I think he .... a taxi.
   a. will take b. took c. takes d. doesn't take
3. It .... tomorrow.
   a. snows b. snowing c. will snow d. don't snow
4. Will you .... to the club on Saturday ?
   a. go b. goes c. going d. went
5. People will .... on the moon in the future.
   a. lives b. lived c. live d. living
6. Will my mom .... some cookies for us later ?
   a. making b. makes c. made d. make
7. He will .... tomorrow.
   a. came b. come c. comes d. to come
8. .... they finish their homework before six o'clock ?
   a. Won't b. Won't be c. Will be d. Will
9. I will .... the living room.
   a. clean b. cleaned c. cleaning d. to clean
10. Will you see the movie tonight ? - Yes, I ....
    a. won't b. will c. won't be d. will be



PUNCTUATION MARKS

1 The question mark (?) : علامة الاستفهام :

- When we write a question, we use (?) a question mark at the end of a question.

عندما نكتب سؤال، نضع علامة الاستفهام في نهاية السؤال.

• Are you OK ?

• What's your name ?

2 The exclamation point (!) : علامة التعجب :

- To show strong feelings or emotions.

تستخدم علامة التعجب (!) عند التعبير عن شعور قوي.

• I'm very excited !



- To express shock, surprise or anger.

للتعبير عن صدمة، مفاجأة أو غضب.

• Watch out !

• What a fantastic birthday gift !

- At the end of strong command. تستخدم في نهاية أمر قوي :

• Shut up ! • Stop !

3 Apostrophe (') : فاصلة علوية :



- For contraction of a word. لاختصار كلمة.

• She'll travel on a ship.

Contraction : Apostrophes show that a letter or more than one letter has been removed.

تظهر الفواصل العليا أنه تم إزالة حرف أو أكثر من حرف

Notes for parents

• Help your child identify how to use the punctuation marks. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية استخدام علامات الترقيم

4 Comma (,): الفاصلة السفلية :

- To join two ideas in a sentence.

نستخدم الفاصلة السفلية لربط فكرتين ببعضهم البعض في جملة.

- We want to visit Aswan this year, but it's very far away from where we live in Cairo.

5 The period (.): النقطة :

- We use it at the end of a sentence.

نستخدمها في نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

- I like ice cream.
- He is young.
- Open your book.

Learn

We use "pre" at the start of words to mean "before". For example, predict means to say something before it happens.

pre-school ما قبل المدرسة prepay يدفع مقدمًا

05 min Pop Quiz on Writing

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان مهارة الكتابة.

1 What punctuation mark should end the following sentences with? Choose and write.

1. Wow ☐ You won a gold medal in the Olympics.
   a. (!) exclamation point b. (?) question mark
2. The children were told to bring the following items : a pen, a pencil ☐ a ruler and an exercise book.
   a. (.) period b. (,) comma

2 Read and correct the punctuation marks.

1. Will you learn to drive a car !

....

2. The train is so fast ?

....

1. Ask your child to choose the correct missing punctuations. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار علامات الترقيم الناقصة الصحيحة.
2. Ask your child to read and correct the punctuation marks. - اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصحح علامات الترقيم.

Lesson 3

▶ Tech jobs of the future

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

tech = technology	تكنولوجيا	search engine	محرك البحث
future	مستقبل	ad (advertisement)	إعلان
browser	متصفح	option	خيارات
specific	محدد	search box	صندوق البحث

Extra vocabulary

automobile	ذاتي الحركة/سيارة	User Experience	تجربة المستخدم
experience	خبرة	high-speed train	القطار السريع
robotic engineer	مهندس روبوت	last	أخير
autonomous machine	آلة تعمل ذاتيًا	spacecraft	سفينة فضاء
developer	مُتعهد/ مطور	safe	آمن
factory	مصنع	VR headset	جهاز الواقع الافتراضي
brainstorm	يقوم بالعصف الذهني	result	نتيجة
agriculture	زراعة	manufacturing	صناعة
excitement	إثارة	application	تطبيق

Abbreviations اختصارات

- tech → technology
- UX → user experience
- VR → virtual reality
- ad → advertisement



• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
create	يبدع	created	do	يفهم	did
design	يصمم	designed	wear	يرتدي	wore
cover	يغطي	covered	see	يرى	saw
test	يختبر	tested			
try	يحاول	tried			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

short for	اختصار لـ	much better	أفضل كثيرًا
in the middle	في المنتصف	look up	يبحث عن

 **Read the definitions.** اقرأ التعريفات.

Word	Definition
search engine (noun) محرك البحث	is a website that helps you find web pages from other websites هو موقع إلكتروني يساعدك في العثور على صفحات إلكترونية من مواقع أخرى
look up (verb) يبحث عن كلمة في القاموس	search for يبحث عن
link (noun) رابط	a connection to a website or app online اتصال بموقع أو تطبيق عبر الإنترنت
browser (noun) متصفح	is a software application that you use to look at web pages on the internet هو تطبيق برمجي تستخدمه للتطلع على الصفحات الإلكترونية عبر شبكة الاتصال العالمية
ad (noun) إعلان	short for advertisement اختصار للإعلان
specific (adj) محدد	particular to one thing خاص بشيء واحد

• Help your child read the given definitions. • ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ التعريفات المعطاة.

• **Note** : There are more than a billion web pages on the internet. يوجد أكثر من بليون صفحة إلكترونية على الإنترنت

Tech jobs of the future

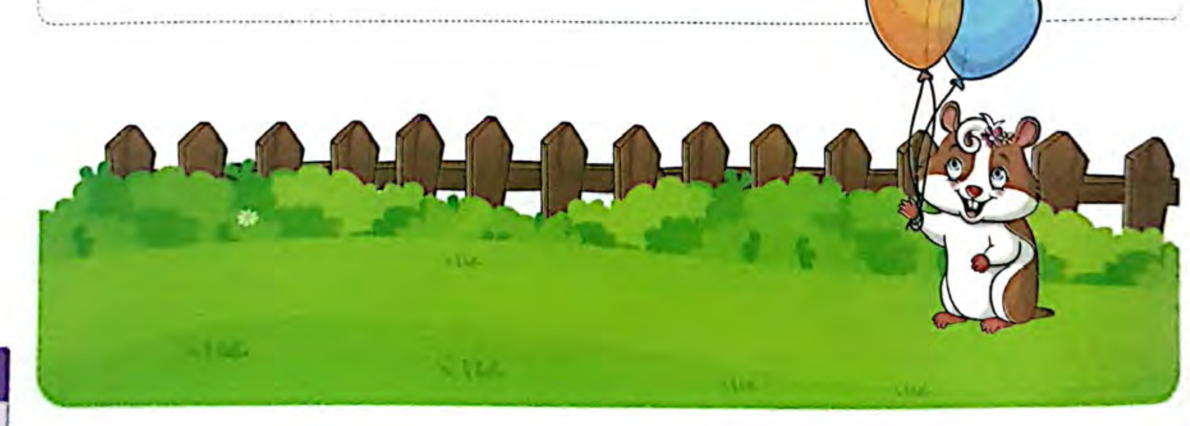
1 UX Designers: → • are interested in the experience that you have with technology.
• They make sure that it is safe, friendly and useful for all users.

2 VR developers: → • have to create the new world you see when you put on headsets.
• create experience you have when you use VR.

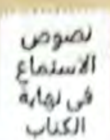
3 Robotics engineers: → • design autonomous machines.
• They test the robots.
• Robots will build new or high speed trains.

The safe search tips

- Use the safe search option in your browser.
- Use search engines that are made for children.
- Add words for kids to your search.
- Ignore ads
- Choose the best option in the search box.
- Use specific words for your searches.



General Exercises on Lesson 3



1 Listen and complete.

1. Robotics engineers are the people who .... autonomous machines.
2. Robotic engineers test the .... that they design.
3. We will use these robots to .... new automobiles.
4. Robots will be used in .... and manufacturing.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with word from the box.

ads - specific - options - safe search

Ali : I'm doing some research for my science project about renewable energy and wind farms. And I can't find what I'm looking for. Can you help me ?

Mrs Dina : Yes, of course. First, are you using the (1) .... option ?

Ali : Yes, I always use that.

Mrs Dina : Well, use (2) .... words in your search.

Ali : OK... Yes, that's much better. That has brought up lots of different web pages.

Mrs Dina : Look at the first three options in the list.
These are (3) .... So don't click on those. Choose the best option for you.

Ali : Thanks, Mrs Dina.

Mrs Dina : You're welcome.

3 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the best - the search box - option - Choose - in.

....

2. the - podcast - to - Welcome .

....

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

password	كلمة مرور	passcode	شفرة المرور
passphrase	عبارة المرور	address	عنوان

Extra vocabulary

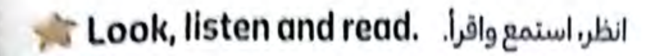
personal	شخصي	safer	أكثر أمان
information	معلومات	stronger	أقوى
birthday	عيد ميلاد	capital letters	حروف كبيرة
obvious	ملحوظ	favorite	المفضل
series	تسلسل	beautiful	جميل
character = symbol	رمز	pet	حيوان أليف
account	حساب	regular	معتاد - عادى - منتظم
space	مسافة	password code	شفرة لكلمة المرور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
add	يضيف	added	think	يفكر	thought
use	يستخدم	used	tell	يخبر	told
create	ينشئ	created	choose	يختار	chose
remember	يتذكر	remembered	make	يصنع	made

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

create strong password	ينشئ كلمة مرور قوية	first of all	قبل كل شئ
you like best	أكثر ما تحبه	mean something for you	لديها معنى بالنسبة لك





How to Create Strong Passwords and Passphrases ?

كيف تنشئ كلمات مرور وعبارات مرور قوية ؟

[1] شخصي
[2] ملحوظ
[3] تسلسل
[4] رموز
[5] حسابات

First of all ... أولا وقبل أى شئ ...

* Don't use **personal**[1] information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses.

- لا تستخدم المعلومات الشخصية مثل الأسماء، أعياد الميلاد، أرقام الهواتف أو العناوين.

* Don't use easy or **obvious**[2] words, like Password or computer, or **series**[3] of numbers, like 1234.

- لا تستخدم كلمات سهلة أو واضحة مثل كلمة المرور، أو كمبيوتر أو أرقام تسلسلية، مثل ١، ٢، ٣، ٤ ...

* Don't use less than 10 **characters**[4].

- لا تستخدم أقل من ١٠ رموز.

* Don't use the same password for different **accounts**[5]. And don't tell your friends your passwords.

- لا تستخدم نفس كلمة المرور لحسابات مختلفة. ولا تخبر أصدقائك بكلمات المرور الخاصة بك.

Create a passphrase إنشاء عبارة مرور

(Passphrases are much safer than regular passwords.)

(تعد عبارات المرور أكثر أمانًا من كلمات المرور العادية.)

1. Choose four different words that you can remember : mouseferryamazingfootball

١. اختر اربع كلمات مختلفه يمكن أن تتذكرها.

2. Add spaces to make it stronger : mouse ferry amazing football

٢. ضع مسافات لجعلها أقوى.

3. Use some capital letters : mouse FERRY amazing football

٣. استخدم بعض الحروف الكبيرة.

• Help your child look, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Create a personal password code إنشاء رمز لكلمة المرور الشخصية

1. Think of your favorite color : green ١. فكر في لونك المفضل :
2. Add a number : green 87 ٢. أضف رقم :
3. Add your favorite school subject : green 87 science ٣. أضف المادة الدراسية المفضلة لك :
4. Add a symbol : green 87 $ science ٤. أضف رمز :

Create a password sentence إنشاء جملة مرور

1. Think of a sentence that means something for you : My beautiful pet cat is named Bes ١. فكر في جملة تعني شئ ما بالنسبة لك.
2. Use the first letter of each word : MbpcinB ٢. استخدم الحرف الأول من كل كلمة.
3. Add numbers and characters you can remember : MbpcinB*49& ٣. أضف أرقام وحروف يمكنك تذكرها.



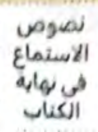


Notes for parents

• Help your child know how to create a strong passwords to stay safe online.

• ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف ينشىء كلمات مرور قوية ليبقى آمنًا على الإنترنت.

General Exercises on Lesson 4



1 Listen and complete.

1. Don't use .... information like names.
2. Don't use .... or obvious words.
3. Don't use the same .... for different accounts.
4. Don't .... your friends your passwords.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. passwords – some – letters – Use – capital – for.

....

2. you – remember – numbers – Add – can.

....

3 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements

How to create strong passwords

Guiding elements : personal information - characters - different account - friends

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons **5&6**

- Reading
- Writing
- Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

ship's captain	قبطان السفينة	container ship	سفينة حاويات
Suez Canal	قناة السويس	containers	حاويات

Extra vocabulary

machinery	مجموعة آلات	items	عناصر / أشياء
facts	حقائق	available	متاح
land	الأرض / اليابسة	business	عمل تجارى / مؤسسة
entrepreneur	مُبادر/رائد أعمال	form	شكل
economic	اقتصادى	product	منتج
freight train	قطار شحن	environmentally-friendly	صديق البيئة
classmate	زميل دراسي		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

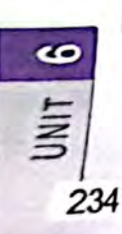
Present		Past
wave	يلوح	waved
harm	يؤذى / يضر	harmed
wait	ينتظر	waited
depend	يعتمد	depended
answer	يجيب	answered
laugh	يضحك	laughed
transport	ينتقل	transported

Irregular

Present		Past
come	يأتى	came
say	يقول	said
go	يذهب	went
has/have	يمتلك	had
catch	يلحق بـ	caught

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

going along ..	على امتداد	travel across	ينتقل عبر
a relaxing job	وظيفة مريحة	came back onto	عاد إلى
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	come from	يأتى من
travel past	يمر بـ	depend on	يعتمد على



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

• **Look and write the words.**

انظر واكتب الكلمات.

1. 
....

2. 
....

3. 
....

Listen and read.



A fun job !

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along **the Suez Canal**[1]. They were so big. 'It must be so fun to be a **ship's captain**[2] !'thought Heba. 'The ship moves so slowly. I think it's a relaxing job'.

(1) قناة السويس
(2) قبطان السفينة
(3) سفينة حاويات
(4) يلوح بيده



Heba loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ships came from.

One day, Heba's father said, "My friend, Amr, works on a **container ship**[3]. He will travel past our house today. Let's go and **wave**[4] at him".



Heba and her family went to the side of the Suez Canal and waited for Amr's ship. It was huge and had hundreds of containers on it.

الوظيفة الممتعة !

نظرت هبة خارج نافذة منزل عائلتها على السفن الذاهبة على امتداد قناة السويس. كانت السفن كبيرة جدًا. «بالتأكيد سيكون الأمر ممتعًا أن تكون قبطان سفينة !» فكرت هبه «إن السفينة تتحرك ببطء» أعتقد أنها وظيفة مريحة". أحبت هبه مشاهدة السفن. هى شاهدتهم غالبًا مع أصدقائها. هى أحبت أن تفكر عن من أين تأتى السفن. فى يوم ما، قال والد هبه "صديقى عمرو يعمل على سفينة حاويات. هو سيمر بجانب منزلنا اليوم. لنذهب ونلوّح له". ذهبت هبه وعائلتها إلى جانب قناة السويس وانتظروا سفينة عمرو. لقد كانت ضخمة وبها المئات من الحاويات عليها.

• *Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words.*
• *Help your child listen and read the story.*

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر الى الصور ويكتب الكلمات.
- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

"Where is the ship going ? 'asked Heba.

'You can ask Amr next week, answered her father. He will come and **visit**[5] us then."

When Amr came to visit Heba, she had a long list of questions to ask him. He laughed and agreed to answer them all.

'I was on the ship when it went through the canal,' he said. "Then I came back onto the **land**[6], and the ship went to France. It came from China. There were lots of toys and **clothes**[7] in the containers".

'Is it fun on the ship ?' asked Heba.

'It's very hard work !' answered Amr. 'The captain has to drive the **huge**[8] ship for a long time. The ship has to be straight. Sometimes it is very difficult when it is **windy**[9]. Would you like to come and visit a ship one day ?

'Oh, yes please ! answered Heba.

[5] بزور
[6] يابسة
[7] ملابس
[8] ضخم
[9] عاصف

Describe the relationship between ideas.
وضح العلاقة بين التفاصيل.

Learn 1. Where does Heba live ?
- She lives next to the Suez Canal.

Practice 2. What are in the containers on Amr's ship ?

....

سألت هبه «إلى أين تذهب السفينة ؟» «يمكنك أن تسألي عمرو الأسبوع القادم»، أجاب الأب" هو سيأتى ويزورنا حينها". عندما جاء عمرو للزيارة كان لهبه قائمة طويلة من الأسئلة لكى تسأله. ضحك ووافق أن يجيبهم كلهم. «لقد كنت على السفينة عندما ذهبت عبر القناة،» هو قال. «ثم عُدت إلى اليابسة وذهبت السفينة إلى فرنسا. لقد جائت من الصين. كان يوجد الكثير من ألعاب الأطفال والملابس فى الحاويات». «هل المكان ممتع على السفينة ؟» سألت هبه. «إنه عمل شاق جدًا !» أجاب عمرو. «على القبطان أن يقود السفينة الضخمة لمدة طويلة. يجب أن تسير السفينة بشكل مستقيم». أحيانًا يكون الأمر صعبًا جدًا عندما يكون الجو عاصف. أتودين أن تأتى وتزورى سفينة فى يوم من الأيام ؟" «أوه نعم من فضلك !» أجابت هبه.



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٥ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The Young Entrepreneurs

An entrepreneur is someone who starts a new business. In this project, you are going to work with a group of classmates and start your own business. First, you need to decide what goods you will sell, or what services you will offer. Then, you have to decide where you will sell your goods or offer your services. Finally, you will make a poster to help explain your business plan.

رواد الأعمال الشباب:

رائد الأعمال هو الشخص الذي يبدأ عمل جديد. في هذا المشروع. ستعمل مع مجموعة من زملاء الدراسة وتبدأ عملك الخاص. أولاً، عليك أن تقرر السلع التى سوف تبيعها أو الخدمات التي ستقدمها بعد ذلك، عليك أن تقرر المكان الذى ستبيع فيه سلعك أو تقدم خدماتك. أخيرًا ستقوم بعمل ملصق للمساعدة فى شرح خطة العمل.

Notes for parents
- Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

II Writing skill

How to write a paragraph كيفية كتابة فقرة إنشائية

1 Brainstorm some ideas. قم بعصف ذهني لبعض الأفكار

2 Do research to find out facts about the topic.
قم بعمل بحث لتكتشف حقائق عن الموضوع.

3 Put your ideas in order. ضع أفكارك منظمة / مرتبة.

4 Write an introduction sentence. اكتب جملة مقدمة.

5 Write the main information of the paragraph.
اكتب المعلومات الرئيسية عن الفقرة الإنشائية.

6 Write a conclusion sentence. اكتب جملة ختامية.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

1. Write an introduction sentence to start your paragraph.
اكتب جملة ابتدائية لتبدأ فقرتك الإنشائية.
2. End your paragraph with a conclusion sentence.
إنه فقرتك الإنشائية بالجملة الاستنتاجية.



Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Importance of transportation

Guiding elements :

• planes • on boats • fast-clean • on roads

....
....
....
....
....

• Help your child know how to write a paragraph. • ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يكتب فقرة إنشائية.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6



• 1 **Listen and complete.**

1. Heba loved watching the ....
2. She often .... them with her friends.
3. She went with her father to the side of the Suez ....
4. The ships are ....

• 2 **Read the following text and answer the questions below.**

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances. First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery. Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food. Next, rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation. Freight trains can travel across the country and trucks can travel from city to city. Pipelines are used for carrying natural resources such as oil, natural gas and water. Finally, different forms of transportation are used for transporting different goods. The transportation we use depends on the product, the time available and the distance.

A. Choose the correct answer :

1. The text is about ....

a. trucks
b. freight trains
c. short distances
d. transporting goods

2. .... are used for carrying natural resources.

a. Ships
b. Airplanes
c. Pipelines
d. Trains

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Are airplanes better for transporting than ships ? Why ?

....

4. Give two ways of transporting goods.

....



3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

windy - captain - ship - sunny

Working on a ship is a very hard work. The (1) .... has to drive the huge ship for a long time. The (2) .... has to be straight. Sometimes it is very difficult when it is (3) ....

4 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. the ship - going - Where - is ?

....

2. the window - looked out - of - She.

....

5 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

The Suez Canal

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : ships - container - jobs - captain - straight



Skills

UNIT 6

1 Reading comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

I'm very excited about a new kind of transportation in Egypt. And it's not a car, bus, or boat. It's the new electric trains. The government will finish the new electric line in the future. Did you know that these trains can go 250 kilometers per hour? That's pretty fast.

شرح الحل بعد قراءة كل الجمل نلاحظ أنها تدور حول :
[the weather]

The text is about ....

or- The main / general idea of the text is about ....

or- The text talks about ....

or- What's the main idea of the text? / What's the text about ?

a. electric cars b. electric trains
c. electric bikes d. electric boats

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

We are studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't travel over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for transportation. They moved their goods in different kinds of boats and ships. People also travel up and down the river.

The text is about ....

or- The main / general idea of the text is about ....

or- The text talks about ....

or- What's the main idea of the text? / What's the text about ?

a. transportation in the past
b. modern transportation
c. transportation in the future
d. electric transportation

يختبر سؤال الكتابة معرفتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [الوظائف التكنولوجية] و [القطارات الكهربائية] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها في تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Topics
Tech jobs	▶ Write the meaning : مهندسين .... تجربة .... يستخدم .... مطور/متعهد .... خيارات .... تكنولوجيا	▶ Complete the sentences : 1. VR .... create the experience you have when using VR. 2.Museums will .... VR. 3. UX is short for User .... 4. Robotics .... are the people who design autonomous machines.	▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences : "Tech jobs"
Electric trains	سريع .... وسائل نقل .... كهربي .... حكومة .... قارب .... نوع	1. I'm very excited about a new kind of .... in Egypt. 2. It's the new .... train. 3. The .... will finish the new electric line in the future. 4. The electric train can go very	▶ Write an email using the sentences : "Electric trains"



3 Reading & writing

الجزء يمكنك من ربط الكلمات التي درستها بجمل ليساعدك على التمكن من مهارة القراءة والكتابة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Tech jobs of the future	UX Designer	UX Designers are interested in the experience that you have with technology.
	safe - useful	They make sure that it is safe, friendly, and useful for all users
	VR developer	VR developers create the experience you have when using VR
	museums	Museums will use VR.
	universities	Universities will teach future doctors and nurses with VR.
	robotics engineers	Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines (robots).
	dangerous	We will use robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans.
	farms	People will use robots on farms, in factories and in schools.
Search safely	option - browser	Use the safe search option in your browser.
	kids - add	You can add the words for kids to your search.
	sponsor	The word sponsor means that it is an ad.
	choose - best	Choose the best option in the search box.
	specific words	Use specific words for your searches.
Passwords and passphrases	personal	Don't use personal information.
	easy - obvious	Don't use easy or obvious words.
	characters	Don't use less than 10 characters.
	same password	Don't use the same password for different accounts.
	friends	Don't tell your friends your passwords.
	Passphrases	Passphrases are much safer than regular passwords.



4 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤ جملة]

1 Transporting goods and products

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances.[1] First, we can transport goods long distances by water.[2] Ships move slowly, but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery.[3] Second, we can transport goods long distances by air.[4] Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.[5] Rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation.[6]

2 How to look up information online

Use specific words in your search.[7] Put quotation marks around the words to make it more specific.[8] The search engine will understand that you want very specific results.[9] Add the words "for kids" to your search.[10] There are special search engines for children.[11] This will bring up web pages that are suitable for you.[12]

3 How to create a personal password code

Creating a personal password code is important.[13] Think of your favorite color : green.[14] Add a number: green87.[15] Add your favorite school subject : green87 science.[16] Add a symbol : green87 $ science.[17] Now write the full code.[18]

4 Robotics engineers

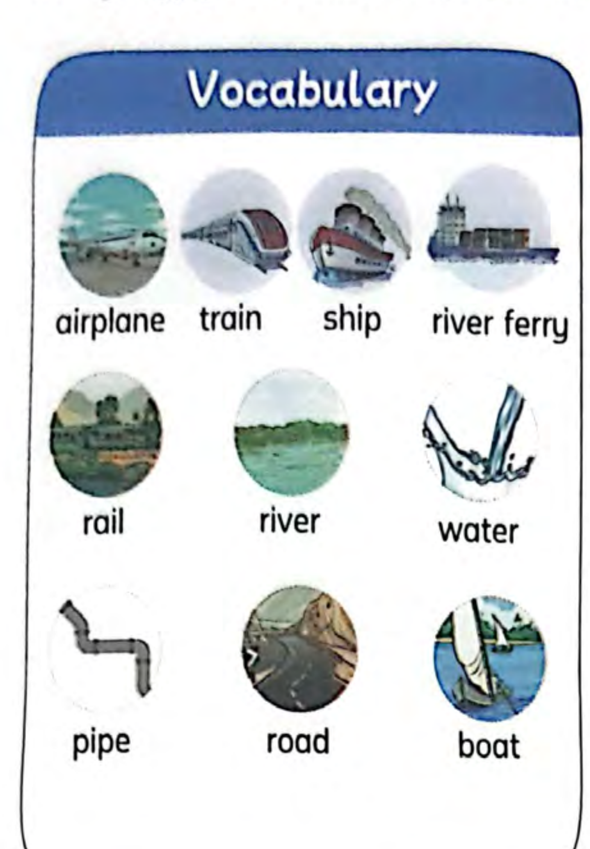
Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines - that's just another word for robots.[19] They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do.[20] We will use these robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do.[21] For example, we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains.[22] They will probably be used in agriculture and manufacturing, too.[23] Most families will have a personal robot at home.[24]



Review on unit 6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة السادسة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary



How to create strong passwords

1. Don't use personal information.
2. Don't use easy or obvious words.
3. Don't use less than 10 characters.
4. Don't use the same password for different accounts.

Language

The Future Simple Tense

1 Statement:

①	②	③	④
Subj.	will / won't	inf.	باقى الجملة .
I	will	take	a flying taxi to school.

2 Question:

①	②	③	④
Will	Subj.	inf.	باقى السؤال ?
Will	you	travel	to the Moon one day ?



Test 11 on Unit 6



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can .... goods by water over long distances.
   a. help b. transport c. plan d. fill
2. Ships move ....
   a. hard b. fast c. slowly d. high
3. .... can carry heavy items.
   a. Airplanes b. Bikes c. Planes d. Ships
4. Airplanes are .... than ships.
   a. slower b. heavier c. faster d. cheaper

2 Listen and complete.

1. My uncle .... in Algiers.
2. Algiers is the .... of Algeria.
3. We will take an .... to Algiers.
4. I hope my .... let me sit by the window.

3 Read and complete the text from the words from the box.

transportation – travel – lands – goods

We're studying the Ancient Egyptians at school. We found out that people didn't (1) .... over land very much in Egypt then. Almost everyone used the river for (2) .... They moved their (3) .... in different kinds of boats and ships. People also traveled up and down the river.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

VR is short for Virtual Reality. Do you like playing video games ? Have you ever tried playing a virtual reality game ? To do this, you have to wear a special VR headset that you wear on your head. It covers your eyes like glasses. VR developers have to create the new world you see when you put on these headsets. They also create the experience you have when using VR. But there are more uses for VR than just exciting games. Museums will use them. And universities will teach future doctors and nurses with them too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. VR headset covers your ....
   a. back b. face c. eyes d. body
2. .... will use VR headset in the future.
   a. Animals b. Parks c. Museums d. Forests

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do you need to play a Virtual Reality game ? ....

4. What is VR ? ....

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False). T F

1. Grandpa makes the patterns with five layers of cotton. ☐ ☐

2. Rasha likes learning new things. ☐ ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The picture of flowers is made of thousands of small ....

a. patterns b. cotton c. stitches d. colors

2. .... flower is Grandpa's best sewing.

a. Daisy b. Colored c. Lotus d. Sun

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I think it will .... tomorrow.

a. snows b. snow c. snowing d. to snow

2. .... you finished your project yet ?

a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Were

3. She .... go to school on a bus tomorrow.

a. hasn't b. won't c. isn't d. don't

4. A : How will you .... to England next month ? B : By plane.

a. traveling b. travels c. travel d. traveled

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - new - the - It - train - electric. ....

2. will - she - How - pass - exam - the ? ....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

"Search online safely" مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : browser - specific - option - sponsor

....

....

....

....

....

Test 12 on Unit 6

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(Kafr El-Sheikh - Desouk 2023)

1. Lots of people use .... to do their jobs.
   a. televisions b. radios c. passwords d. computers
2. With a computer, you can find out ....
   a. homework b. emails c. information d. messages
3. With a computer, you can send ....
   a. homework b. emails c. greetings d. housework
4. Computers help you to use the ....
   a. TV b. cell phone c. internet d. radio

2 Listen and complete.

1. It's very important to create .... passwords.
2. To be safe online, use the safe search .... in your browser.
3. Read the option in the search ....
4. Use specific words for your .... (Alexandria - Gomrok 2023)

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

items - fresh - distances - bad

There are many ways of transporting goods. We use planes for transporting (1) .... foods. Planes are fast and are useful in long (2) .... Ships move slowly, but they can carry large (3) .... such as automobiles and machinery. (Menofia - Menouf 2023)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below. (Damietta 2023)

Computers are very important in the world of modern technology. People can use them in many ways. They can book tickets, buy goods and sell things. Teachers use them to make exams and prepare notes and students can find information and write reports. At home, computers can answer telephones and emails. By using computers people can save time. Although computers have many advantages, they have also some disadvantages. Young children use computers to play games for long hours. Sitting still isn't good for their health. It can destroy their eyes and their bones.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea in the text is about ....
   a. reports b. computers c. teachers d. homes
2. The underlined word "destroy" is the text means ....
   a. hurt b. tell c. make d. answer

B. Answer the following questions :

3. How can people use computers at school? ....

4. Get one disadvantage of using computers. ....

[Damietta - El Rowda 2023]

5 **The reader**

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa wanted to be an engineer or a teacher.		
2. Zeinab's friends are not clever.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Khayameya School is traveling all ....
   a. winter b. summer c. fall d. spring
2. Zeinab and her mom went to her grandparents by .... [Minya - Matay 2023]
   a. train b. car c. plane d. bus

6 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. .... you ever been on a plane? [Giza - El Haram 2023]
   a. Has b. Have c. Do d. Did
2. .... there be flying cars in the future? - Yes, there will. [Cairo - El-Salam 2023]
   a. Does b. Will c. Has d. have
3. He .... meet his grandparents last Friday. [Cairo - Cairo West 2023]
   a. does not b. is not c. didn't d. was not
4. Hatem .... at home yesterday. He traveled to Luxor last week. [Cairo - El-Nozha 2023]
   a. wasn't b. weren't c. isn't d. haven't

7 **Order the words to make correct sentences.**

1. the - connected - An electrician - electricity. [Qalyoubia - Obour 2023]

....

2. ever - on - traveled - you - a train - Have ? [Damietta - Farskour 2023]

....

8 **Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.**

[Ismailia - Fayed 2023]

"Tech job of the future" مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : robotic - positive - like - apps

....

....

....

....

....

....

Review 2 General Revision on Units 4,5&6

I Vocabulary

Unit 4

city مدينة كبيرة	yarn بكر خيط	carpet سجادة
village قرية	dye صبغة	congestion ازدحام مرورى
town مدينة صغيرة	spin غزل	guess يخمن
isolated معزول	warp خيوط	concert حفلة موسيقية
densely populated كثافة سكانية مرتفعة	sparsely populated كثافة سكانية منخفضة	guide مرشد

Unit 5

natural resources موارد طبيعية	soil تربة	forest غابة
renewable resources موارد متجددة	silver فضة	ground أرض
non-renewable resources موارد غير متجددة	gold ذهب	handle مقبض
materials مواد خام	metal معدن	ran out ينفذ
wood خشب	stone حجر	plastic بلاستيك

Unit 6

pipe ماسورة	ship سفينة	River Nile نهر النيل
air هواء	train قطار	airport مطار
road طريق	transportation وسائل نقل	suburbs ضواحى
airplane طائرة	diving الغطس	planet كوكب
ferry عبّارة	goods بضائع	vacation إجازة



• Unit 4 — A. Plural nouns :

Regular plural		Irregular plural	
book	books	wolf	wolves
bus	buses	man	men
baby	babies	goose	geese

B. Conjunctions

- After
- as soon as
- even though
- although
- so that
- before
- while
- every time

• Unit 5 — Present Simple Tense (with third person singular)

Formation

He + She + It → inf → s / es / ies

ex.: • She wakes up at 7:00.
• He plays football in the club.
• The baby cries when it's hungry.

Possessive adj.

- I → my
- He → his
- She → her
- We → our
- They → their
- You → your

• Unit 6 — Future Simple Tense (for prediction)

Formation Sub. + will / won't + inf.

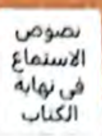
- People will travel to the moon in 2050.
- Transportation won't use fossil fuels in 2060.
- Will you travel to the moon one day?

- Yes, I'll. - No, I won't.



Monthly Assessment

October Test



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our .... is made of all bones.
   a. stomach b. heart c. skeleton d. nose
2. Bones are ....
   a. soft b. hard c. weak d. thin
3. .... are attached to bones.
   a. Ears b. Muscles c. Eyes d. Legs
4. When we ...., we use our bones and muscles.
   a. fly b. study c. move d. think

2 Listen and complete.

1. Some people who cannot see or hear have different ways to ....
2. People who have difficulty hearing can .... sign language.
3. Sign language is a/an .... language.
4. Sign language in .... is different from sign language in the USA.

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

breathe - stomach - liquid - digestive

Hana : Sama, do you know that we have digestive system ?
Sama : Yes, I know. But what does that system do ?
Hana : We use our (1) .... system when we eat and drink.
Sama : Where does food go after we swallow it ?
Hana : It goes to our (2) ....
Sama : What changes the food into energy and nutrients ?
Hana : A special (3) .... changes the food into energy and nutrients.
Sama : Wow ! That's great.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, amphibians are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. The amphibians can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs. They also absorb water through their skin.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. mammals b. birds c. reptiles d. amphibians
2. Amphibians can take in oxygen through their ....
   a. fur b. ears c. eyes d. skin and lungs

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do amphibians need to stay alive ?

....

4. How can amphibians absorb water ?

....

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Zeinab was happy on the second week of holiday.		
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her grandparents.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. The Khayameya design of flower takes .... to be done.
   a. two weeks b. four months c. one year d. four days
4. Grandfather's design is made of thousands and thousands of small ....
   a. stitches b. stickers c. photos d. machines

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Omar and Adam .... play football on Sundays.
   a. haven't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. don't
2. John .... 10 years old.
   a. am b. is c. do d. are
3. The camel is taller .... the horse.
   a. there b. then c. than d. their
4. Why are you running .... , Ehab?
   a. quick b. fast c. slow d. noisy

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. mammals - Bats - the only - fly - are - that.

   ....

2. lay - vertebrates - Which - eggs ?

   ....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Respiratory system

Guiding elements :

1. What system do we use when we breathe ?
2. What does our heart do ?
3. What do our lungs do ?

....

....

....

....

Monthly Assessment

November Test

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Braille is a code which uses combinations of ....
   a. patterns b. shapes c. dots d. marks
2. Braille represents .... or punctuation marks.
   a. letters and numbers b. shapes and colors
   c. letters and shapes d. numbers and sums
3. People who are .... can use Braille.
   a. deaf b. blind c. strong d. weak
4. They use .... instead of sight.
   a. touch b. hearing c. smell d. taste

2 Listen and complete.

1. Folk musicians from .... Egypt play Saidi music.
2. Saidi music uses string instruments such as ....
3. Farther .... is the home of Nubian music.
4. The most popular instruments in .... music are the shabbaba and the rebaba.

3 Read and complete the dialogue from the words in the box.

eat – fish – Coffee – chocolate

Waiter : Welcome, sir! What would you like to eat?
Eyad : I'd like (1) .... and rice, please.
Waiter : What would you like to drink?
Eyad : (2) ...., please.
Waiter : What about desserts?
Eyad : Do you have (3) .... cake?
Waiter : Yes. Anything else?
Eyad : No, thank you.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below.

Being a Paralympic or Olympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many opportunities for everyone to take part and <u>have fun</u> doing a sport they enjoy.

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He took part in the 2016 Rio Paralympics, where the team won bronze. He has played with his team in Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions for Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The general idea of the text is ".............".
   a. Traditional clothes b. Important job
   c. Paralympic athletes d. Famous places

2. The underlined phrase "<u>have fun</u>" means "..............".

a. ask b. sleep c. enjoy d. leave

B. **Answer the following questions :**

3. What sport does Ahmed Abdel Fattah do ?

4. What medals did Ahmed Abdel Fathah get ?

5 The reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Zeinab and her grandfather visited the park.		
2. Zeinab loved the Khayameya design with flowers at her grandfather's shop.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Zeinab's grandpa was one of the.................... .

a. engineers b. tent makers c. doctors d. writers

2. .... wanted to be an engineer in the past .

a. Grandpa b. Zeinab c. Rasha d. Lobna

6 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. Is this cup.................... ?

a. your b. yours c. my d. their

2. The whale shark is the.................... fish.

a. bigger b. big c. biggest d. bigger than

3. John.................... a bear in the garden an hour ago.

a. seen b. sees c. see d. saw

4. .... you go to school on Fridays ?

a. Does b. Have c. Do d. Did

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. belong - to - <u>These</u> - Mazen - shoes.

....

2. heart - blood - pump - <u>Does</u> - our - the ?

....

8 Write a text FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements.

Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements : long history - pharaoh - Upper Egypt

....

....

....

....

Non-Fiction Reader | Coral Reefs

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Vocabulary Part 1

tiny	ضئيل (صغير الحجم)	polyps	البوليب (حيوانات صغيرة مثل حيوان المرجان)
hard exoskeleton	هيكل خارجي صلب	clear	شفاف
ocean	محيط	algae	طحالب
organisms	كائنات حية	shallow	مياه ضحلة
tropical fish	أسماك استوائية	habitat	بيئة

Vocabulary Part 2

camouflage	تمويه (تخفى)	unusual	غير عادى
leave	يغادر	global warming	احتباس حرارى
temperature	درجة حرارة	coral bleaching	ابيضاض المرجان
ecosystem	النظام البيئى	marine	بحرى
pollution	تلوث	rise	يرتفع
reduce	يقلل	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر

Read and identify these definitions.

Word	Definitions
exoskeleton الهيكل الخارجي	a skeleton that is on the outside of an invertebrate's body هو هيكل يوجد خارج جسم الحيوان اللافقارى
polyp (البوليب)	a very small and simple creature that lives in the sea مخلوق دقيق جدًا وبسيط يعيش فى البحر
organism كائن حى	a living animal or plant حيوان أو نبات حى
clear شفاف	no color, you can see through it بدون لون، تستطيع أن ترى من خلاله
shallow ضحل	not deep; in the sea or a river, the water doesn't go down very far ليس عميق ؛ المياه لا تكون عميقة فى البحر أو النهر
algae طحالب	very simple organisms that live in water كائنات حية دقيقة تعيش فى المياه.

- Help your child listen and repeat the words.
- Help your child to read and identify the given definitions.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويردد الكلمات.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على التعريفات المعطاة.



part 1 ▸ What are coral reefs ?

 **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

What are coral reefs ?

They look like they are made of plants, but this is wrong. **Coral reefs**[1] are made of thousands of tiny **invertebrates**[2], called **polyps**[3]. They have a **hard exoskeleton**[4], and they don't move - they stay in the same place all the time.

[1] شعاب مرجانية
[2] لا فقارية
[3] بوليب
[4] هيكل خارجي صلب
[5] ألوان ساطعة
[6] طحالب
[7] كائنات حية

Different species of polyps grow into different shapes and sizes, but they all grow very slowly.
They can sometimes grow for more than ten thousand years. We think coral reefs have very **bright colors**[5]. However, most coral polyps don't have a color. They have clear bodies and their exoskeletons are white. The color comes from tiny **algae**[6] that live inside the polyps. It is their bright colors that we can see.
In a small part of a coral reef, there are millions of these tiny **organisms**[7].





ما هي الشعاب المرجانية؟

- تبدو وكأنها مكونه من النباتات ولكن هذا خطأ. تتكون الشعاب المرجانية من آلاف اللافقاريات الصغيرة جدًا التى تدعى البوليب. فهى لديها هيكل خارجى صلب ولا تتحرك. تبقى فى نفس المكان طول الوقت. ينمو أنواع مختلفة من البوليب فى أشكال وأحجام مختلفة. لكنها تنمو ببطء شديد. فى بعض الأحيان ممكن أن تنمو فى أكثر من عشرة آلاف سنة.

- نعتقد أن الشعاب المرجانية لها ألوان زاهية جدًا ومع ذلك فإن معظم الشعب المرجانية ليس لها لون. لديها أجسام صافية وهيكلها الخارجى أبيض. يأتى اللون من الطحالب الصغيرة التى تعيش داخل الشعاب وهذه هى الألوان الزاهية التي يمكننا رؤيتها. ففى جزء صغير من الشعب المرجانية يوجد ملايين من الكائنات الحية الصغيرة.

Notes for parents

- Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

Coral polyps can live in all the **oceans**[8] around the world, in very cold water and in **warm seas**[9]. They only grow together and make coral reefs in warm water. The water must be **shallow**[10] too, because the reefs need **sunlight**[11] to live and to grow. Coral reefs are **homes**[12] for many other animals, so they are a very important habitat. **Tropical fish**[13] often have bright colors so they can hide safely in a reef. It is a type of **camouflage**[14]. The unusual shapes of coral reefs also give lots of places to **hide**[15]. The Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in Africa and the third largest reef system in the world. It is about 4,000 kilometers long, and covers over 2,000 square kilometers.

[8] محيطات
[9] بحار دافئة
[10] ضحل - سطحي
[11] أشعة الشمس
[12] مواطن
[13] أسماك استوائية
[14] تمويه
[15] يختبئ





- يمكن أن تعيش السلسلة المرجانية في جميع المحيطات حول العالم، في المياه شديدة البرودة وفي البحار الدافئة. فهي تنمو معًا وتشكل الشعاب المرجانية فقط في المياه الدافئة. يجب أن تكون المياه ضحلة أيضًا لأن الشعاب المرجانية تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس لتعيش وتنمو.
- الشعاب المرجانية هي موطن للعديد من الحيوانات الأخرى لذلك فهي موطن هام جدًا. غالبًا ما يكون الأسماك الاستوائية زاهية اللون حتى تتمكن من الاختباء بأمان في الشعاب المرجانية. وهذا نوع من التمويه [التخفي]. تتيح أيضًا الأشكال غير العادية للشعب المرجانية أماكن كثيرة للاختباء. إن الشعاب المرجانية المتواجدة بالبحر الأحمر تكون أكبر نظام للشعاب المرجانية في أفريقيا، وثالث أكبر نظام للشعاب في العالم، وهو حوالي ٤٠٠٠ كيلو متر ويغطي أكثر من ٢٠٠٠ كيلو متر مربع.



part 2

▸ What is coral bleaching?

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

At the moment, the seas and **oceans**[1] on Earth are getting warmer. This is because of **global warming**[2]. When the water **temperature**[3] rises, the algae inside the coral polyps leave. The algae give the **coral reef**[4] its bright colors. So, when the algae leave, the reef is pale and white. This is called coral bleaching.

Coral **bleaching**[5] can also happen when there is **pollution**[6], too much sunlight, or not enough water. When a reef loses its color, the coral dies, and the animals who live in the reef cannot stay there.

In 2020, scientists discovered that some coral reefs in the Red Sea can **survive**[7] changes in temperature. They are the only types of coral in the world that can do this. The water of the Red Sea is warmer than other seas, so the coral in the Red Sea does not have the same problem with coral bleaching.

Scientists[8] hope that they can use the Red Sea coral to protect other coral reefs around the world. To protect coral reefs we also need to have less pollution in our oceans. We must also work together to **reduce**[9] global warming. It's important to protect the Red Sea coral reef and other coral reefs around the world.

[1] محيطات
[2] احتباس حراري
[3] درجة الحرارة
[4] شعاب مرجانية
[5] تبييض
[6] تلوث
[7] يبقى على قيد الحياة
[8] علماء
[9] يقلل





• في هذه اللحظة، تزداد البحار والمحيطات على الأرض دفئًا. هذا بسبب الاحتباس الحراري. عندما ترتفع درجة حرارة الماء تغادر الطحالب التي بداخل السلاسل المرجانية. تعطي الطحالب للشعب المرجانية ألوانها الزاهية. لذلك، عندما تغادر الطحالب تصبح الشعب المرجانية شاحبة وبيضاء. وهذا ما يسمى تبيض المرجان. كما يمكن أن يحدث تبيض المرجان عندما يكون هناك تلوث أو وجود الكثير من أشعة الشمس أو عدم وجود المياه بشكل كافي. فعندما تفقد الشعاب المرجانية ألوانها فإنها تموت وبالتالي لا تستطيع الحيوانات التي تعيش بداخلها البقاء. في عام ٢٠٢٠ اكتشف العلماء أن بعض الشعاب المرجانية في البحر الأحمر يمكنها أن تتحمل التغيرات في درجات الحرارة، فهم النوع الوحيد من المرجان في العالم التي يمكنها فعل ذلك. فمياه البحر الأحمر أكثر دفئًا من البحار الأخرى، لذلك لا يوجد نفس المشكلة للمرجان في البحر الأحمر مع ابيضاض المرجان. ويأمل العلماء أن يتمكنوا من استخدام مرجان البحر الأحمر لحماية الشعاب المرجانية الأخرى حول العالم. ولحماية الشعاب المرجانية نحتاج أيضًا الى تقليل التلوث في محيطاتنا. ويجب أن نعمل سويًا لتقليل الاحتباس الحراري. من المهم أن نحمي الشعاب المرجانية في البحر الأحمر والشعاب المرجانية حول العالم.

• Help your child to look at the pictures and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص



General Exercises on Non Fiction Reader

1 Read and write T(True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Coral reefs have bright colors.		
2. Coral reefs don't need sunlight.		
3. Tropical fish live in coral reefs.		
4. Polyps have a hard exoskeleton.		
5. Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny vertebrates.		
6. Polyps don't move.		
7. Coral polyps have a color.		
8. Coral polyps can live in all the lakes around the world.		
9. Tropical fish can hide safely in a reef.		
10. Coral reefs are homes for many animals.		

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The reef is .... and white when the algae leave. this is called coral bleaching

   a. pale b. dark c. good d. salty

2. The color of the coral reefs comes from tiny ....

   a. algae b. ocean c. moon d. sunlight

3. The Red Sea coral reefs are the .... in Africa.

   a. smallest b. largest c. tallest d. fattest

4. Polyps stay in the .... place all the time.

   a. different b. shape c. same d. beside

5. Coral polyps can live in .... water.

   a. shallow b. behind c. beside d. deep

Fiction Reader

Khayameya Summer

صيف الخيامية

BY MOIRA DUTTON

Story Map

خريطة القصة

The characters الشخصيات


Zeinab


Grandma


Mom


Grandpa


Doha


Engy


Rasha


Lobna

The setting المكان و الزمان

Places الأماكن

- At Grandparents' house في منزل الأجداد
- At Grandpa's shop فى محل الجد
- At Khayameya Street في شارع الخيامية

Time الوقت

- On the summer holiday
  فى إجازة الصيف

Story plot حبكة القصة



Beginning

- Zeinab was bored on the summer holiday.
- Zeinab wanted to visit her grandpa.
- Zeinab and her grandfather visited the shop.



Middle

- Grandfather likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns.
- Grandfather can teach Zeinab to sew Khayameya.
- Zeinab has an idea to call her friends to learn with her.



End

- Grandfather showed the girls how to sew Khayameya.
- Other people joined the grandfather and the girls.
- Khayameya school is traveling all summer.

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور


artisan حرفي


geometric pattern
نمط هندسي


layer طبقة


lotus flower
زهرة اللوتس


sew يخيط


stitch غرزة


Tent Maker
صانع الخيام


street شارع


measure يقيس


amazing مدهش


engineer مهندس



teacher معلم


artist رسام/فنان


art رسم



math رياضيات


Khayameya
خياميه

Read and identify.

artisan : Some artisans make tables and chairs from wood. - حرفي

geometric pattern : We can sometimes see it of colorful tiles - نمط هندسي

lotus flowers : grow on rivers and lakes - زهرة اللوتس

sew : to make your own clothes - يخيط

stitch : to fix buttons - غرزة

New Vocabulary

summer holiday	إجازة الصيف	eyes	عيون	wonderful	رائع
bored	ممل	sew	يخيط	smiled	ابتسم
visit	يزور	pieces	قطع	geometric	هندسي
get off	ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات	hand	يد	birds	طيور
at the moment	في الوقت الراهن	amazing	مدهش	teacher	مُعلم
sad	حزين	shop	محل	measure	يقيس
pleased	مسرور	picture	لوحة / صورة	engineer	مهندس
train	قطار	flowers	زهور	love	يحب
Tent Makers	صناع الخيام	stitches	غرز	job	وظيفة
artisan	حرفي	favorite	مفضل	choose	يختار
difficult	صعب	design	تصميم	artist	فنان
math	رياضيات	learn	يتعلم	changed my mind	غيرت قراري
show	يوضح	teach	يُعلم	work out	يحل
call	يتصل تليفونيًا	lotus flowers	زهور اللوتس	invent	يخترع
art	رسم / فن	pattern	نمط	too	أيضًا
welcome	مرحبًا	great	رائع	arrived	وصَل
together	معًا	clever	ماهر/ذكي	layers	طبقات
watch	يشاهد	idea	فكرة	great	عظيم / رائع
join us!	انضم إلينا!	problems	مشكلات	looks fun	يبدو ممتعًا
around	حول	new	جديد	places	أماكن
tea	شاي	new things	أشياء جديدة	laughed	ضحك
Khayameya Street	شارع الخيامية	people	أشخاص		
beautiful	جميل	more	أكثر		



1 The beginning
بداية القصة

Let's visit grandpa ! هيا نزور الجد !



Zeinab was bored. It was the second week of the summer holiday.

Zeinab said, "Let's go to visit Grandpa !" Her mother said, "Yes, he's sad at the moment. I think you can help him".

كانت زينب تشعر بالملل. إنه الأسبوع الثانى فى إجازة الصيف - قالت : زينب "هيا نذهب لزيارة جدى !"
قالت والدتها : "نعم، إنه حزين الآن. أعتقد أنك تستطيعين مساعدته".

Zeinab reached the train station! وصلت زينب إلى محطة القطار !



Zeinab got off the train. There was her grandfather and grandmother ! Her grandparents were very pleased to see her.

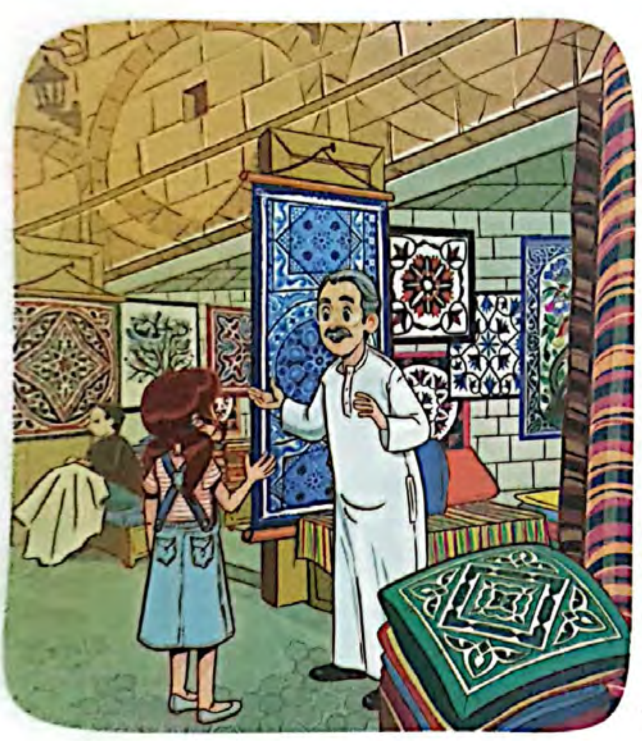
نزلت زينب من القطار. كان يوجد الجد والجدة !
كانوا اجدادها مسرورون لرؤيتها.

After tea, Grandpa said 'My eyes are not very good now. It's difficult to work. I can't see to sew. I think I will have to stop making things.'
Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers. He was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.
Zeinab said 'Oh no ! You can't stop ! You make such beautiful things !'

بعد تناول الشاى، قال الجد : «عيناى لم تعد بحالة جيدة الآن. من الصعب أن أعمل. لا أستطيع أن أرى لكى أقوم بالخياطة. اعتقد انى مضطر للتوقف عن صنع الأشياء» كان الجد واحد من صناع الخيام. فهو واحد من أفضل الحرفيين فى شارع الخيامية. قالت زينب «أوه لا» ! لا يمكنك أن تتوقف ! إنك تقوم بعمل الأشياء الجميلة !».



At Grandfather's shop فى محل الجد



Zeinab and her grandfather visited the shop.
Zeinab said, 'Oh look ! I love this big picture with all the flowers !' Did you make it, Grandpa ?
'Yes, it took me nearly four months. It's made of thousands and thousands of small stitches. I measured and cut all the pieces by hand,' said Grandpa.
'All by hand ? That's amazing !'

زارت زينب وجدها المحل. قالت زينب، «أوه انظر ! إننى أحب هذه اللوحة الكبيرة التى بها كل هذه الزهور !""هل قمت أنت بصنعها يا جدى ؟"
قال الجد : "نعم، لقد أخذت منى تقريبًا أربعة أشهر. لقد صنعت من الآلاف والآلاف من الغرز الصغيرة. لقد قمت بقياس وقص كل القطع باليد" كلها باليد ؟ هذا مدهش !».

2 The Middle

منتصف القصة

Zeinab wanted to learn sewing. أرادت زينب تعلم الخياطة.



'What's your favorite design Grandpa ?' asked Zeinab. 'I like sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best, and I also like sewing birds. I used my best stitching on the patterns, but my eyes are not good now. It is sad for me. ' 'I wish I could sew and help you,' said Zeinab. Her grandfather smiled. 'I can teach you. Do you want to learn ?' 'Oh, yes please !' said Zeinab.

«ما التصميم المفضل لك يا جدي ؟ سألت زينب. «أنا أحب خياطة زهور اللوتس والأشكال الهندسية أكثر، واحب ايضًا خياطة الطيور. لقد استخدمت أفضل الغرز الخاصة بي لعمل الأنماط ولكن عيناى ليست بخير الآن. الأمر محزن بالنسبة لى. قالت زينب : " ليتنى استطيع الخياطة ومساعدتك ". ابتسم جدها. "أنا استطيع أن أعلمك. هل تحبى أن تتعلمين ؟ "أوه، نعم من فضلك" ! قالت زينب.



Zeinab asked, 'How did you learn to sew, Grandpa ?' 'My father taught me. When I was a child, I wanted to be an engineer or a teacher, but I changed my mind. My father taught me to sew. My grandfather taught my father before that ! I became a Khayameya artisan, and I love my job,' answered Grandpa. Zeinab said, 'You design and measure the patterns. You choose the colors. I think you are an engineer, an artist, and good at math ! And now you are my teacher, too.

سألت زينب، "كيف تعلمت الخياطة يا جدى ؟" أجاب الجد قائلًا «قام ابى بتعليمى، فعندما كنت طفلًا، أردت أن أكون مهندسًا أو معلمًا، لكننى غيرت رأيى. علمنى أبى الخياطة وقام جدى بتعليم أبى قبل ذلك ! فأصبحت حرفيًا فى الخيامية، وأحب وظيفتى." قالت زينب : "وأنت تصمم وتقيس الأنماط. انت تختار الألوان. أعتقد أنك مهندس، وفنان وجيد فى الرياضيات. والآن انت معلمى، أيضًا."

Zeinab has an idea. زينب لديها فكرة.

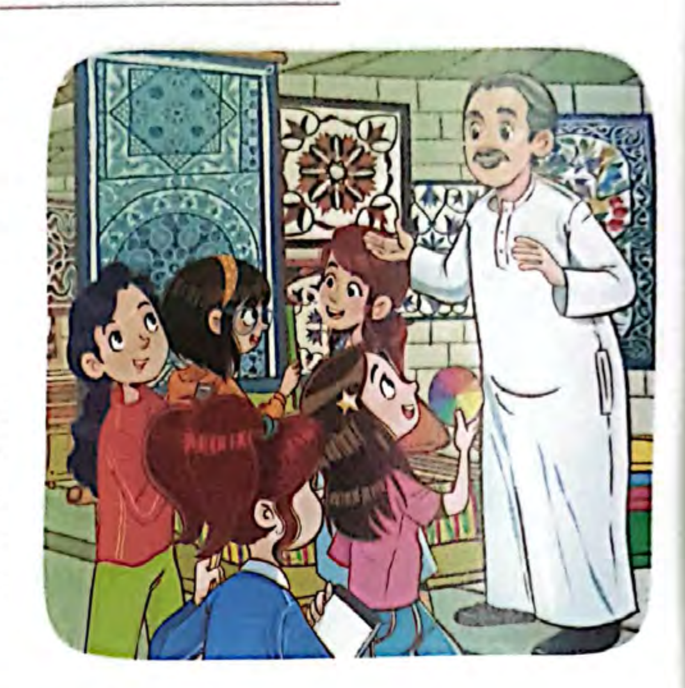


Zeinab said, 'Grandfather, I have an idea. My friends are very clever. I think they want to learn about Khayameya, too. Rasha is great at math and working out problems. Lobna invents things all the time and has good ideas. Doha makes amazing art and Engy can help you show us all how to sew. She makes beautiful things. Let's call them !'

قالت زينب : "يا جدى لدى فكرة. أصدقائى ماهرون جدًا. أعتقد أنهم يريدون أن يتعلموا عن الخيامية، أيضًا. رشا رائعة فى الرياضيات وتقوم بحل المشكلات. لبنى تخترع أشياء طوال الوقت، ولديها أفكار جيدة. ضحى تصنع فن مدهش وإنجى يمكنها أن تساعدك لتبين لنا كيف تقوم بالخياطة. إنها تصنع أشياء جميلة. هيا نتصل بهم !"

3 The End
نهاية القصة

Zeinab's friends arrived لقد وصلوا أصدقاء زينب



Zeinab's friends arrived. 'We're here ! Let's learn something new'. Grandfather said, 'Welcome girls. Thank you for coming ! We make the patterns with three layers of cotton and put them together like this...'

لقد وصلوا أصدقاء زينب. "نحن هنا ! هيا نتعلم شيء جديد".
قال الجد : "مرحبًا يا فتيات. شكرًا لكم على المجيء ! نحن نصنع الأنماط من ثلاثة طبقات من القطن ونضعهم معًا هكذا...."

The girls start learning تبدأ الفتيات التعلم



Grandfather said, 'Zeinab you have such clever friends ! What a good idea !' Rasha answered, 'We like learning new things, and we have a great teacher !'

قال الجد : "يا زينب أنتِ لديكِ أصدقاء أذكياء ! يا لها من فكرة جيدة !" أجابت رشا ، "نحن نحب تعلم الأشياء الجديدة ولدينا معلم رائع !"

Many people wanted to learn about Khayameya.

أراد الكثير من الناس التعرف على الخيامية.



Other people came to watch. They said, 'That looks fun. Can we try ?'. Zeinab's grandfather said, 'Welcome ! Come and join us !'

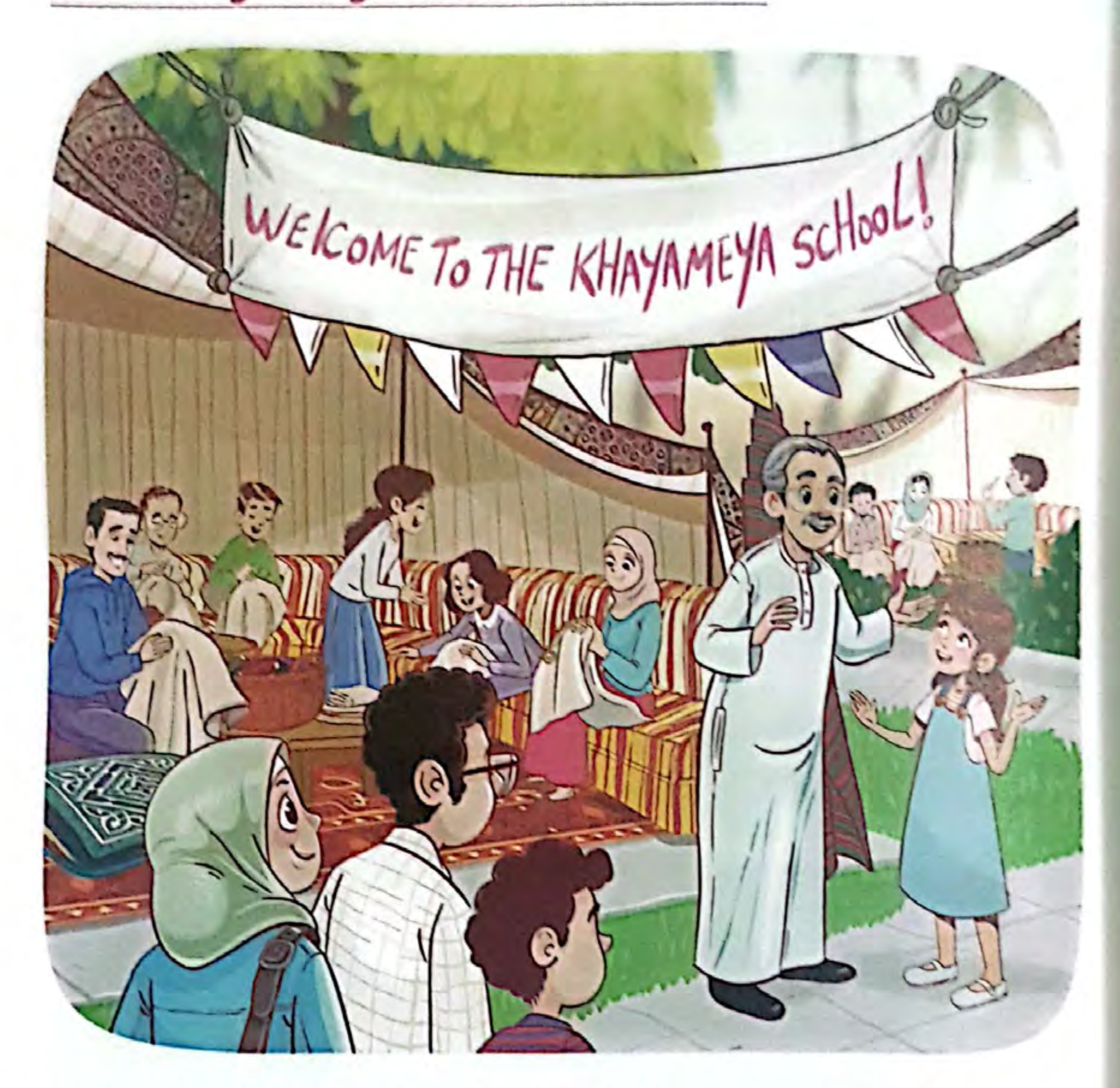
جاء أشخاص آخرين ليشاهدوا. إنهم قالوا : "هذا يبدو ممتع. هل يمكننا أن نجرب؟" قال جد زينب : "مرحبًا ! تعالوا وانضموا إلينا!"



Grandpa said, 'Zeinab, look at all these people ! They all want to learn about Khayameya ! I'm so happy !'

قال الجد : "انظرى يا زينب إلى كل هؤلاء الأشخاص ! جميعهم يريدون أن يتعلموا عن الخيامية ! أنا سعيد جدًا !"

The Khayameya School ! مدرسة الخيامية!



Zeinab said, 'Lots more people want to learn too. People in many places all around Egypt want you to teach them. Khayameya School is traveling all summer ! Next, we are going to Ismailia, then Tanta and Marsa Matrouh ! What a wonderful summer holiday ! Thank you, Grandpa !'
Grandpa laughed, 'No, thank you Zeinab !'

قالت زينب، الكثير من الناس يريدون أن يتعلموا أيضًا. الناس في أماكن متعددة حول مصر يريدونك لتدرس لهم. مدرسة الخيامية تسافر طوال الصيف ! ثم، سنذهب للإسماعيلية، ثم طنطا ومرسى مطروح ! يا لها من إجازة صيف رائعة ! شكرًا لك يا جدي! ضحك الجد، « لا، شكرًا لك يا زينب!»

General Exercises on Story

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Lots of people wanted to learn at Khayameya School.		
2. Zeinab's friends aren't clever to learn about Khayameya.		
3. Grandpa's father taught him how to sew.		
4. Zeinab doesn't like to learn sewing.		
5. Grandpa's eyes aren't good now.		
6. Zeinab asked her mom to visit her friends.		
7. Mom thinks that Zeinab can help her grandpa.		
8. Grandpa can see well to sew now.		
9. Grandpa was one of the teachers in Khayameya Street.		
10. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in sewing.		
11. Zeinab asked her Grandpa to stop sewing Khayameya.		
12. Zeinab visited her Grandpa's shop.		
13. Zeinab loved the picture of flower best at the shop.		
14. Grandpa can't teach Zeinab.		
15. Grandpa wanted to be a doctor when he was young.		
16. Grandpa designs and measures the patterns.		
17. Grandpa doesn't like his job.		
18. Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best.		
19. Zeinab's friend, Rasha, is good at math.		
20. Grandpa makes the patterns with five layers of cotton.		
21. Zeinab had an idea that to call her friends so that they learn about sewing.		

1. Ask your child to read the sentences and write (T) for the correct sentences and (F) for the wrong sentences.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويكتب (T) للجمل الصحيحة و(F) للجمل الخاطئة.

22. Rasha likes learning new things.

23. Grandpa welcomed people who wanted to learn.

24. Grandpa was sad when he taught people at Khayameya School.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Grandpa .... and cut all the pieces by hand.
   a. visited b. measured c. put d. had

2. Zeinab wishes to .... and help her Grandpa.
   a. sew b. saw c. play d. read

3. Khayameya School is traveling all ....
   a. winter b. spring c. fall d. summer

4. Lots more people want to .... sewing Khayameya.
   a. learn b. write c. read d. travel

5. Zeinab had a good ....
   a. toy b. flower c. idea d. pattern

6. Grandpa makes patterns with three ....
   a. layers b. colors c. flowers d. birds

7. Grandpa likes sewing .... patterns.
   a. science b. geometric c. English d. art

8. Grandpa is sad because he can't .... well.
   a. hear b. taste c. touch d. see

9. Zeinab had .... friends.
   a. tall b. bad c. naughty d. clever

10. Zeinab loved a big .... on the wall of the shop.
    a. table b. picture c. street d. tree

11. Zeinab was .... at the second week of the summer holiday.
    a. happy b. excited c. bored d. angry

12. Zeinab's mom thinks that .... can help Grandpa.
    a. Zeinab b. Rasha c. Grandma d. people

2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

13. Zeinab and her mom went to her grandparents by ....

a. car | b. bus | c. train | d. plane

14. Grandpa is one of the best .... in Khayameya Street.

a. artisans | b. workers | c. helpers | d. engineers

15. It's difficult for Grandpa to work because of his ....

a. hearing | b. taste | c. touch | d. sight

16. The picture of flowers is made of thousands of small ....

a. patterns | b. cotton | c. stitches | d. colors

17. Grandpa measures and cuts all the pieces by ....

a. scissors | b. knife | c. hand | d. machines

18. Doha made .... art.

a. amazing | b. boring | c. bad | d. wrong

19. .... flower is Grandpa's best sewing.

a. Daisy | b. Colored | c. Lotus | d. Sun

20. Grandpa can .... Zeinab to learn sewing.

a. give | b. punish | c. help | d. order

21. Grandpa's .... are not good to sew now.

a. hands | b. ears | c. legs | d. eyes

22. Grandpa wanted to be a/an .... or a teacher when he was young.

a. engineer | b. vet | c. police officer | d. actor

3 Complete the sentences with words from the list :

للتدريب

engineer - see - bored - hear

1. Zeinab was .... at the second week on the holiday.
2. Grandpa can't .... well to sew now.
3. Grandpa wanted to be a/an .... when he was young.





Unit 1

Lesson 1:

• **Listen and circle the correct answer:**

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients. We need energy and nutrients in our bodies.

Lesson 2:

• **Listen and circle the correct answer:**

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin. Our senses are working all the time. Our senses take in a lot of information.

• **Listen and complete:**

People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing well can learn sign language. This is a language where we use our hands, faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language is different in each country. People use sight instead of hearing to understand what people are saying.

Lesson 3:

• **Listen and circle the correct answer:**

It's Saturday, so there's no school. Mom wants to tidy the lounge. My brother Adam wants to run and play in the park. I want to do something creative. I would like to draw or paint a picture.

Lesson 4:

• **Listen and circle the correct answer:**

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

Test 1 on unit 1:

• **Listen and circle the correct answer:**

Our skeleton is very important for all of us. It is made up of all the bones in our body. The bones make us strong. They protect our organs. Muscles are also very important. They are attached to our bones. They lift and turn our bones to make us move.

• **Listen and complete:**

We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter. Carbohydrates like bread, rice, and pasta give us energy. Sugar also gives us energy, but too much sugar isn't good for us. Sugar is in cakes, cookies, and candy, so try not to have too much of these. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

Test 2 on unit 1 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Our senses are working all the time. Everyone needs senses in life. Hearing, sight, smell and taste are some of them. We can see with our eyes. We can hear with our ears. We can smell with our nose. We can taste with our tongue. Our body organs work together with these senses.

• **Listen and complete :**

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf can learn sign language. Sign language is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different versions of it around the world. Sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.



Lesson 2 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

In 2012, scientists discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world. The chameleon is at just 30 millimeters long! But even that this chameleon is bigger than a frog in Papua New Guinea.

Lesson 3 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Invertebrates are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid.

Lesson 4 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Scientists think that there are many different types of plants. Most plants have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects, these insects carry pollen from one flower to another . This helps the flowers to reproduce.

• **Listen and complete :**

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea. Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that are brightly colored.

Lessons 5&6 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Most mammals live on land, but some mammals such as whales and dolphins live in the sea. However, bats are the only mammals that can fly. Bats live in groups in trees or caves. Bats sleep during the day and hunt for food at night. Bats can fly very fast at night.

• **Listen and complete :**

Zoos are places of scientific research. People can see and learn about wild animals in zoos. Zoos protect endangered animals. But I think animals are kept in the wrong

habitats. Animals are separated from their family groups. Animals aren't free to live a natural life. Animals can become stressed and unhappy.

Test 3 on unit 2 :

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs and scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles. Reptiles come to land to lay their eggs.

• Listen and complete :

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded and they feed their babies with milk. Most of them give birth to their babies. Mammals don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea.

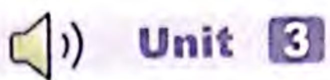
Test 4 on unit 2 :

1. Listen and circle the correct answer :

The African elephant is the biggest mammal on land. It's bigger than the Asian elephant. The blue whale is a mammal. The whale shark is smaller than the blue whale.

2. Listen and complete :

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills. Fish are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.



Unit 3

Lesson 1 :

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. A good citizenship is acting in a way that is good for your community. This means that you work hard to help other people, and behave in a kind and fair way. I am always polite and helpful at school.

Lesson 2 :

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Egyptians in ancient Egypt used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties. They wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

• Listen and complete :

Egypt is a country with a very long history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

Lesson 3 :

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

I'm Nadia, and I live in Aswan Governorate. It is a beautiful city. It's the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam. Aswan High Dam is a very important project.

• Listen and complete :

New Valley Governorate doesn't have a big population. The capital of New Valley Governorate is Kharga. Kharga is an oasis town. Kharga is in the south of this region.

Lessons 4&5 :

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Music was important in Ancient Egypt. Musicians were playing instruments in ancient Egypt. We know this because scribes made pictures of them playing instruments, and ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

Test 5 on unit 3 :

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting.

• Listen and complete :

I'm Omar. I live in Alexandria Governorate. It is in the north of Egypt. It is important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Test 6 on unit 3 :

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, Egypt had two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

• Listen and complete :

There are 27 governorates in Egypt today. Luxor is a big governorate in Upper Egypt. Millions of tourists come to Luxor every year.

There isn't a beach but there is the museum in Luxor. You can see ships sailing in the river.



Lesson 1 :

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

I'm Zein. I'm going to tell you about my village. It's a very traditional place. My village is in the desert so it's an isolated place, too. We have a lot of services close to my family's home like shops, workshops, and my school.

• Listen and complete :

My name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. The Greater Cairo is a densely populated area. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

Lesson 2 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

My family lives in a traditional home . There are seven people living in it. There are two men in my family - my dad and my grandpa - and two women - my mom and my grandma. And of course, there are some children too! I have two sisters, but there aren't any babies because we're all grown up. We live happily together.

Lesson 3 :

• **Listen and complete :**

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using looms. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

Lessons 5&6 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Dina lives in Alexandria. Alexandria is a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, It's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. Alexandria has an important port and there is a lot of industry there, too.

• **Listen and complete :**

Smart growth is a way to plan new areas of a city. Smart growth planners want to protect the environment and improve the lives of people living in them. Here are some of the ideas behind smart growth. People can walk to work or school. There's good public transportation and no cars. There are green spaces for people to enjoy.

Test 7 on unit 4 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

I'm Rahma. I live in a big city. My city is an urban environment. Many people live in my city so it's densely populated. There are a lot of cars and buses so it is a very busy city. It takes a long time to go to school. It is not easy to travel around but I like my city.

• **Listen and complete :**

There are many reasons to develop cities where they do. One of the main reasons is for food and transportation. A lot of cities are developed near bodies of water. These can be rivers, lakes or oceans. Water is very important for cities. For one thing, they have animals in them, like fish and birds, which give people food to eat.

Test 8 on unit 4 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

My name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants. Zein is going to tell us about his village. It's sparsely populated. It's a traditional place. Zein village is in the desert so it's an isolated area, too. There are shops, workshops and schools.

• **Listen and complete :**

My name's Walid and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad is a farmer. He grows tomatoes and

potatoes. We keep some animals too. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now.



Lesson 1 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. We use stone to construct buildings and bridges. The wood we get from trees, are another important natural resource. There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. Gold and silver are two types of minerals and they are all natural resources.

Lesson 2 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Gameela wakes up for school at 7 o'clock. First, she washes her face and brushes her teeth. She catches the bus to go to school. Then, she does her homework. Her brother Younis washes and dries the dishes with his father. Her family watches a movie after dinner. Before going to bed, she kisses her mom and dad.

• **Listen and complete :**

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources. Crude oil is turned into petroleum. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived before the dinosaurs. There are serious problems with fossil fuels : global warming and climate change.

Lesson 3 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Wave power is when energy is captured from waves. It can then generate electricity. Wind power uses wind turbines to generate electricity. Solar power uses light from the sun to generate electricity. Solar power is a clean energy.

• **Listen and complete :**

Solar panels are expensive and we can't make solar power on a rainy day. Also, solar farms need a very big space. However, solar panels are easy to look after, and electricity from solar power is cheap.

Lesson 4 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Mariam studied engineering at Cairo University. She worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years. She worked at a turbine factory in Spain. She is very good at problem solving. She has good computer programming skills. She is a calm person.

Lessons 5&6 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Amir works for a design company. He is never late for work. He has lots of ideas, but he isn't good at listening to his team members' ideas. Amir finds it difficult to make friends and he often gets upset when things are difficult at work.

• **Listen and complete :**

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. In a team you need members who are responsible. They need to collaborate while



working with other members to get the best results. They need to be problem solvers instead of getting worried about problems. They need to have a positive attitude if there are difficult times while working. They need to communicate well, too.

Test 9 on unit 5 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You should be polite too. You should listen to other's ideas. If you find your role difficult, ask for help.

• **Listen and complete :**

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind to another. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television it is now a mechanical energy.

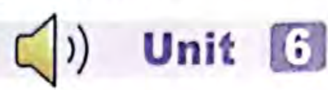
Test 10 on unit 5 :

• **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

I think teamwork is very important for the success of a project. I always try to be a good team member. I am very good at solving problems. I think of different ways to solve a problem. I decide on the best option. I have good computer programming skills. I never get upset when things are difficult at work.

• **Listen and complete :**

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. Renewable energy can be replaced when they run out. We can get electricity from the sun. The fossil fuels are like coal, natural gas and petroleum. The non-renewable energy will run out.



Unit 6

Lesson 3 :

• **Listen and complete :**

Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines - that's just another word for robots. They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do. We will use these robots to do jobs that are too dangerous or difficult for humans to do. For example,we will use robots to build new automobiles or even high-speed trains. Robots will be used in agriculture and manufacturing, too.

Lesson 4 :

• **Listen and complete :**

To create strong passwords, don't use personal information like names, birthdays, phone numbers, or addresses. Don't use easy or obvious words, like password or computer, or series of numbers, like 1234.
Don't use less than 10 characters.
Don't use the same password for different accounts and don't tell your friends your passwords.

Lessons 5&6 :

• **Listen and complete :**

Heba loved watching the ships.

She often watched them with her friends. She liked to think about where the ship came from. She went with her father to the side of the Suez Canal. The ships are huge. It was fun.

Test 11 on unit 6 :

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances. First, we can transport goods over long distances by water. Ships move slowly. Ships can carry heavy items. Second, we can transport goods over long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

- **Listen and complete :**

My uncle lives in Algiers, the capital of Algeria. We want to visit them this year, but it's very far away from where we live in Cairo-about 3.000 kilometers. So, we'll take an airplane to Algiers. It will be really fun ! I hope my parents let me sit by the window.

Test 12 on unit 6 :

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

There are many forms of technology. Lots of people use computers to do their jobs. With a computer, you can find out information. You can also send emails through computers. Computers help you to use the internet. The computer is an important invention.

- **Listen and complete :**

It's very important to create strong passwords. First of all, don't use personal information like names, birthdays, phone numbers or addresses. To be safe online, use the safe search option in your browser. Read the option in the search box. There are ads. Use specific words for your search.

Monthly Assessment October Test :

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones. Bones are hard. Muscles are attached to bones. We use our bones and muscles when we move.

- **Listen and complete :**

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language. Sign language is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different versions of it around the world. Sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

Monthly Assessment November Test :

- **Listen and circle the correct answer :**

Braille is a code which uses combinations of dots. Braille represents letters, numbers or punctuation marks. People who are blind can use braille to read. They use touch instead of sight.

- **Listen and complete :**

Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins. Farther south is the home of Nubian music. The most popular instruments in Bedouin music are the shabbaba and the rebaba.



Unit 1

Lesson 1:

Our respiratory system

We use our respiratory system when we breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Lesson 2:

Our different senses

We have five senses. We use them to do many things. We can use our eyes to see. We can hear with our ears. We can smell with our nose. We can feel with our skin. We use our tongue to taste. All our senses are very important.

Lesson 3:

To : maged@gmail.com

From : yasser@gmail.com

Subject : what I like to do at the weekend

Dear Maged,

At the weekend, I like to do many things. I'd like to go to the park. I can run and play there. I'd like to paint some pictures. I'd like to help mum tidy the room. I'd like to go to the club and practise football. Sometimes, I'd like to do creative things.

Yours,

Yasser

Lesson 4:

A swimming champion

Aya Ayman Abbas is one of the best swimmers. She is a swimming champion who has won a lot of medals. She has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won a lot of gold, silver and bronze medals in different competitions.

Test 1 on unit 1:

The Paralympic Games

The Paralympic Games is an international competition. It is for athletes with disabilities. It takes place every four years like the Olympics. It is held in a different country each time. There are many Egyptian Paralympic athletes. They have taken part in different competitions. They have won many gold, silver and bronze medals.

Test 2 on unit 1:

Respiratory system

There are different systems in our body. The respiratory system is a very important system. It helps us to do many things. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We use our nose to breathe in the air, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Unit 2

Lesson 1:

Reptiles

Reptiles are cold-blooded. They have to spend some time in the sun to keep warm . Most reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. All reptiles lay eggs. Reptiles live in different places. Most of them live on land. Some reptiles live in rivers or sea such as turtles.

Lesson 2:

Animals in the world

There are many different animals in the world. Some of them are big, others are small. The biggest animal on land is the elephant. The biggest animal in the world lives in the sea. It is the blue whale. The biggest fish in the world is the whale shark. The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird. The biggest bird is the ostrich.

Lesson 3:

To : fady@gmail.com

From : seif@gmail.com

Subject : Insects and snails

Dear Fady,

Invertebrates are animals without a backbone. Some invertebrates have hard shell such as snails. Snails move very slowly. Insects are also invertebrates. They have six legs. Grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump very high. The spider is not an insect. It has eight legs. It is called an arachnid. Spiders can move very quickly.

Yours,

Seif

Lessons 5&6:

Water lily

Water lily have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. In addition, their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area. On one hand, this can look pretty, but on the other hand, it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

Test 3 on unit 2:

Birds

Birds are warm - blooded, but they don't have fur. They don't have hair. All birds have feathers and they have wings, too. Most birds can fly well. They lay eggs. Their eggs are hard. Also, birds have beaks. These beaks are made of bones. The beaks are of different shapes because birds eat different food. Some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and others eat seeds.

Test 4 on unit 2:

To : tamer@gmail.com

From : tarek@gmail.com

Subject : Amphibians

Dear Tamer,

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and

they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water.

Yours,
Tarek



Lesson 1:

My community

My community is a group of people who live and work together in our area. I live with my family in an apartment. There are many special things about my community. There are different places, ideas and activities. In our community, we can do many good things. We help each other and do many acts of kindness. We are polite and helpful.

Lesson 2:

To : ramy@gmail.com
From : osama@gmail.com
Subject : Scribes

Dear Ramy,

Scribes were very important in the history of Egypt. They were the people who wrote down everything that happened in the past. They worked for the ruling families or who were called dynasties. They wrote in the ancient Egypt language, hieroglyphs. They drew pictures or symbols that meant one word. They wrote on stone or on paper called papyrus. Children learnt to become a scribe at school.

Yours,
Osama

Lessons 4&5:

Music

Egypt has many different styles of music. It has also lots of traditional folk music. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins and the wind instrument oboe. Singing and drumming are also famous there. In the farther south, there is the Nubian music. The Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt.

Test 5 on unit 3:

Folk dancing in Egypt

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. There are many forms of folk dancing. The most famous one is Nubian dancing. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. There is also Raqs Assaya. It is the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. In other forms of dancing, people wear special costumes.

Test 6 on unit 3:

How we know about the history of Egypt

Egyptians at that time used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.



Lesson 1:

Your city

I live in a city. It's densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

Lesson 2:

The village life

I live in a nice village. It is by the Nile. It is sparsely populated. Only about 600 people live in my village. My father is a farmer. He grows crops. He also raises animals. There are many services. There are shops where we can buy our needs. There is also a club. We play football there. There is also a hospital with many clever doctors.

Lesson 3:

Traditional Egyptian crafts

I visited a spinning and weaving workshop. I saw the artisans making the carpets. They spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then, they need to dye the yarn. I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional.

Lessons 5&6:

Where you live

I live in a city. We have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals and lots of shops where you can buy anything. I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Amrya. It is densely populated. My city is so beautiful. It's on the Mediterranean Sea.

Test 7 on unit 4:

Carpet making

Carpet making is a traditional Egyptian craft. To make a carpet first, they collect the wool from sheep. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then they need to dye the yarn using vegetable dyes or synthetic dyes. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom.

Test 8 on unit 4:

The city you live in

I live in a big city. This city is called Alexandria. There are about 6 million people live in my city. It is densely populated. Although it is crowded and has many people, there are many services. There are clubs, gardens and beaches. People can enjoy all these services all the time. I enjoy going to the club to practice my favorite hobbies.



Lesson 1:

Natural resources

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. We use them for many different purposes. There are two main forms of natural resources. Some resources are called renewable. Renewable resources

can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of them. There are also non-renewable resources. They are things that we can't get any more once we have used them up.

Lesson 2 :

Your day

My day starts at 7 o'clock when I get up. I wash my face and brush my teeth. I have my breakfast with my family at home. I take the bus to my school. When I finish my school day, I go home at 3 o'clock. I have my lunch. At 4 o'clock, I do my homework. In the evening, I watch TV or play computer games. I go to bed at 9 o'clock.

Test 9 on unit 5 :

To : samarali@yahoo.com

From : samasami@yahoo.com

Subject : Renewable energy

Dear Samar,

I am writing to you to tell you about renewable energy. Renewable energy is from resources that will not run out. We can make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. We can also use sunshine in the desert to make electricity. The solar panels collect energy from the sun. We can use it to make electricity for our home because it is cheap. You can search for more information.

Yours,

Sama

Test 10 on unit 5 :

Advantages and disadvantages of solar energy

Solar energy has become very important for some countries. It is the energy that we get from the sun using solar panels. It has some advantages and some disadvantages. Its advantages can be that solar panels are easy to look after. Also, the electricity from it is cheap. On the other hand, the disadvantages are that solar farms need a very big space. Solar panels are expensive and we can't make solar power on rainy days.

Unit 6

Lesson 1 :

Types of transportation

There are many forms of transportation. They include planes, trains, ships, buses, cars and bikes. People use planes to travel from place to place when it is far. They use plane to transport goods too. They also use ships, but planes are faster and more comfortable. Now, there are electric trains and metros. People use cars, buses and taxis to travel around their cities.

Lesson 4 :

How to create strong passwords

It is important to stay safe when we use the internet or go online. It is important to create a strong password. To do that there are many tips. Don't use your personal

information like names, phone numbers or addresses. Don't use obvious words. You should use more than 10 characters. You shouldn't tell your friends your passwords. Don't use the same password for different accounts.

Lessons 5&6 :

The Suez Canal

The Suez Canal is very important. There are many ships go through it every day. It links the whole world. In the Suez Canal, the ships move slowly. The ships have to be straight. There are many ships that carry huge containers. The captains of these ships must be clever. The Suez Canal is also important for the Egyptian people because it gives many jobs to them.

Test 11 on unit 6 :

"Search online safely"

Here are some important things to keep in mind to help you search safely. Use the safe search option in your browser. When the search engine shows you your results, you will probably see some ads. You might also see the word sponsor, this means that it is also an ad. Finally, use specific words for your searches.

Test 12 unit 6 :

"Tech jobs of the future"

One of the most important tech jobs of the future is a UX Designer. User Experience Designers create a positive experience between the user and the technology that the one uses, like web pages, apps and machines like washing machines. Another important tech job is robotics engineers. They are the people who design autonomous machines. They also test the robots that they design.



Interactive Notebook

By a group of supervisors

Parents' Guide دليل ولى الأمر



الصف الرابع الابتدائى
للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات
الفصل الدراسى الأول

DESERT ANIM

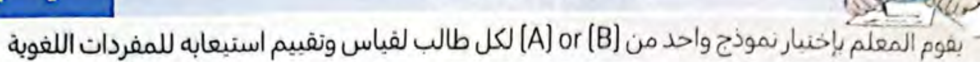
بالداخل
كراسة المعاصر للواجب المنزلى

4th Primary 2024
FIRST TERM

PART 1
UNIT 1

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة


يقوم المعلم بإختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

قلب ....
الرئتين ....
العظام ....
الجهاز التنفسي ....
يمضغ ....
دم ....

1. Our .... pumps the blood around our body.
2. The .... make us strong.
3. When we breathe, we use our ....
4. We .... food with our teeth.

Lesson 2

الحواس ....
لسان ....
جلد / بشرة ....
لغة الإشارة ....
نقاط ....
يشم ....

1. Our .... help us understand the world.
2. We taste with our ....
3. We can feel with our ....
4. Deaf people can learn ....

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

معدة ....
هيكل عظمى ....
عضلات ....
فم ....
الجهاز الهضمى ....
سائل خاص ....

1. The food we eat goes to our ....
2. Our .... is made up of all the bones in our body.
3. We chew and swallow food through our ....
4. We use our .... system, when we eat and drink.

Lesson 2

يسمع ....
يتذوق ....
يتصل / يتواصل ....
كفيف / فاقد البصر ....
أصم ....
صعوبة ....

1. We use our ears to ....
2. We .... different kinds of food.
3. Some people have different ways to ....
4. .... people can use Braille to read.



Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
صالة / غرفة الجلوس	1. We have to tidy the ....
مبدع / مبتكر	2. I want to do something .... like drawing.
منطقة المخيخ	3. She looks .... because she can't answer the questions.
محبط	4. Our brain controls the .... we make.
مصباح كهربائي	
اختبارات	

Lessons 4,5 & 6

Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
الرياضيين	1. Many .... take part in the competition.
ميدالية ذهبية	2. She has won the ....
مسابقة / منافسة	3. The Paralympic Games is an international ....
تدريب	4. It's a good idea to do some ....
عادات غير صحية	
عَداء / متسابق	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
نشاط	1. Art and music are my favorite ....
يرتب	2. We help our mom .... my lounge.
يربط	3. The brain stem .... the two parts of the brain.
الشق الأيسر (من المخ)	4. You can .... what you want to do.
في المطبخ	
يختار	

Lessons 4,5 & 6

Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
بطل رياضي	1. My sister is a swimming ....
دولي / عالمي	2. She takes part in many .... competitions.
تفانٍ / إخلاص	3. Being a Paralympic takes years of ....
سلسلة / مجموعة	4. We need a .... of different kinds of food.
نظام يومي	
الجهاز العصبي	

II Important 20 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.



stomach































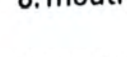








1. stomach
2. lungs
3. skeleton
4. muscles
5. heart
6. bones
7. blood
8. mouth
9. touch
10. hearing
11. taste
12. sight
13. smell
14. tongue
15. blind
16. brain
17. gold medal
18. athlete
19. bronze medal
20. silver medal



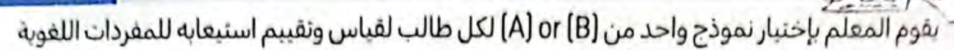
III Writing Practice

• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من أتقان مهارة الكتابة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
My body	▸ Write the meaning :	▸ Reorder the words :	▸ Write a paragraph about : My body
	العظام	1. make - us - The - strong - bones.	....
	فم	2. chew - We - swallow - and - our mouth - through.	....
	يبتلع	3. pumps - The heart - the blood - our - around - body.	....
	قلب	4. are - our bones - Muscles - attached - to.	....
	عضلات		....
Braille	تركيب / مزيج	5. has - different - Braille - combinations - of - dots.	Braille
	نقاط	6. was - Braille - invented - Louis Braille - by.	....
	يخترع	7. read - The blind - use - can - Braille - to	....
	كفيف		....
	يستخدم		....
Parasports	ذوى احتياجات خاصة	8. Egypt - many athletes - take part - has - who - in these competitions.	Parasports
	يحدث	9. every - Paralympics - place - takes - years - four.	....
	الألعاب الرياضية لذوى الاحتياجات	10. is - an important - Parasports - area - in sports.	....
	منافسة	11. international - Paralympics - is - competition - an.	....
	دولى / عالمى		....

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
Lesson 1		
ريش	....	1. All birds have ....
خياشيم	....	2. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
زواحف	....	3. Most .... have four legs.
ثدييات	....	4. Vertebrates are animals with a ....
عمود فقري	....	
تضع البيض	....	
Lesson 2		
نعامة	....	1. The .... is the biggest bird.
ضخم	....	2. There are some enormous animals in the .... world.
طبيعي	....	3. There are different animals live on ....
كوكب الأرض	....	4. The .... is bigger than the Asian elephant.
الفيل الافريقي	....	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
Lesson 1		
زعانف	....	1. Fish use .... to move.
منقار	....	2. Birds' .... are made of bones.
فراء	....	3. Reptiles don't have hair or ....
أجنحة	....	4. There are five types of ....
الفقاريات	....	
يطعم	....	
Lesson 2		
الحوت الأزرق	....	1. The .... is the biggest animal in the world.
ضئيل	....	2. Amphibians need a moist habitat to ....
طائر النحل الطنان	....	3. Ostriches are faster than ....
تعيش / تنجو	....	4. The .... changes its color.
الفيل الآسيوى	....	
حرباء	....	

Model A

Write the meaning ➜ **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

....	كابوريا	1. The .... has a hard shell.
....	الحبار	2. The .... is an amazing insect.
....	الجراد	3. The .... moves slowly.
....	يكتشف	4. The ostrich can't ....
....	حلزون	
....	بطير	

Lessons 4,5 & 6

....	مفترس	1.The .... hunts and eats other animals.
....	لامع	2. The .... flowers attract insects.
....	ألوان أساسية	3. The .... grows in water.
....	الزئبق المائى	4. Playing video games has some ....
....	عيوب	
....	بيئة كبيرة	



Or

Model B

Write the meaning ➜ **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

....	حشرة اليعسوب	1. The .... have eight legs.
....	عناكب	2. He is doing a/an .... about animals.
....	بحث	3. Octopuses and squids are ....
....	اللافقاريات	4. Crabs have hard shell for ....
....	حماية	
....	حشرات	

Lessons 4,5 & 6

....	ألوان ثانوية	1. Green and orange are ....
....	فريسة	2. The lion needs a .... to eat it.
....	حبوب اللقاح	3. Insects carry .... from one flower to another flower.
....	مميزات	4. Most plants grow in ....
....	يجذب	
....	تربة زراعية	

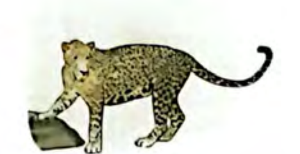
II Important 15 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.














1. fins
2. bat
3. wings
4. beak
5. scales
6. backbone
7. fur
8. feather
9. ostrich
10. leopard
11. blue whale
12. chameleon
13. snail
14. grasshopper
15. water lily



• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من أتقان مهارة الكتابة.

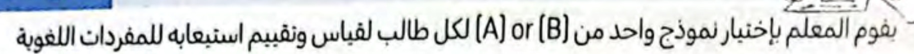
	Step 1 **Vocabulary** اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 **Sentences** متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 **Paragraphs** متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Vertebrates	▸ Write the meaning : برمائيات .... عمود فقرى .... قشور .... ثدييات .... فراء	▸ Reorder the words : 1. water – Amphibians – their – in – lay – eggs. .... 2. animals – a backbone – Vertebrates – are – with. .... 3. have – Reptiles – and – scales – four – legs. .... 4. have – Mammals – or – fur – on – hair – their bodies.	▸ Write a paragraph about : Vertebrates ....
Invertebrates	حماية .... قوقعة / صَدَفة .... حبار .... جراد .... حشرة اليعسوب	5. a hard – They – shell – have – for – protection. .... 6. Octopuses – and – very well – swim – can – squids. .... 7. amazing – Grasshoppers – are – insects. .... 8. very – Dragonflies – can – fast – fly.	Invertebrates ....
Water lily	تربة .... ورقة شجر مسطحة .... جذور .... يمتد .... تحت الماء	9. grow – Most – in – plants – soil. .... 10. leaves – Water lily – have – plants – flat. .... 11. roots – Water lily – the water – spread - under.	Water lily ....

PART 1

UNIT 3

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

- مجتمع ....
- يشمل ....
- نادى رياضى ....
- جيران ....
- حى ....
- يعمل بجد ....

1. A .... is a group of people who live together.
2. My community .... my family and my friends.
3. Our .... are helpful.
4. A .... is the streets, houses and shops close to where you live.

Lesson 2

- هيروغليفى ....
- منفصل ....
- السلالات الحاكمة ....
- الفرعون ....
- ممتع / شيق ....
- شمال ....

1. We can see .... in tombs and museums.
2. There were two .... areas in Egypt.
3. Scribes worked for ....
4. The .... joined the two parts of Egypt.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

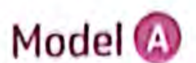
- المواطنة ....
- أنشطة ....
- مزيج / خليط ....
- أفكار ....
- حضارة ....
- مؤدب ....

1. .... is behaving in a way that helps your society.
2. A community is a .... of people, places and activities.
3. Egypt has a great ....
4. She is always .... at school.

Lesson 2

- كاتب ....
- يضم ....
- الوجه القبلى ....
- رموز ....
- قوي / ذو نفوذ ....
- هرم ....

1. A .... wrote down every thing.
2. Mena .... the two separate parts of Egypt.
3. Hieroglyphs are .... or pictures.
4. Egypt controlled the Nile and became ....



Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
Lesson 3	
محافظة	1. There are 27 .... in Egypt.
صعيد مصر	2. .... is a water sport.
الغطس تحت الماء	3. There are many ships in the ....
ميناء	4. Life in the .... is quiet.
الريف	
واحة	
Lessons 4, 5 & 6	
الموسيقى النوبى	1. The .... is a string instrument.
آلة موسيقية	2. The violin is my favorite ....
العود	3. The .... is using a stick.
الربابة	4. There are different .... of music.
راقص	
أسلوب	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
Lesson 3	
السد العالى	1. .... are popular in the Red Sea governorate.
رياضات مائية	2. The city of Alexandria used to be the .... of Egypt.
عاصمة	3. Many ships .... in the port.
الأبعد	4. There are many places on the ....
يبحر	
خريطة	
Lessons 4, 5 & 6	
الرقص الشعبى	1. .... has a long history in Egypt.
أزياء خاصة	2. Dancers wear special ....
قرع الطبول	3. .... is an important part of Saidi music.
إيقاع	4. Writing .... is her favorite hobby.
مفعم بالحيوية	
قصائد	

II Important 15 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.







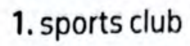
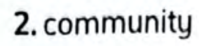
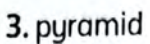
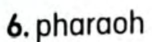




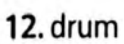







1. sports club

2. community

3. pyramid
4. museum
5. neighbors

6. pharaoh
7. Raqs Assaya

8. scribe

9. tomb
10. hieroglyphs
11. violin

12. drum
13. scuba diving
14. ney
15. oud

III Writing Practice

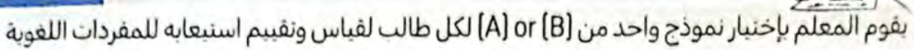
• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من أتقان مهارة الكتابة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Emails متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب رسائل بريد إلكتروني
Music	▸ Write the meaning : آلة موسيقية وترية .... الموسيقى النوبية .... في جميع أنحاء مصر .... قرع الطبول .... موسيقار	▸ Reorder the words : 1. music - uses - Saidi - instruments - string. .... 2. music - popular - Nubian - is - Egypt - all over. .... 3. important - Drumming - Nubian music - is - in. .... 4. play - Folk - Saidi - musicians - music.	▸ Write an email about : Music ....
The history of Egypt	الوجه البحرى .... الشمال .... تاريخ .... كاتب .... الوجه القبلى	5. north - was - Lower - in - Egypt - the. .... 6. has - Egypt - history - a very - long. .... 7. important - Scribes - very - people - were. .... 8. Egypt - was - Upper - south - in - the.	The history of Egypt ....
My community	مجتمع .... يشمل .... مزيج .... أنشطة .... مؤدب	9. includes - my family - and - My community - my friends. .... 10. a mixture - A community - is - of people - places - and. .... 11. always - I am -and - helpful - polite.	My community ....



Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	القاهرة الكبرى	1. Many cars cause ....
....	ازدحام / اكتظاظ	2. We should look after our ....
....	بيئة	3. Our village is .... in the desert.
....	قريب من	4. There are a lot of .... in Cairo.
....	معزول	
....	السكان	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	جاموس	1. We can get milk and meat from ....
....	يزرع	2. The farmers .... tomatoes and dates.
....	على النيل	3. We might see some beautiful .... on the river.
....	أوز	4. I watch a .... about geographic features.
....	الفحم	
....	برنامج	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	كثافة سكانية منخفضة	1. My village is .... , there aren't many people live in it.
....	خدمات	2. The workers work in a ....
....	ورشة	3. .... places are quiet and clean.
....	مدينة (كبيرة)	4. The .... in the street must be careful.
....	قروى / ريفى	
....	مشاة	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning		Complete the sentences
....	خراف	1. There are .... and geese in our farm.
....	الرى	2. .... is important for the soil.
....	مصادر طبيعية	3. People who live near the river are ....
....	محظوظ	4. She bought a lot of .... for her new shop.
....	بضائع	
....	بطوز	



Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

حرفيون	1. The .... are weaving the carpets.
صوف	2. People collect .... from the sheep.
حرفة	3. Weaving is an important ....
صبغة	4. They have to boil the yarn with ....
خيوط النسيج	
أشكال هندسية	

Lessons 4,5&6

البحر المتوسط	1. We have two bedrooms in our ....
شقة سكنية	2. I live in a .... called Amrya.
حى	3. Tourism .... is very important for Egypt.
صناعة	4. Egypt has an amazing ....
صانع الخزف	
موقع	



Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

يغزل / ينسج	1. The artisans make the wool into ....
خيط / غزل	2. Some workshops use .... dye.
صناعى/مصطنع	3. They use dry yarn to weave the ....
سجادة	4. The .... is a machine used by the artisans.
تركيب / أساس	
آلة النول	

Lessons 4,5&6

ثانى	1. Alexandria is the .... largest city.
ميناء	2. There is an important .... in Alexandria.
خدمات	3. We have .... like schools and hospitals.
وسائل المواصلات	4. Public .... helps us go to different places.
قصر المنتزه	
يستمتع	

II Important 15 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.

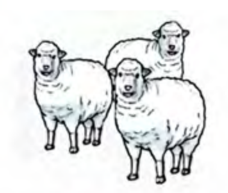










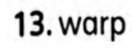


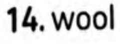
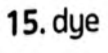









1. isolated
2. pedestrian
3. city
4. congestion
5. copper
6. coal
7. sheep
8. aluminium
9. irrigation
10. buffaloes
11. goslings

12. carpet

13. warp

14. wool

15. dye



• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من أتقان مهارة الكتابة.

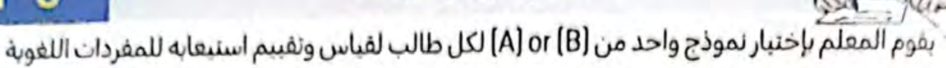
	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	**Step 2** Sentences متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	**Step 3** Paragraphs متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Alexandria	▸ Write the meaning : حى .... ميناء .... هام .... ثانى أكبر مدينة .... البحر المتوسط	▸ Reorder the words : 1. Alexandria- Amrya - a neighborhood - is - in. .... 2. has - Alexandria - an - port - important. .... 3. city - largest - Alexandria - is - the second - in Egypt . ... 4. is - the Mediterranean - on - Alexandria - Sea.	▸ Write a paragraph about : Alexandria ....
Visiting a carpet workshop	حرفيون .... صوف .... صبغة .... سجادة .... قطن منسوج	5. wool - collect - The artisans - sheep - from. .... 6. boil - They - the yarn - with - the dyes. .... 7. Weaving - crafts - spinning - and - are - important. .... 8. spun cotton - warp - They - use - to - make.	Visiting a carpet workshop ....
My village	قرية .... معزول .... بالقرب من .... خدمات .... ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة	9. place - is - an - My village - isolated. .... 10. a lot of - We - services - close to - have - our home. .... 11. village - My - is - populated - sparsely.	My village ....

PART 1

UNIT 5

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة


يقوم المعلم بإختيار نموذج واحد من [B] or [A] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية



I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning ⟶ Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
موارد طبيعية	1. We get .... from nature.
حجر	2. We use .... to construct bridges.
فضة	3. Gold and .... are minerals.
مصادر غير متجددة	4. We need fertile .... to grow plants.
أغراض	
تربة زراعية	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
غازات محتبسة	1. .... are gases collected in the atmosphere.
وقود	2. We burn .... to produce power or heat.
يحرق	3. We use natural gas for ....
التدفئة	4. We use coal to .... electricity.
طاقة	
يولد	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning ⟶ Complete the sentences

Lesson 1

Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
مادة خام	1. Natural resources are .... from nature.
معادن	2. Gold and silver are two common ....
مصادر متجددة	3. Sun and wind are examples of ....
ينشئ	4. The heat .... the sun.
يأتي من	
مقبض يد	

Lesson 2

Write the meaning	Complete the sentences
تغير المناخ	1. .... is a dangerous problem.
غاز طبيعي	2. We use .... for heating and cooking.
فحم	3. .... is a dark rock from mines.
الاحتباس الحراري	4. We get .... from oil wells.
الغلاف الجوي	
بترول خام	

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

ملئ بالغبار	....
ألواح شمسية	....
الطاقة الشمسية	....
طاقة متجددة	....
يدمر	....
طاقة كهربائية	....

1. The road is .... because it's next to the desert.
2. We use .... to collect sunlight.
3. Electricity from .... is cheap.
4. The solar energy is turned into ....

Lessons 4,5 & 6

خبرة	....
مهارة	....
جامعة	....
عمل جماعى	....
مسئول	....
حلال المشكلة	....

1. .... is practice of doing something.
2. I studied engineering at Cairo ....
3. Being .... is important for working in a team.
4. The .... should have different solutions.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

محطة شمسية	....
عمال	....
ضوء الشمس	....
طاقة الرياح	....
متحمس	....
مهندس	....

1. .... needs a very big space.
2. We get .... from wind.
3. The boys were .... to know more about solar farm.
4. There are many .... in the solar farm.

Lessons 4,5 & 6

موهبة	....
ترقية	....
برمجة الحاسب الآلى	....
حساس	....
يتعاون	....
يعتمد على	....

1. .... is something you do well naturally.
2. .... is when you get higher position.
3. My brother .... with his friends.
4. You should be .... to how others feel.

II Important 15 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.

















1. renewable resources
2. oil well
3. soil
4. stone
5. metal
6. plastic
7. fossil
8. dinosaur
9. wave power
10. tidal power
11. wind power
12. interview
13. gold
14. solar panels
15. silver

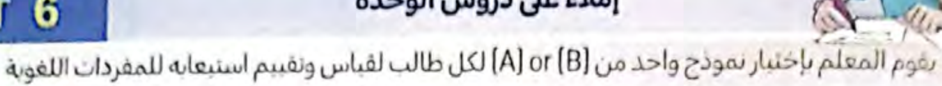


• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من أتقان مهارة الكتابة.

	Step 1 **Vocabulary** اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	**Step 2** **Sentences** متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	**Step 3** **Emails** متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب رسائل بريد إلكتروني
Natural resources	▸ **Write the meaning :** ذهب .... معدن .... موارد طبيعية .... مصادر متجددة .... بترول	▸ **Reorder the words :** **1.** and silver - Gold - two - common - are - minerals. .... **2.** natural - We - get - from - resources - nature. .... **3.** resources - Renewable - be - naturally - can - replaced. .... **4.** is - Petroleum - non-renewable - resource - a.	▸ **Write an email about :** Natural resources ....
Fossil fuels	ينتج .... غازات محتبسة .... الغلاف الجوى .... وقود حفرى .... تغير المناخ	**5.** produce - Fossil fuel - gases - greenhouse. .... **6.** are - collected in - Greenhouse - the atmosphere - gases. .... **7.** a non-renewable - Fossil - are - fuels - resource. .... **8.** a serious - change - Climate - is - problem.	Fossil fuels ....
Solar farm	ألواح شمسية .... سهل .... محطة شمسية .... عمال .... يبنى	**9.** easy - Solar panels - are - look - to - after. .... **10.** farms - need - a very - Solar - space - big. .... **11.** workers - The - are - farm - building - a solar.	Solar farm ....

PART 1

UNIT 6



Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية

I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Write the meaning	
ماسورة	....
قطار كهربائي	....
بضائع	....
هواء	....
يبني	....
مياه	....

1. They send water to the desert through a ....
2. The .... is a new kind of transportation.
3. There are a lot of .... in the supermarket.
4. People are ....new cities in the desert.

Lessons 2&3

Write the meaning	
إنسان آلي	....
كوكب المريخ	....
متصفح	....
مهندس روبوت	....
اختصار لـ	....
خيارات	....

1. The .... will help us in the future.
2. We use the .... to look at web pages.
3. The .... test the robots.
4. You should read the .... in the search box.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Write the meaning	
الحكومة	....
القدماء المصريين	....
مدينة صحراوية	....
يجلس	....
مريح	....
عبارة نهرية	....

1. .... used the river for transportation.
2. I like to .... by the window on the bus.
3. My grandpa likes this chair because it is ....
4. They took a .... to travel through the river.

Lessons 2&3

Write the meaning	
إجازة	....
مستقبل	....
آلة تعمل ذاتيًا	....
محرك البحث	....
رابط إلكتروني	....
صندوق البحث	....

1. I will spend my .... with my grandparents.
2. In the .... ,robots will do most of our jobs.
3. .... helps us find web pages.
4. The .... is a connection to a website or app online.

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 4

كلمة مرور	....
رمز	....
ملحوظ	....
يتذكر	....
يخبر	....
حروف كبيرة	....

1. It's important to create strong ....
2. Don't use less than 10 .... to make strong password.
3. She can't .... the passcode.
4. .... can make your password stronger.

Lessons 5 & 6

قناة السويس	....
حاويات	....
رائد أعمال / مُبادر	....
يشرح	....
عمل تجارى	....
أشكال	....

1. .... is an important canal in the world.
2. My uncle works on a .... ship.
3. An .... is someone who starts a new business.
4. My dad started his own ....

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 4

عبارة مرور	....
حساب إلكترونى	....
شخصى	....
ينشئ	....
عنوان	....
مسافة	....

1. .... are safer than regular passwords.
2. Don't use the same password for different ....
3. Don't use .... information for your password.
4. He gives me a false ....

Lessons 5 & 6

قبطان	....
يلوح	....
زميل الدراسة	....
ينقل	....
منتج	....
ينتظر	....

1. It must be so fun to be a ship's ....
2. He .... goodbye to his friend.
3. I met my .... in the street.
4. He uses ships to .... goods.

II Important 15 words

اهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة في الوحدة
طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم

تم اختيار المفردات اللغوية الهامة طبقًا لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم والمطلوب من الطلاب اتقانها باختلاف الفروق الفردية.













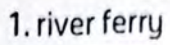
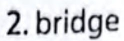
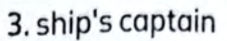
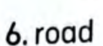
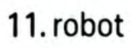
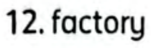


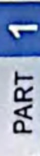









1. river ferry

2. bridge

3. ship's captain
4. containers
5. taxi

6. road
7. airplane
8. bus
9. river
10. password

11. robot

12. factory
13. boat
14. train
15. pipe



III Writing Practice

• يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من أتقان مهارة الكتابة

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Transportation	▸ Write the meaning : بضائع .... طائرة .... يسافر .... وسائل النقل .... قطار	▸ Reorder the words : 1. planes - goods - People - to transport - use. .... 2. use - to travel - People - cars - the cities - around. .... 3. many - of - There - forms - are -transportation. .... 4. is - the - new - It - train - electric.	▸ Write a paragraph about : Transportation ....
The Suez Canal	تذهب من خلال .... سفينة .... قناة السويس .... مهمة .... حاويات	5. many - go through - There - ships - it - are. .... 6. links - world - The Suez Canal - the whole. .... 7. important - The Suez Canal - very - is. .... 8. carry - containers - The ships - huge.	The Suez Canal ....
Passwords and passphrases	عبارة مرور .... كلمة مرور .... شخص .... معلومات .... ملحوظ / واضح	9. are - safer than - Passphrases - much - passwords - regular. .... 10. use - information - Don't - personal. .... 11. use - obvious - Don't - or - words - easy.	Passwords and passphrases ....

PART 2

Accumulative assessments on Dictation



تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من (B) او (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Unit 1

Model A

1. stomach
2. lungs
3. taste
4. Paralympics
5. exercise
6. mental
7. disappointed
8. brain stem

١. هيكل عظمى
٢. عضلات
٣. حاسة الشم
٤. دم
٥. طاقة
٦. إصدارات
٧. لغة الإشارة
٨. منطقة المخيخ

Model B

1. muscles
2. digestive system
3. touch
4. parasports
5. athletes
6. routine
7. memory
8. champion

١. حاسة الإبصار
٢. صالة/غرفة للجلوس
٣. منطقة المخيخ
٤. مسابقة/منافسة
٥. معسكر
٦. بدنى/جسدى
٧. إخلاص/إتقان
٨. إعاقات

Units 1 & 2

Model A

1. feathers
2. mammals
3. ostrich
4. chameleon
5. squid
6. water lily
7. bones
8. deaf

١. جراد
٢. اللافقاريات
٣. مفترس
٤. عيوب
٥. الجهاز التنفسى
٦. دهون
٧. سلسلة/مجموعة
٨. نشيط

Model B

1. reptiles
2. backbone
3. sloth
4. reproduce
5. echolocation
6. savory
7. cookery
8. olympics

١. خياشيم
٢. قشور
٣. فهد
٤. حلزون
٥. فريسة
٦. مميزات
٧. عداء
٨. الجهاز العصبى

Units 1,2 & 3

Model A

1. amphibians
2. warm-blooded
3. community
4. tombs
5. region
6. bat
7. leopard
8. coral reef

١. تسلية
٢. منفصل
٣. يوحد
٤. كفيف/فاقد البصر
٥. حركة
٦. ضئيل الحجم
٧. سام
٨. فراء

Model B

1. beak
2. mixture
3. scribe
4. violin
5. location
6. wings
7. dragonfly
8. shade

١. زعانف
٢. ذوات الدم البارد
٣. المواطنة
٤. فرعون
٥. عناصر الجذب
٦. توازن
٧. حماية
٨. بصطبا

Units 1,2,3 & 4

Model A

1. pedestrian
2. sparsely populated
3. copper
4. weave
5. warp
6. pump
7. dynasty
8. papyrus reeds

١. حضرى / مدنى
٢. ازدحام
٣. صبغة
٤. خيط / غزل
٥. النمو الذكى
٦. سباق
٧. ناعم
٨. ذو نفوذ/قوى

Model B

1. isolated
2. densely populated
3. goods
4. spin
5. port
6. chew
7. seal
8. costumes

١. قروى / ريفى
٢. عاصمة
٣. عملية الرى
٤. خيوط النسيج
٥. حى
٦. يتنفس
٧. موطن / بيئة
٨. السلالات الحاكمة

Units 1,2,3,4 & 5

Model 

1. minerals
2. natural resources
3. fossil
4. experience
5. special liquid
6. moist
7. museum
8. workshops

١. غازات محتبسه
٢. تغير المناخ
٣. طاقة الرياح
٤. مسئول
٥. لسان
٦. قوقعة
٧. عدد السكان
٨. كثيف / كثير

Model B

1. replace
2. frame
3. tidal power
4. promotion
5. buffalo
6. vertebrates
7. wind instrument
8. collaborate

١. وقود حفرى
٢. الطاقة الشمسية
٣. طاقة الأمواج
٤. مدعم / مؤيد
٥. غاز الأكسجين
٦. الفهد الصياد
٧. الرقص الشعبى
٨. ماكينة

Units 1,2,3,4,5 & 6

Model A

1. rail
2. robot
3. password
4. swallow
5. enormous
6. ney
7. inhabitants
8. coal

١. ماسورة
٢. شخص
٣. ضاحية المدينة
٤. يخترع
٥. لغز / غموض
٦. جيران
٧. سجادة
٨. موهبة

Model B

1. road
2. vacation
3. browser
4. generate
5. primary colors
6. civilization
7. hieroglyphs
8. solar panels

١. حاويات
٢. مسيرة مهنية
٣. سقف
٤. حركة
٥. ساق نبات
٦. رموز
٧. قرع الطبول
٨. بئر بترول خام

PART 3

Oral Tests on Units

اختبارات شفوية على الوحدات



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الملحق

Oral Test on Unit 1

◄ اختبار شفوي على الوحدة الأولى

- Listen and circle the correct word.

استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة

	a.	b.	c.
1	mouth	muscles	skeleton
2	energy	oxygen	sloth
3	artistic	balance	activity
4	memory	movement	problems
5	vitamins	games	tips
6	diet	habit	routine

Oral Test on Unit 2

◄ اختبار شفوي على الوحدة الثانية

- Listen and circle the correct word.

استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.

	a.	b.	c.
1	scales	fins	wings
2	feather	fur	backbone
3	cheetah	leopard	ostrich
4	squid	snail	crab
5	prey	predator	wild
6	soil	stem	root

Oral Test on Unit 3

◄ اختبار شفوي على الوحدة الثالثة

- Listen and circle the correct word. استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة

	a.	b.	c.
1	group	community	street
2	pyramid	pharaoh	scribe
3	Aswan	Giza	Cairo
4	ney	oud	qanun
5	drum	rebaba	violin
6	geography	location	history

Oral Test on Unit 4

◄ اختبار شفوي على الوحدة الرابعة

- Listen and circle the correct word. استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.

	a.	b.	c.
1	rural	urban	isolated
2	coal	copper	aluminum
3	geese	sheep	goslings
4	weave	wool	craft
5	carpet	machine	dye
6	services	important	planners

Oral Test on Unit 5 ◄ اختبار شفوي على الوحدة الخامسة

- Listen and circle the correct word. استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.

	a.	b.	c.
1	soil	mineral	stone
2	fuels	fossil	fossil fuels
3	wave power	solar power	wind power
4	talent	skill	experience
5	responsible	collaborate	supportive
6	dusty	electricity	trip

Oral Test on Unit 6 ◄ اختبار شفوي على الوحدة السادسة

- Listen and circle the correct word. استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.

	a.	b.	c.
1	air	rail	water
2	road	pipe	goods
3	bridge	roof	robot
4	search engine	engine	search box
5	address	password	series
6	containers	facts	business



Listening Texts | نصوص الاستماع

Oral Tests on Units

Listen and circle the correct word:

Oral Test on Unit 1

1. muscles
2. energy
3. artistic
4. movement
5. tips
6. routine

Oral Test on Unit 4

1. urban
2. coal
3. sheep
4. wool
5. dye
6. services

Oral Test on Unit 2

1. fins
2. feather
3. ostrich
4. snail
5. prey
6. root

Oral Test on Unit 5

1. mineral
2. fossil fuels
3. wave power
4. experience
5. collaborate
6. dusty

Oral Test on Unit 3

1. community
2. scribe
3. Aswan
4. oud
5. violin
6. geography

Oral Test on Unit 6

1. rail
2. road
3. robot
4. search engine
5. password
6. containers

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

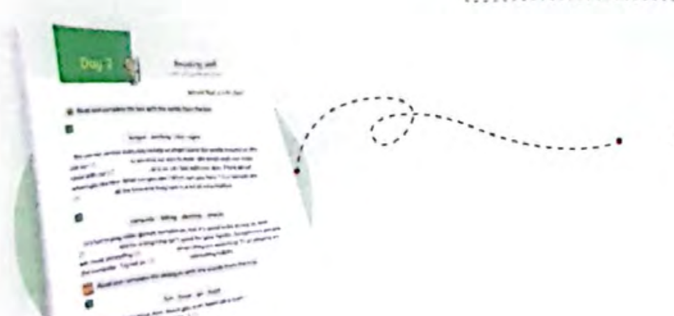




عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول
على افضل درجة في الامتحان.

اليوم الثانى

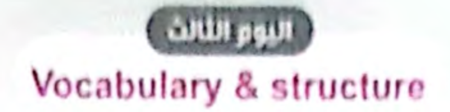
Reading Skill



عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على
أفضل درجة في الامتحان.

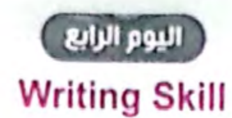


عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على
أفضل درجة في سؤال القصة المقررة.





عرض لأهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية
التي وردت في المنهج





عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول
على افضل درجة في الامتحان.

اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

اختبارات مجمعة من امتحانات المحافظات

تم تعديل الاختبارات طبقًا لاحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية
وتعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤



- خمسة عشر اختبار مجمع من امتحانات المدارس لعام ٢٠٢٣ من مختلف المحافظات.

Day 1

Listening

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

السؤال الأول فى الورقة الامتحانية عبارة عن أن يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع مكون من ٥٠ كلمة ويقوم الطالب بوضع دائرة على الإجابة الصحيحة.

A

1. We can't .... energy.
   a. use b. change c. have d. destroy
2. We can .... energy from one kind to another.
   a. destroy b. change c. collect d. plant
3. We use .... to collect sunlight.
   a. boards b. sets
   c. solar panels d. time machines
4. When we use electrical energy for a television, it's now .... energy.
   a. electronic b. mechanical c. chemical d. nuclear

B

1. Egypt has a very .... history.
   a. short b. boring c. long d. small
2. People started to live near the .... about 9,000 years ago.
   a. Nile b. Tower c. Pyramids d. Red Sea
3. At first, Egypt had .... separate areas.
   a. three b. ten c. two d. four
4. Upper Egypt was in the ....
   a. south b. north c. east d. west

2. Listen and complete.

السؤال الثانى فى الورقة الامتحانية عبارة عن أن يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع مكون من ٥٠ كلمة ويقوم الطالب بتكملة الجمل بالكلمة الصحيحة

A

1. .... resources can be replaced when they run out.
2. .... are renewable resources because we can grow more.
3. Farmers can .... more animals for you to eat.
4. Plastic is a .... resource.



B

1. The Paralympic Games is an international ....
2. The Paralympic Games take place every .... years.
3. It is held in a .... country each time.
4. Egypt has many .... who take part in these competitions.



Reading skill

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب

السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية

Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

A

tongue - working - skin - eyes

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our (1) .... to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our (2) .... , and we can feel with our skin. Think about where you are now. What can you see ? What can you hear ? Our senses are (3) .... all the time and they take in a lot of information.

B

computer - Sitting - develop - snacks

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. (1) .... still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy (2) .... when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to (3) .... unhealthy habits.

or Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

A

fun - have - go - hard

Younis: Good morning, Amr. Have you ever been on a train ?
Amr : Good morning, Younis. Yes , I (1) ....
Younis: Where did you (2) .... ?
Amr : I went to Luxor with my friends.
Younis: Was it (3) .... ?
Amr : Yes, it was fun.
Younis: What was the train like ?
Amr : It was very big.

Read the following text and answer the questions below.

A Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bones. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. birds b. mammals c. reptiles d. fish
2. Birds lay eggs which are ....
   a. hot b. hard c. soft d. warm

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What makes birds fly ?

....

4. Why are birds' beaks different ?

....

B Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to **keep** warm. Reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The passage is talking about ....
   a. rivers b. turtles c. reptiles d. scales
2. The word "**keep**" in the passage means ....
   a. spend b. stay c. come d. lay

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Can we find turtles' eggs on the land ?

....

4. Why do reptiles have to spend time in the sun ?

....

A

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).** T F

1. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street. ☐ ☐
2. Zeinab doesn't want to visit her grandparents. ☐ ☐

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Grandpa likes sewing Khayameya design with ....
   a. clothes b. lotus flowers c. socks d. grass
2. .... wanted to be an engineer in the past.
   a. Grandpa b. Zeinab c. Rasha d. Lobna

B

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).** T F

1. Grandpa's favorite design is lotus flowers. ☐ ☐
2. Zeinab doesn't like sewing. ☐ ☐

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Grandpa liked sewing lotus flowers and geometric ....
   a. problems b. layers c. patterns d. stitches
2. Grandpa's .... taught him to sew.
   a. father b. mother c. brother d. sister

C

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).** T F

1. Zeinab and her mother went to grandparents by bus. ☐ ☐
2. All people wanted to learn about Khayameya. ☐ ☐

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Zeinab wanted to visit grandpa because she was ....
   a. bored b. worried c. happy d. pleased
2. Zeinab and her grandfather visited the ....
   a. museum b. school c. park d. shop

Day 3



Vocabulary & Structure

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب

I Vocabulary

Unit 1

digestive system	الجهاز الهضمى	memory	ذكرى - ذاكرة
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسى	main areas	مناطق رئيسية
muscles	عضلات	cerebellum	منطقة المخيخ
skeleton	هيكل عظمى	lounge	صالة للجلوس / استراحة
chew	يمضغ	cookery	فن الطبخ
swallow	يبتلع	international	دولى
senses	الحواس	competition	مسابقة
taste	حاسة التذوق - يتذوق	Paralympic Games	دورة الألعاب البارالمبية (لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة)
sight	حاسة الإبصار		
sign language	لغة الإشارة	opportunities	فرص
communicate	يتصل / يتواصل	brain	مخ
combination	خليط / مزيج	mental	عقلى
deaf	أصم		



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We use our .... system when we eat and drink.
   a. respiratory b. digestive c. muscles d. bones
2. Our .... lift and turn bones to make us move.
   a. lungs b. stomach c. muscles d. nose
3. Our .... help us understand the world around us.
   a. lungs b. senses c. hearts d. skeletons
4. The deaf use sign language to .... with others.
   a. run b. jump c. communicate d. travel
5. Our .... controls how we move and what we remember.
   a. nose b. brain c. tongue d. stomach

Unit 2

vertebrates	الفقاريات	scientist	عالم
mammals	الثدييات	ostrich	نعامة
backbone	العمود الفقرى	invertebrates	اللافقاريات
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	snail	الحلزون
reptiles	الزواحف	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
amphibians	البرمائيات	crab	كابوريا
cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد	hard shell	صدفة صلبة
gills	خياشيم	protection	حماية
enormous	ضخم	primary colors	الألوان الأساسية
tiny	ضئيل - قليل الحجم	secondary colors	الألوان الثانوية
Earth	كوكب الأرض	water lily	الزنبق المائى
chameleon	حرباء	flat leaf	ورقة شجر مسطحة



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The .... is doing research about animals and plants.
   a. teacher b. farmer c. scientist d. scribe
2. .... have fur or hair on their bodies and are warm-blooded.
   a. Fish b. Mammals c. Insects d. Snakes
3. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
   a. legs b. feathers c. gills d. shells
4. The African elephant is ....
   a. tiny b. small c. enormous d. thin
5. Crabs have .... for protection.
   a. wings b. hard shells c. fins d. gills

Unit 3

community	مجتمع	features	سمات / ملامح
neighborhood	حى (مكان الإقامة) - مجاورة	traditional	تقليدى
neighbors	جيران	folk music	موسيقى شعبية
mixture	مزيج (خليط)	string instrument	آلة موسيقية وترية
society	مجتمع	wind instrument	آلة نفخ
civilization	حضارة	folk dancing	الرقص الشعبى
citizenship	المواطنة	Nubian dancing	الرقص النوبى

tombs	مقابر	Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا
dynasties	سلالات	colorful	ملون
scribes	الكَتَبة	rhythm	قافية
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	location	موقع
papyrus reeds	أعواد البردى	geography	الجغرافيا
capital	عاصمة	history	التاريخ
governorate	محافظة	attractions	عناصر جذب



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A .... is a group of people who live together in the same area.
   a. citizenship b. community c. neighborhood d. city
2. .... wrote in hieroglyphs in Ancient Egypt.
   a. Vets b. Doctors c. Traders d. Scribes
3. .... is where place in the country.
   a. Location b. History c. Geography d. Attractions
4. A good .... is acting in a way that helps your society.
   a. neighbor b. village c. citizenship d. community
5. Mena joined the north and south to .... Egypt.
   a. divide b. unite c. write d. stop

Unit 4

densely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية عالية	weave	ينسج
sparsely populated	ذات كثافة سكانية منخفضة	artisans	حرفيون
rural	قروى / ريفى	port	ميناء
urban	حضرى / مدنى	neighborhood	حى
isolated	معزول	industry	صناعة
sparse	ضئيل / قليل	apartment	شقة
dense	كثيف / كثير	model	نموذج
inhabitants	السكان	conclusion	خاتمة
pedestrian	مُشاة	smart	ذكى
congestion	ازدحام	growth	نمو
warp	خيوط	planners	مخططين
yarn	خيط / غزل	plan	يخطط - خطة
spin	يغزل / ينسج	government offices	مكاتب حكومية





Pop Quiz on Vocabulary



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's .... populated-only about 700 people live there.
   a. sparsely b. densely c. heavily d. highly
2. The artisans make the .... by hand using a machine called a loon.
   a. video games b. computers c. television d. carpets
3. Carpets are made from ....
   a. meat b. sheep's wool c. wood d. plastic
4. .... is a way to plan new areas of a city.
   a. Smart growth b. Transportation
   c. Industry d. Traffic
5. Cairo is a metropolitan area and .... populated.
   a. densely b. sparsely c. rarely d. hardly

Unit 5

petroleum	بترول	wave power	طاقة الأمواج
mineral	صلب / معدن	wind power	طاقة الرياح
renewable	متجدد	solar panels	ألواح شمسية
non-renewable	غير متجدد	mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية
material	مادة خام	dusty	ملئ بالغبار
fossil	حفرية	solar farms	مزارع الطاقة الشمسية
natural gas	غاز طبيعى	electricity	كهرباء
create	يولد / ينتج	tidal power	قوة المد والجزر
global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى	electrical energy	طاقة كهربائية
climate change	تغيير المناخ	wind turbine	توربينات رياح
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحرارى	collaborate	يتعاون
fossil fuel	الوقود الحفرى	communicate	يتواصل
geologist	عالم جيولوجي	signature	إمضاء / توقيع
		advertisement	إعلان



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدرب تلقائي على المفردات اللغوية

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Natural resources are materials that we get from ....
   a. forest b. nature c. school d. people

2. A .... is a material that we burn to produce power or heat.
   a. wind   b. sand   c. fuel   d. water
3. .... gases are collected in the atmosphere.
   a. Renewable   b. Solar   c. Greenhouse   d. Natural
4. We use solar panels to collect ....
   a. water   b. wave   c. sunlight   d. tidal
5. We can generate .... from the wind power.
   a. wave   b. oil   c. electricity   d. water

• Unit 6

river ferry	عبّارة نهرية	search engine	محرك البحث
road	طريق	search box	صندوق البحث
pipe	ماسورة - أنبوب	designer	مصمم
electric	كهربى	safe	آمن
rail	قضيب سكة حديد	password	كلمة مرور
robot	إنسان آلى	passphrase	عبارة المرور
future	مستقبل	personal	شخصى
flying taxi	التاكسى الطائر	obvious	ملحوظ
self-driving car	سيارة ذاتية القيادة	series	تسلسل
pipeline	خط أنابيب	characters	رموز - شخصيات
tech = technology	تكنولوجيا	password code	شفرة لكلمة المرور
specific	محدد / معين	space	مسافة
search	بحث / يبحث	container	حاوية



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

تدرب تلقائي على المفردات اللغوية

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... is a website that helps you find web pages from other websites.
   a. Search engine   b. Browser
   c. Link   d. Container
2. Don't use the same .... for different accounts.
   a. word   b. color   c. subject   d. password
3. We can .... goods long distances by water.
   a. transport   b. test   c. think   d. travel
4. Robotics .... are the people who design autonomous machines.
   a. traders   b. doctors   c. vets   d. engineers
5. Your password mustn't be ....
   a. strong   b. obvious   c. personal   d. difficult



II Structure

Unit 1

1 The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / You / We
They اسم جمع + التصريف الأول للفعل

He / She / It /[Ali] اسم مفرد + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + s or es

◂ معظم الأفعال يضاف لها [s] → s

◂ أما التي تنتهي بـ [s, sh, ch, ss, x, o] يضاف لها [es] → es

- Adam goes to the park every week.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

He / She / It / اسم المفرد + doesn't
I / You / We / They / اسم الجمع + don't
+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل

- I don't have sisters.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A. Yes / No Question السؤال بمعنى هل ....؟

Do + I / You / We / They / اسم جمع
Does + He / She / It / اسم مفرد
+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + باقي السؤال ?

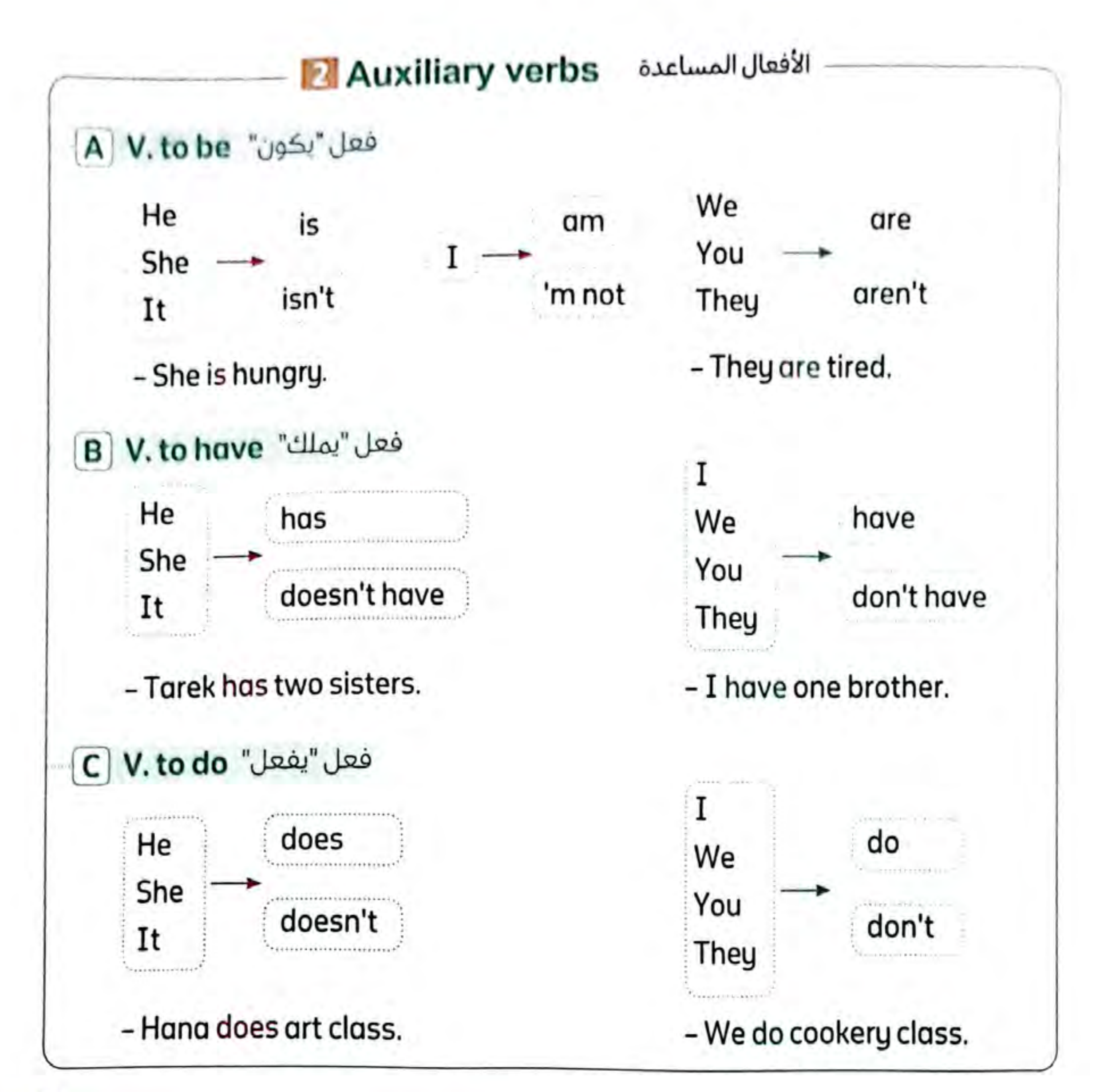
- Do you like milk?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

4 Wh-Question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Question word + do + I/you/we/they/ اسم جمع
does + he/she/it/ اسم مفرد
+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل ?

- When do you get up every day?
- I get up at 6 o'clock.

2 Auxiliary verbs الأفعال المساعدة



A V. to be فعل "يكون"

He / She / It → is / isn't

I → am / 'm not

We / You / They → are / aren't

- She is hungry.
- They are tired.

B V. to have فعل "يملك"

He / She / It → has / doesn't have

I / We / You / They → have / don't have

- Tarek has two sisters.
- I have one brother.

C V. to do فعل "يفعل"

He / She / It → does / doesn't

I / We / You / They → do / don't

- Hana does art class.
- We do cookery class.

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He doesn't .... Spanish.
   a. speak b. speaks c. spoke d. speaking
2. Fatma .... go to the museum.
   a. aren't b. doesn't c. don't d. am not
3. What .... we doing today, Mom ?
   a. are b. is c. do d. have
4. Today .... Friday, so there's no school.
   a. am b. is c. are d. do
5. Hamza .... to the park every week.
   a. go b. went c. goes d. going

Unit 2

1 Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين [شخصين / شيئين]:

◂ عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر في نفس الصفة القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد نستخدم:

[short adj. صفة قصيرة + er] + than

◂ يضاف للصفات القصيرة [er] وبعدها [than]:

- old → older
- fast → faster

Ants are stronger than humans.







2 Superlative صيغة التفضيل [المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة] في صفة

◂ عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين [واحد ومجموعة في صفة ذات مقطع واحد] نضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة [est]:

[the + short adj. صفة قصيرة + est]

the + (معظم الصفات) → fast (يضاف إليها) → + est → fastest



The African elephant is the biggest animal on land.



The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird.



The biggest bird in the world can't fly.

3 Adverbs of manner [ظروف الحال [الكيفية

الظرف يصف الفعل ويأتي بعده ويتكون من إضافة [ly] إلى الصفة المنتظمة والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي

• adjective الصفة •

Doctors help sick people.

Rodina is happy.

الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبله أو بعد [verb to be].

• adverb الظرف •

Snails move slowly.

الظرف يصف الفعل ويأتي بعده

• Irregular غير المنتظم •

Adjective		Adverb	
good	جيد	well	جيدًا
fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
hard	صعب	hard	بصعوبة
right	صحيح	right	بطريقة صحيحة
late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا
early	مبكر	early	مبكرًا



Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The whale shark is the .... fish.
   a. bigger   b. big   c. biggest   d. bigger than
2. Speak .... The baby is sleeping.
   a. quiet   b. quietly   c. soft   d. good
3. The camel is taller .... the horse.
   a. there   b. then   c. than   d. their
4. Why are you running .... , Ehab ?
   a. quick   b. fast   c. slow   d. noisy
5. The frog is .... smallest vertebrate.
   a. than   b. there   c. then   d. the

Unit 3

1 Demonstrative pronouns ضمائر الإشارة

Singular : المفرد

تستخدم بمعنى هذا / هذه (للإشارة للمفرد القريب)	→	This	is	a red T-shirt.
تستخدم بمعنى ذلك / تلك (للإشارة للمفرد البعيد)	→	That		a camera.

- This is a book.



- That is a book.



Plural : الجمع

تستخدم بمعنى هؤلاء (للاشارة للجمع القريب)	→	These	are	nice sunglasses.
تستخدم بمعنى أولئك (للاشارة للجمع البعيد)	→	Those		brown jackets.

- These are books.



- Those are books.




2 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل		Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية		Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	
تستخدم قبل الفعل		تستخدم قبل الاسم المملوك		تستخدم بدلًا من صفات الملكية والمملوك معًا ولا يأتي بعدها اسم	
I	أنا	my	ملكي	mine	ملكي
You	أنت/أنتم/أنتن	your	ملكك/ملككم	yours	ملكك / ملككم
He	هو	his	ملكه	his	ملكه
She	هي	her + noun	ملكها	hers	ملكها
We	نحن	our	ملكنا	ours	ملكنا
They	هم	their	ملكهم	theirs	ملكهم
It	هو/هي لغير العاقل	its	ملكه/ملكها(لغير العاقل)	—	—

3 The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

A Verb to (Be) in the Past Simple Tense
الفعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was
They / You / We / اسم جمع + were



- Rami was at the Pyramids yesterday.



- They were at the zoo last week.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I - He - She - It / اسم المفرد + was not = wasn't
They / You / We / اسم الجمع + were not + weren't



- They weren't at the hospital.

B The Past Simple Tense with "Regular verbs"
زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة.

Usage

- يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى.

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + (ed / d / ied)



- They listened to stories.

C The Past Simple Tense with "Irregular verbs"

زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة.

Formation

◀ يتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل غير المنتظم (يحفظ كما هو).

Meaning	Present		Past	Meaning	Present		Past
يشرب	drink	→	drank	يفوز	win	→	won
يرى	see	→	saw	يشترى	buy	→	bought
يأكل	eat	→	ate	يذهب	go	→	went
يملك/ يتناول	have	→	had	يأخذ	take	→	took

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل + تكملة الجملة.



They saw a show.
↓
التصريف الثانى للفعل



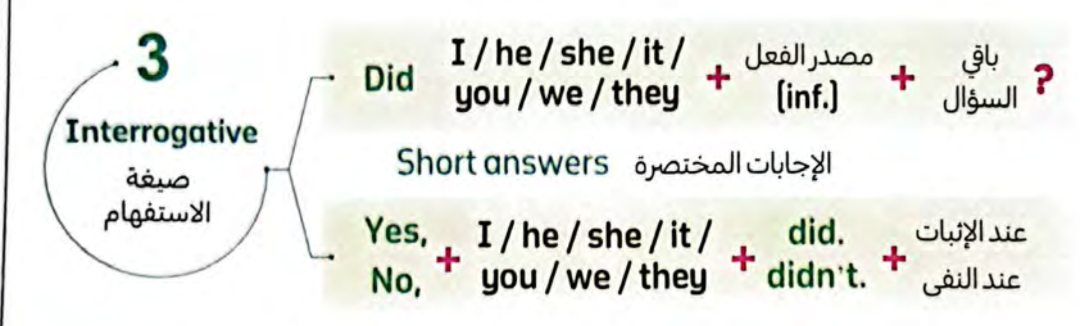
She took pictures.
↓
التصريف الثانى للفعل

2 Negative Statements
الجمل الخبرية المنفية

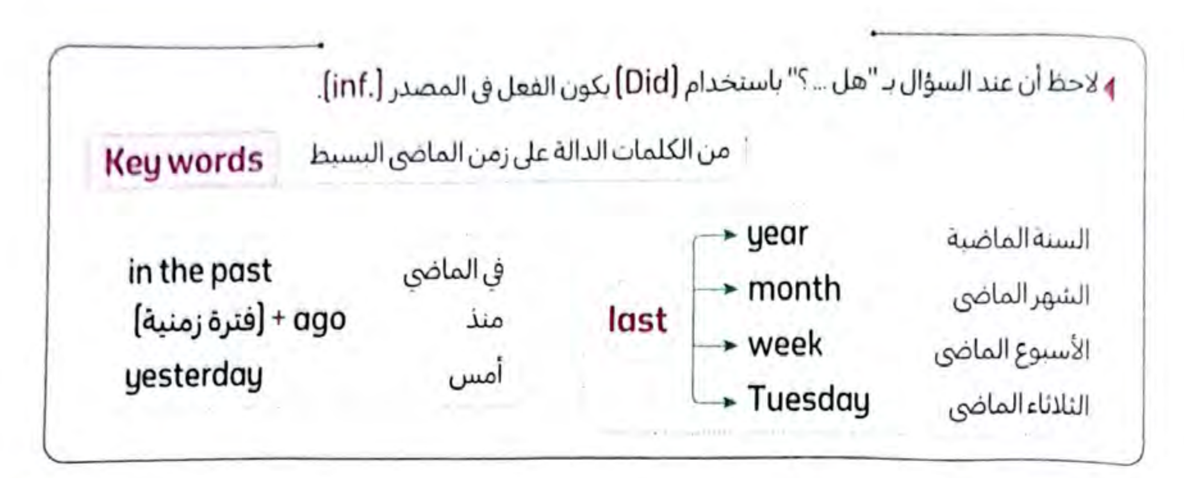
I / He / She / It /They / You / We + did not (didn't) + مصدر الفعل (inf.)

▶ - She didn't watch the sunrise.

3 Interrogative
صيغة الاستفهام



▶ - Did you listen to stories ? - Yes, I did.



لاحظ أن عند السؤال بـ "هل ... ؟" باستخدام (Did) يكون الفعل في المصدر (.inf).

Key words من الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط

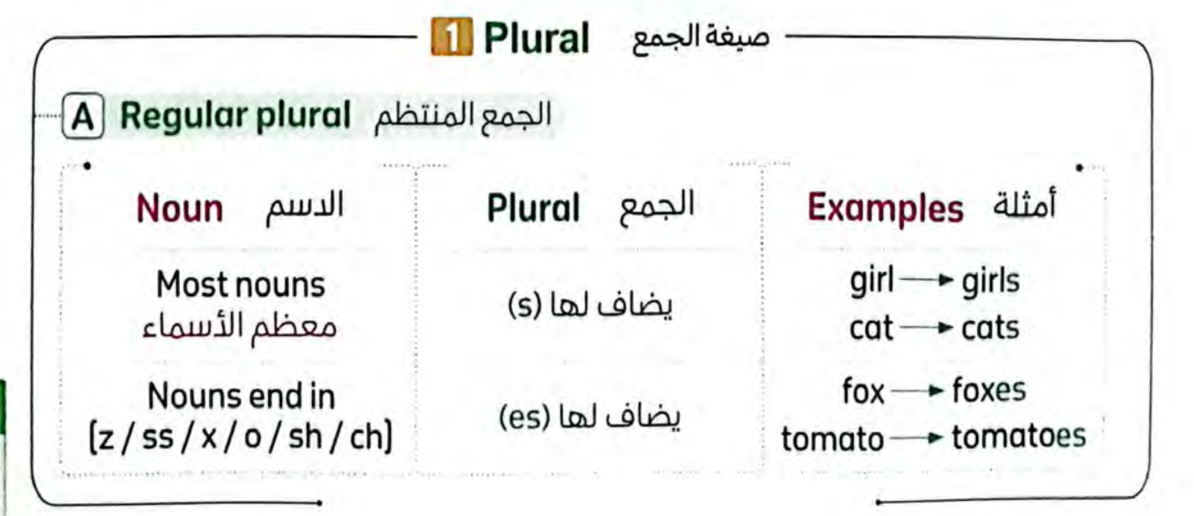
in the past	في الماضي	last	→ year	السنة الماضية
(فترة زمنية) + ago	منذ		→ month	الشهر الماضي
yesterday	أمس		→ week	الأسبوع الماضي
			→ Tuesday	الثلاثاء الماضي

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... bottle which is over there is empty.
   a. Those   b. It   c. That   d. These
2. He .... at school yesterday.
   a. is   b. was   c. did   d. were
3. Those are Reem's clothes. They're ....
   a. her   b. hers   c. she   d. his
4. Hazem lives in .... grandpa's house.
   a. him   b. her   c. his   d. hers
5. Is this cup .... ?
   a. your   b. yours   c. my   d. their
6. John .... a bear in the garden an hour ago.
   a. seen   b. sees   c. see   d. saw

Unit 4



1 Plural صيغة الجمع

A Regular plural الجمع المنتظم

Noun الاسم	Plural الجمع	Examples أمثلة
Most nouns معظم الأسماء	يضاف لها (s)	girl → girls cat → cats
Nouns end in (z / ss / x / o / sh / ch)	يضاف لها (es)	fox → foxes tomato → tomatoes

B Irregular plural الجمع الغير منتظم

- We don't add -s or -es but we keep them as they are.

لا نضيف لها (es أو s) ولكنها تحفظ كما هي.

Word	Plural	Meaning	Plural
a woman	women	a tooth	teeth
a goose	geese	a foot	feet
a man	men	an ox	oxen

2 The conjunctions الروابط

1 After بعد

- After I get up, I wash my face.

2 Before قبل

- They wash the wool before they can use it.

3 So that لكى

so that + الغرض أو السبب

- Salma studies hard so that she can get high marks.

4 Although على الرغم من

- لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

- Although he is strong, he can't lift the box.

5 Even though رغم أن

- لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.

- I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors.

6 While بينما / أثناء

- لربط حدثان فى نفس التوقيت.

- The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them weave.

7 Every time كل مرة

- Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.

8 As soon as بمجرد أن

- لربط فكرتين أو حدثين متتاليتين.

- As soon as Ahmed returned home, he had his lunch.

Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Cats always try to catch many ....
   a. mice b. a sheep c. a goose d. a mouse
2. They wash the wool .... it becomes ready to use.
   a. although b. after c. so that d. before
3. .... she is very helpful, she doesn't have any friends.
   a. So b. Before c. While d. Although
4. How many .... are there in the park ?
   a. person b. woman c. child d. people
5. The farmers have twelve ....
   a. cow b. goat c. sheep d. a sheep

Unit 5

1 The third person present singular verbs.

استخدام الأفعال مع ضمائر الفاعل الغائب المفردة في زمن المضارع.

التصريف الأول للفعل مضافًا له "s" أو "es" أو "ies" :

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها [s]

أما التي تنتهي بـ [sh , ch , s , ss , x , o , z] يضاف لها [es]

He / She / It /[Ali] اسم مفرد + [inf.] مصدر الفعل + s or es

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use present simple to talk about :**

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن:

1 Facts حقائق

- The mechanic fixes cars.

2 Timetables جداول المواعيد

- School finishes at 2 o'clock.

3 Repeated actions or habits أحداث متكررة أو عادات

- She visits her grandfather on Fridays.

2 Pronouns and antecedents

A Pronouns الضمائر

Subject Pronouns	Object Pronouns	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns
I	me	my	mine
You	you	your	yours
He	him	his	his
She	her	her	hers
It	it	its	-
We	us	our	ours
You	you	your	yours
They	them	their	theirs

B Antecedents السوابق

Antecedent is the thing represented by a pronoun.

- السابقة هى الشيء الذى يعيد تقديمه الضمير.

The antecedent of a pronoun is a noun.

- السابقة للضمير هى الاسم.

Mona presented her project.



▸ - **Rules of using antecedents and pronouns**

قواعد استخدام السابقات والضمائر ◂

When the noun is a boy (He) →	We use (his)
When the noun is a girl (She) →	We use (her)
When it isn't important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl (someone / person) →	We use (their)



Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My family .... to visit my grandparents on Fridays.
   a. to go   b. goes   c. going   d. went
2. My mother ate .... salad for dinner.
   a. me   b. she   c. her   d. its
3. My mom .... to my grandparents on Saturdays.
   a. go   b. going   c. goes   d. to go
4. Rana .... up for school at 7 o'clock.
   a. wake   b. wakes   c. to wake   d. have woken
5. She .... the bus to go home.
   a. catch   b. catches   c. catching   d. are catching

Unit 6

Making predictions about the future عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل

1

Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة → **Subj. + will ('ll) + inf.**

- He will travel to Alexandria next month.

Note : will = 'll

2

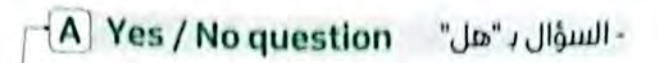
Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية → **Subj. + will not (won't) + inf.**



- Robots won't drive trains next year.

Note : will not = won't

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام



A Yes / No question - السؤال بـ "هل"

Will + subj. + inf. ?

Affirmative short answer : Yes, subj. + will.
Negative short answer : No, subj. + won't.

- Will you travel to the Moon one day?
  - ⋆ Yes, I will. ⋆ No, I won't.

B Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Wh- word + will + subj. + inf. ?

- What will you do when you're an adult ?
  I will travel to the Moon.



Key words

tomorrow	غداً	in the future	في المستقبل
next	القادم - التالى	in 2025, 2026,.......	في عام ٢٠٢٥، ٢٠٢٦، ....

Note

تستخدم (How) للسؤال عن وسيلة المواصلات.

- How will you travel to Aswan ? - On a river ferry. / - By train.



Pop Quiz on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Dad .... to England next week.
a. travel b. travels
c. will travel d. are traveling

2. It rains outside. I .... go to the club.
a. am b. 'll c. won't d. have

3. What will you .... tomorrow ?
a. do b. does c. did d. has

4. .... people use flying cars in the future ?
a. Have b. Will c. Does d. Are

5. We will .... what your father says.
a. see b. sees c. to see d. seeing

Day 4



Writing skill

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب

السؤال السابع في الورقة الامتحانية

Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. are – Some – driving – workers – trucks.

....

2. you – do – Where – live ?

....

3. growth – is – What – smart ?

....

4. our – seeing – for – eyes – We – use.

....

5. live – on land – on water – Amphibians – and – can.

....

6. uses – language – Who – sign ?

....

7. to learn – I want – about – Egyptian – traditional – crafts.

....

8. populated - Is - sparsely - your city - densely - or ?

....

9. was – in – Egypt – Music – important – ancient.

....

10. natural – What – resources – are ?

....

11. a – big – shark – How – is – whale ?

....

12. folk – lots of – traditional – Egypt – music – has.

....

13. the – is - biggest – The ostrich – bird.

....

14. organs – protects – Our – skeleton – our.

....

15. travel to – one – Will – the Moon – you – day ?

....



"Our senses"

Your senses are very important for you. You depend on them every day. Your senses are sight, hearing, touch, smell and taste. Your senses work every day. Your sight let you read a book. Your tongue helps you taste food. Your senses also help keep you away from harm.

"Animals in the world"

The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant. The biggest Sea animal in the world is also a mammal. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

"Scribes"

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties. They wrote in hieroglyphs. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

"Respiratory system"

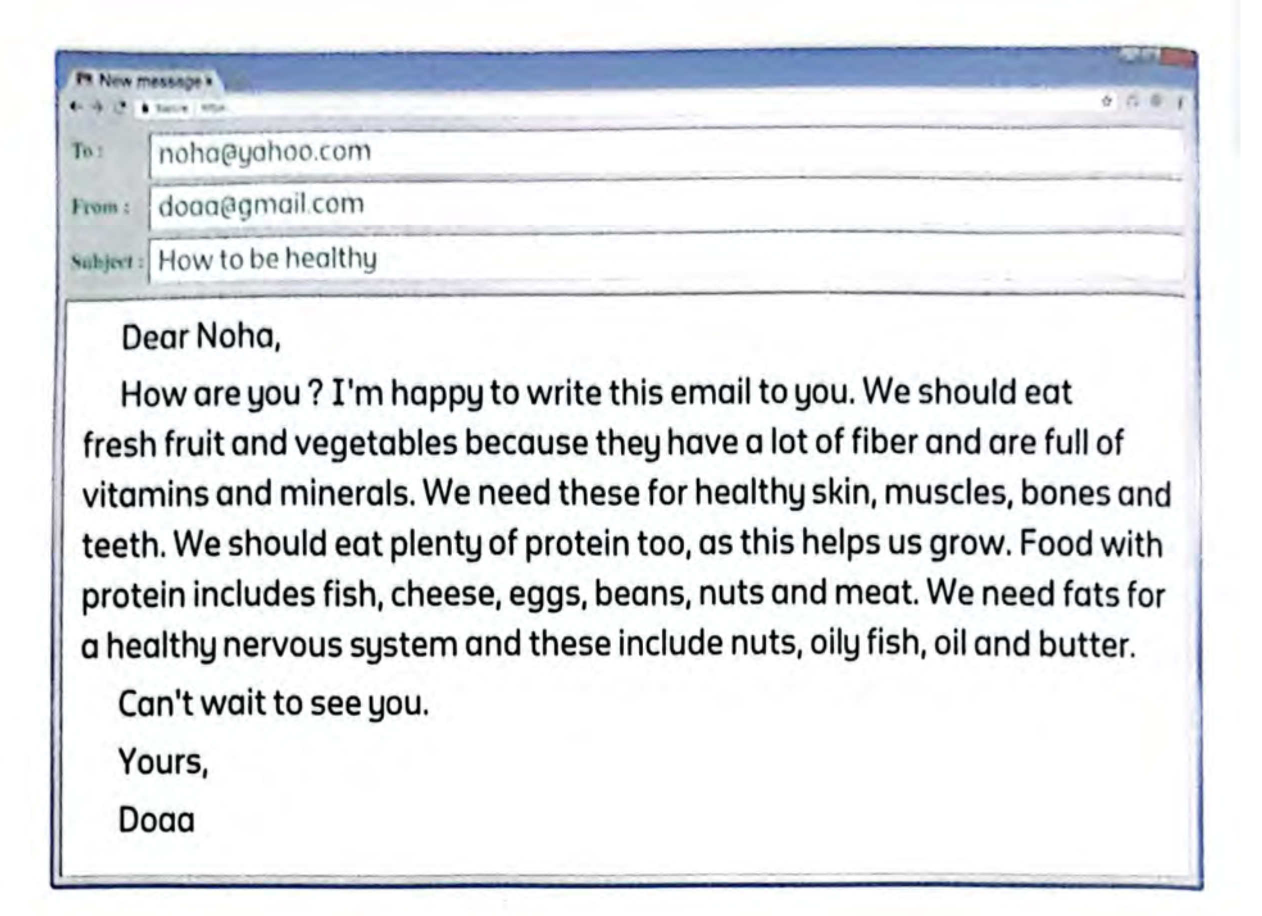
There are different systems in our body. The respiratory system is a very important system. It helps us to do many things. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We use our nose to breathe in the air, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

"The Paralympic Games"

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sport, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

"Our brain"

The brain is an important organ in our bodies. There are two halves in our brain : the left hemisphere and the right hemisphere. The left hemisphere controls the right side of the body. The right hemisphere controls the left side of the body. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.


New message ×
To : noha@yahoo.com
From : doaa@gmail.com
Subject : How to be healthy

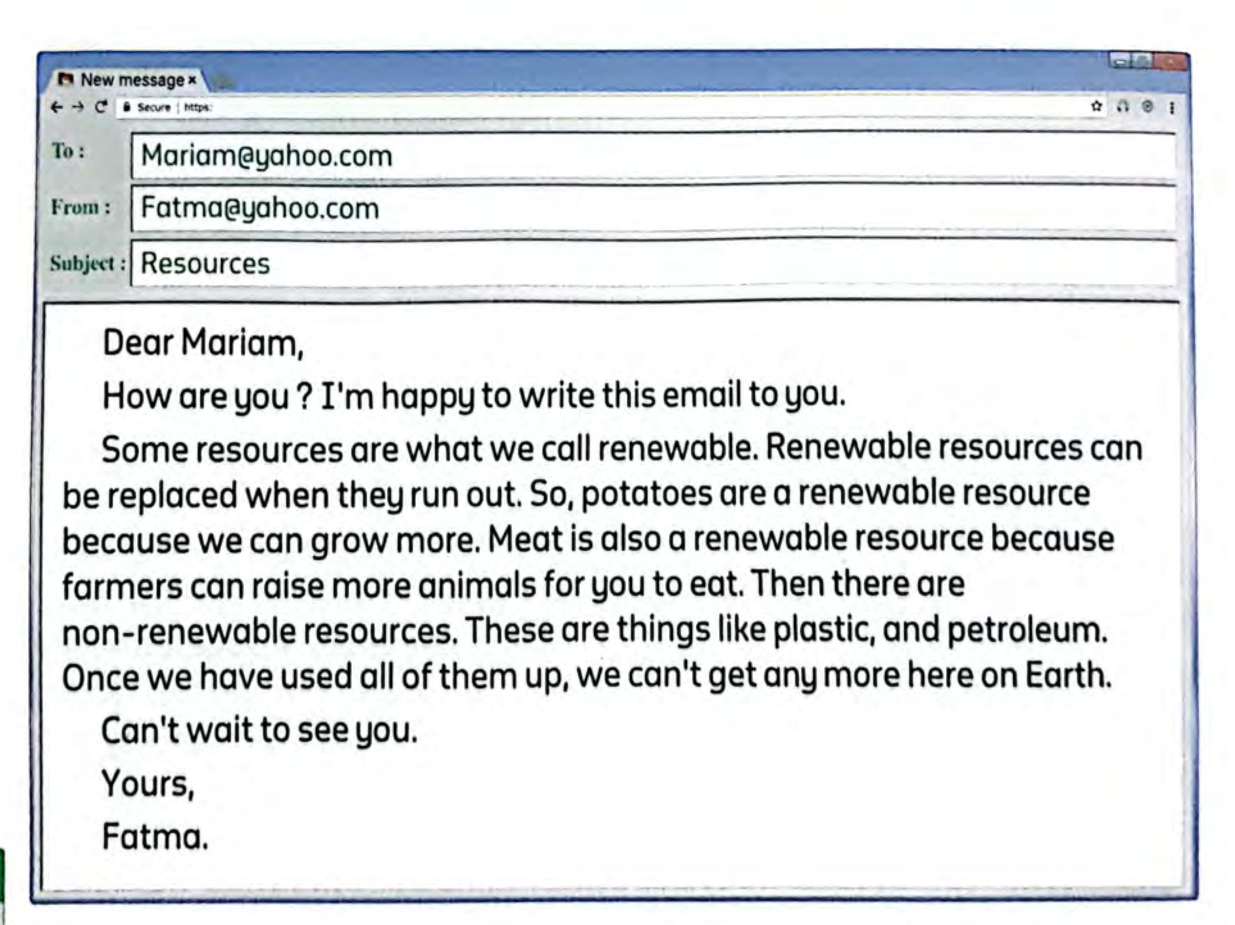
Dear Noha,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you. We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Food with protein includes fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat. We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter.

Can't wait to see you.

Yours,

Doaa


New message ×
To : Mariam@yahoo.com
From : Fatma@yahoo.com
Subject : Resources

Dear Mariam,

How are you ? I'm happy to write this email to you.

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

Can't wait to see you.

Yours,

Fatma.

Days 5,6 &7

15 Governorates Exams

١٥ اختبارًا من المحافظات المختلفة

تم تعديل الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية وتعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤

1 Cairo Governorate

East Nasr City Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The biggest animal on land is a ....
   a. bird b. mammal c. fish d. reptile
2. The African elephant is .... than the Asian elephant.
   a. faster b. slower c. bigger d. smaller
3. The blue whale lives in the ....
   a. river b. lake c. sea d. stream
4. The blue whale can be up to .... meters long.
   a. 20 b. 30 c. 40 d. 50

2 Listen and complete :

1. Fruits and vegetables have a lot of fiber, ... and minerals.
2. We need minerals and vitamins for healthy skin, ... bones and teeth.
3. Fish, cheese and eggs have .... that helps us grow.
4. We need .... for a healthy nervous system.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

float - soil - roots - water

Most plants grow in soil. However, some plants grow in water. Water lily grows in (1) .... and have a large stem that reaches down to the bottom of the lake. They have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which (2) .... on water. They have (3) .... that spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. Community is a mixture of people, places and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit. You can also have a community there. For me, I'm a part of the community at my sports club, too.

A : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. sport b. neighborhood c. community d. citizenship
2. Our community includes our family, ... and school.
   a. weather b. friends c. clothes d. games

B : Answer the following questions :

3. What is a community?

....

4. Can we have a community in the library?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa's eyes aren't very good now.		
2. Zeinab loved the picture of flower best at the shop.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Grandpa likes sewing .... patterns.
   a. science   b. geometric   c. English   d. art
2. Zeinab wanted to visit her ....
   a. grandpa   b. friends   c. teachers   d. uncle

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The camel is taller .... the horse.
   a. there   b. then   c. than   d. their
2. My family .... to visit my grandparents last Friday.
   a. go   b. goes   c. going   d. went
3. Salma walks .... She is tired.
   a. slow   b. slowly   c. quick   d. quickly
4. Ancient Egyptians .... papyrus for writing.
   a. uses   b. using   c. used   d. use

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. heart – blood – pump – Does – our – the ?

....

2. grow – tomatoes – and – Farmers – onions.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

The city you live in

Guiding elements :

live – people – densely or sparsely populated – services – club

....

....

....

2 Giza Governorate — Kerdasa Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What does Mum have to do today? - She has to ....
   a. tidy the lounge   b. go to the park
   c. play football   d. paint a picture
2. Where does Adam want to go? - To ....
   a. the school   b. the zoo   c. the park   d. the cinema
3. What can Adam do at the park? - He can ....
   a. eat his dinner   b. run and play
   c. read a book   d. paint a picture
4. What can Adam practice at the park? He can practice ....
   a. tennis   b. basketball   c. football   d. swimming

2 Listen and complete :

1. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
2. Fish are cold-blooded and they lay ....
3. Fish have .... and they use fins to move.
4. There are thousands of different .... of fish.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

mammals - zoo - animals - elephants

Ali : Where did you go yesterday?
Ahmed : I went to the (1) ....
Ali : What did you see there?
Ahmed : I saw the (2) ....
Ali : Which animals did you like?
Ahmed : I liked the (3) .... and the monkeys.
Ali : Did you spend a nice time there?
Ahmed : Yes, I did.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Mona is a very polite girl. She is <u>calm</u> and kind. She is in primary four. She goes to school every day. Her house is near her school, so she goes on foot. She likes Science and English. All her teachers love her because she is clever and smart. She goes back home at two o'clock.

A : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How does Mona go to school? She goes ....
   a. by car   b. by bus   c. on foot   d. by bike

2. The underlined word "**calm**" means ....
a. bad b. quiet c. sad d. angry

B : Answer the following questions :

3. What subjects does Mona like ?

....

4. Why do all the teachers love Mona ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False). T F

1. Grandpa was one of the tent makers. ☐ ☐
2. Zeinab travelled to her grandparents by bus. ☐ ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Zeinab was .... in the second week of her holiday.
a. happy b. sad c. bored d. excited
2. Zeinab and her grandfather visited the ....
a. shop b. school c. park d. club

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Let's .... to the park.
a. goes b. go c. went d. going
2. He always .... football at the club.
a. play b. plays c. playing d. played
3. The blue whale is .... than the whale shark.
a. biggest b. big c. small d. bigger
4. A spider has eight legs. It can move very ....
a. slow b. quickly c. quick d. good

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. chew – swallow – We – food – and.

....

2. can – What – hear – you ?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Mammals

Guiding elements :

mammals – hair – warm - blooded – feed - babies – live - land – bats

....

....

....

....

3 Alexandria Governorate El-Montazah Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egypt is a .... with a long history.
   a. village b. city c. town d. country
2. People lived near .... about 9000 years ago.
   a. the Nile b. the village c. the desert d. the ocean
3. Lower Egypt was in the ....
   a. north b. south c. east d. west
4. One Pharaoh, Mena .... these two parts.
   a. played b. drank c. joined d. helped

2 Listen and complete :

1. Some people cannot .... or hear.
2. People who have difficulty .... can learn sign language.
3. It is a complete language, like .... or Arabic.
4. There are different versions of it around the ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

north - south - like - High Dam

I'm Ahmed. I live in Aswan Governorate. It's in the (1) .... of Upper Egypt. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan (2) .... It's very hot in summer. Tourists (3) .... to visit Aswan in winter. I love Aswan very much.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Yesterday, I read an interesting book. It was about how to keep our bodies healthy. Water is very important to our bodies. We should drink plenty of water every day. Exercise keeps you fit and healthy. Eat fresh fruit and vegetables that have a lot of fiber and vitamins. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. Don't eat too many sweets. It's unhealthy. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food to be healthy.

A : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. how to play football b. how to water plants
   c. how to keep our bodies healthy d. unhealthy food
2. .... keeps you fit and healthy.
   a. Exercise b. Sweets c. Bad diet d. Fiber

B : **Answer the following questions :**

3. Why do we need vitamins ?

....

4. Are too many sweets good for us ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya street.	☐	☐
2. Doha is great at math and working out problems.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Grandpa .... and cut all the pieces by hand.
   a. visited   b. measured   c. put   d. had
2. Zeinab had .... friends.
   a. tall   b. bad   c. naughty   d. clever

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We .... a nice house.
   a. has   b. have   c. does   d. do
2. The blue whale is the .... animal in the world.
   a. biggest   b. bigger   c. big   d. small
3. .... books are very expensive.
   a. They   b. These   c. That   d. This
4. I .... my grandpa last week.
   a. visit   b. visits   c. visiting   d. visited

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. was – Egypt – Where – Lower ?

....

2. like – doesn't – music – Heba.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Birds

Guiding elements :

mammals – hair – warm - blooded – feed - babies – live - land – bats

....

....

....

....

4 Qalyoubia Governorate Qanater Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Salwa went to the .... yesterday.
   a. cinema b. market c. zoo d. museum
2. The elephant is not .... than the monkey.
   a. bigger b. smaller c. fatter d. happier
3. The .... is taller than the lion.
   a. monkey b. giraffe c. mouse d. elephant
4. Salwa went back home at .... o'clock.
   a. nine b. ten c. eleven d. eight

2 Listen and complete :

1. Plants help the .... have clean air.
2. Plants usually grow in ...., but some plants grow in water.
3. The .... grows from the roots.
4. The .... grow on the stem.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

backbone – types – animals – skin

Omar : What are you doing today?
Ali : I'm reading a book about (1) ....
Omar : What (2) .... of animals are there?
Ali : There are vertebrates and invertebrates.
Omar : What do vertebrates have?
Ali : They have a (3) ....
Omar : Can I borrow your book?
Ali : Of course.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are renewable resources because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat.

A : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text ....
   a. potatoes b. natural resources c. animals d. planets

2. Wood, wool and plastic are all ....
a. shapes b. areas c. materials d. colors

B : **Answer the following questions :**

3. Why are the potatoes renewable resources ?

....

4. What are natural resources ?

....

5 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

	T	F
1. Zeinab wants to visit her grandpa.		
2. Grandpa wanted to be a policeman.		

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

3. Grandpa's .... are not very good now.
a. ears b. eyes c. hands d. legs

4. Zeinab has clever ....
a. brothers b. animals c. toys d. friends

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We use our .... system when we eat.
a. digestive b. respiratory c. muscles d. bones

2. The ostrich is the .... bird.
a. biggest b. bigger c. big d. small

3. This is my book. It's ....
a. mine b. yours c. hers d. ours

4. Hesham .... go to school on Friday.
a. doesn't b. don't c. isn't d. aren't

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. dancing – lovely – Nubian – is.

....

2. governorates – There – 27 – Egypt – are – in.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Our body organs

Guiding elements :

digestive system – respiratory system – bones – healthy – sport – stomach – esophagus

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Marwa does lots of ....
   a. shopping b. exercise c. homework d. food
2. Marwa plays ....
   a. video games b. volleyball c. tennis d. sports
3. Marwa sleeps for .... hours every night.
   a. 5 b. 10 c. 8 d. 7
4. Magdy is ....
   a. healthy b. unhealthy c. fit d. strong

2 Listen and complete :

1. The road is next to the ....
2. It is usually hot, sunny and ....
3. Most of the time, he saw .... and sunshine.
4. He sees lots of .... and trucks.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

windy – wash – park – swimming

Ahmed : What are we going to do, Dad ?
Father : We have to (1) .... the car. Then you can choose what you want to do.
Ahmed : Let's go swimming.
Father : But it's (2) .... today.
Ahmed : Well! I want to practice football.
Father : Let's go to the (3) ....
Ahmed : Good idea.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Uncle Fahmy is a dentist in a big hospital. He likes his work very much because he helps people look after their teeth. He always reads books about medicine. He is married to aunt Mona who is a teacher. Her hobbies are reading books and taking photos. They have three children Amr, Yassin and Manal. They are a happy family.

A : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Uncle Fahmy and his wife have .... sons.
   a. three b. two c. four d. five

2. Uncle Fahmy reads books about ....
a. Arabic b. English c. medicine d. children

B : Answer the following questions :
3. Where does aunt Mona work ?
....
4. What are aunt Mona's hobbies ?
....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. It was the third week of the summer holiday.		
2. Zeinab went to grandpa by train.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :
1. Zeinab was ....
a. amazed b. excited c. bored d. happy
2. The big picture with all the flowers took grandpa four ....
a. days b. months c. weeks d. years

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Cars are .... than bikes.
a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. the fastest
2. We smiled .... when we won the cup.
a. sad b. happy c. happily d. sadly
3. Amir .... football every Friday.
a. plays b. play c. playing d. played
4. These are our pens. They are ....
a. ours b. her c. their d. your

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. have – feathers – All – and – wings – birds.
....
2. you – doing – What – today – are ?
....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Five senses

Guiding elements :
senses – see – eye – smell – touch – hear – taste – ear – nose
....
....
....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Our .... is made up of all the bones.
   a. stomach b. lungs c. skeleton d. heart
2. Bones .... our organs.
   a. destroy b. protect c. provide d. change
3. .... are attached to our bones.
   a. Teeth b. Muscles c. Eyes d. lips
4. Muscles .... and turn our bones to make us move.
   a. lift b. change c. make d. pump

2 Listen and complete :

1. Hany is in primary ....
2. The children are at the .... today.
3. Lots of .... from different schools are competing.
4. There are competitions in ...., jumping and throwing.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

vitamins – diet – water – eat

Eating the right food is very important for health. We need a range of different kinds of food with lots of (1) .... and minerals. We shouldn't (2) .... too much sugar or fat. Fruit and vegetables are healthy choices. It's important to drink lots of (3) .... , too, especially on hot days.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits. It's important to drink lots of water, especially in hot days.

A : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You .... sit still for a long time.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. would d. have
2. Try not to develop .... habits.
   a. funny b. healthy c. unhealthy d. good

B : Answer the following questions :

3. What should you do on hot days ?

....

4. What do people sometimes eat when they are watching TV ?

5 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).** T F

1. Zeinab wanted to visit her uncle.
2. Grandpa was one of the best farmers.

B. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Zeinab could .... and help her grandpa.
   a. play b. sew c. run d. eat
2. Grandpa likes sewing .... flowers and geometric patterns.
   a. lotus b. rose c. lily d. white

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My sister always talks to me ....
   a. loud b. quiet c. slow d. quietly
2. Lina and Remas .... play tennis on Fridays.
   a. didn't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. don't
3. Cairo is the .... city in Egypt.
   a. biggest b. bigger c. bigger than d. big
4. He .... busy now but he can help you.
   a. are b. were c. was d. is

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. heart – blood – pump – Does – our – the ?

....

2. their – feed – babies – milk – Mammals – with.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Respiratory System

Guiding elements :

breathe – nose – lungs – oxygen – heart – pump – blood – around our body

....

....

....

....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The respiratory system is used for ....
   a. eating b. playing c. breathing d. drinking
2. The .... is used to breathe in the air.
   a. nose b. hand c. eye d. ear
3. In the ...., the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood.
   a. ears b. lungs c. eyes d. legs
4. The heart pumps the .... around our body.
   a. air b. food c. water d. blood

2 Listen and complete :

1. Mammals are ....
2. They feed their babies with ....
3. Most mammals give birth to their ....
4. They don't lay ....

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

Nile – two – country – city

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the (1) .... about nine thousand years ago. At first, there were (2) .... separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north and Upper Egypt was in the south. In about 3200 BCE, Mena joined the two parts to unite the (3) .... of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile, so it became very powerful.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

When Ali wanted to write an article about being healthy for the school website. He asked his teacher to help him. Ali wrote about the healthy habits. It is good to drink two liters of water a day because water helps our body get rid of toxins. We should eat some fruit and vegetables every day because they are full of vitamins. We should eat protein to help us grow. Carbohydrates such as bread and pasta give us energy. It was a wonderful article and Ali thanked his teacher for his help.

A : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ali wrote a/an .... article for the school website.
   a. wonderful b. bad c. boring d. unhealthy
2. Fruit and vegetables are full of ....
   a. carbohydrates b. vitamins c. toxins d. habits

B : Answer the following questions :

3. What did Ali write about ?

....

4. How many liters of water should we drink a day ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa was a tent maker.		
2. Khayameya School is traveling all winter.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Zeinab's friends like to learn .... things.
   a. quick b. slow c. bad d. new
2. Zeinab wished she could .... and help her grandpa.
   a. eat b. sew c. play d. cook

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... lunch at 3 o'clock every day.
   a. have b. has c. having d. does
2. He can swim ....
   a. good b. bad c. well d. slow
3. The bee is .... than the ant.
   a. big b. biggest c. bigger d. the big
4. We .... in the park yesterday.
   a. play b. played c. plays d. playing

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. finished – Engineers – High – Dam – the – in 1970.

....

2. with – can – eyes – We – our – see.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Going to the park

Guiding elements :

Friday – no school – family – go – park – play – friends – enjoy – happy

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We have many .... in our bodies.
   a. books b. systems c. scales d. feathers
2. We use our digestive system when we .... and drink.
   a. draw b. eat c. sing d. see
3. We .... and swallow food.
   a. ride b. play c. listen d. chew
4. When we swallow food, it goes to our ....
   a. stomach b. nose c. hear d. brain

2 Listen and complete :

1. People who are deaf or can't .... well can learn sign language.
2. In sign language, we use our .... , faces and bodies to communicate.
3. Sign Language .... Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.
4. We .... sight instead of hearing to understand what people are saying.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

bird – sea – swim – cold-blooded

Invertebrates don't have backbones. They are (1) .... They live in the (2) .... and some live on land. Some have soft bodies and some have hard shells. Some invertebrates can (3) .... and some can walk. Arachnids are not insects. They have eight legs.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet ? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 70% water and it needs water to work well. We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs and meat.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Our brain is about .... water.
   a. 50% b. 60% c. 70% d. 80%
2. Foods with protein include ....
   a. meat b. milk c. apples d. oil

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does a good diet include ?

....

4. Why should we eat fresh fruit and vegetables ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False). T F

1. Coral reefs are homes for many other animals. ☐ ☐
2. The Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in the world. ☐ ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Coral reefs are made of thousands of .... invertebrates.
   a. big b. tall c. fat d. tiny
2. Coral polyps can live in all the .... around the world.
   a. houses b. mountains c. oceans d. forests

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This is our school. It's ....
   a. yours b. ours c. theirs d. his
2. Not everyone in Ancient Egypt .... to read and write.
   a. learned b. learn c. learning d. learns
3. A spider has 8 legs. It can move very ....
   a. quick b. slow c. quickly d. soft
4. A blue whale is bigger .... a whale shark.
   a. than b. then c. that d. this

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. animals – are – a – backbone – Vertebrates – with.

....

2. governorates – are – in – 27 – There – Egypt.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Our senses

Guiding elements :

five – eyes – see – nose – smell – feel – skin

....

....

....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Physical activity is .... for your body.
   a. bad b. good c. silly d. ugly
2. Physical activity makes our .... strong.
   a. muscles b. ears c. noses d. lungs
3. We get .... from food.
   a. tombs b. groceries c. kilos d. calories
4. .... activities are good for our brain.
   a. Dental b. Canal c. Mental d. Genial

2 Listen and complete :

1. A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same ....
2. A community is more than your .... , your family, or your neighborhood.
3. It is a .... of people, places, activities, and ideas.
4. My community .... my family, my friends, and my school.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

team – food – in – took

Ahmed Abdel Fattah plays sitting volleyball. He (1).................. part in the Rio Paralympics, where the (2).................. won bronze. He has played with his team (3).................. Africa and Brazil and they have won many international competitions in Egypt.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

I'm Hana. My sister's birthday is tomorrow. I don't have money so I think it is better to make her a special present. My sister likes toys, but she broke her doll last week. The doll is in her room, so I took the doll and started to fix it. I made a new pink dress to the doll as my sister likes pink color. I used some cotton to make the doll's hair. The doll looks beautiful. My sister is happy now. She has a beautiful doll.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My sister likes ....
   a. skulls b. dolls c. sweets d. skirts
2. Hana's sister is .... with her birthday present.
   a. ill b. upset c. sad d. happy

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. When is Hana's sister's birthday?

....

4. What did Hana fix for her sister?

....

5 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).**

	T	F
1. Zeinab was bored.		
2. Zeinab went to her grandparents by bus.		

B. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. It was the second week of the .... holiday.
   a. summer b. winter c. fall d. spring
2. Grandpa was one of the best .... in Khayameya Street.
   a. footballers b. teachers c. artisans d. bakers

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adam .... to the park every week.
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going
2. We usually .... football after school.
   a. played b. plays c. playing d. play
3. He .... the army yesterday.
   a. joined b. joins c. join d. joining
4. Prince Charles .... the King of Britain last September.
   a. becomes b. become c. became d. to become

7 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. folk music – Egypt – lots – has – traditional – of.

....

2. our nose – through – breathe – in – We – air.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

A visit to the zoo

Guiding elements:

zoo – last – week – family – car – morning – saw – animals – birds – played – lunch – came back

....

....

....

....

10 Damietta Governorate New Damietta Educational Directorate

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The human body is made up of a number of .... systems.
   a. different b. easy c. slow d. nervous
2. Each system is made up of ....
   a. organs b. dots c. bodies d. sounds
3. The respiratory system helps us to ....
   a. taste b. breathe c. eat d. digest
4. The stomach is a part of the .... system.
   a. respiratory b. circulatory c. digestive d. productive

2 Listen and complete :

1. The giraffe is the .... of all animals.
2. The giraffe's eyes are .... and soft.
3. The .... is the home of the giraffe.
4. The giraffe lives a simple .... there.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

together – shares – positive – problem

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. The best teamwork is that where each person (1) .... ideas and skills. When you're working in a team, make sure to listen to others' ideas. You should be a (2) .... solver when there is a problem. Remember to complete your part of the project. Be (3) .... and help the other team members to be more successful.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Computers are very important in the world of modern technology. People can use them in many ways. They can book tickets, buy goods and sell things. Teachers use them to make exams and prepare notes and students can find information and write reports. At homes, computers can answer telephones and e-mails. By using computers, people can save time. Although computers have many advantages, they have also some disadvantages. Young children use computers to play games for long hours. Sitting still isn't good for their health. It can **destroy** their eyes and their bones.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea in the text is about ....
   a. reports b. computers c. teachers d. homes
2. The underlined word "**destroy**" in the text means ....
   a. hurt b. tell c. make d. answer

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. How can teachers use computers at school ?

....

4. Get one disadvantage of using computers.

....

5 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).** T F

1. Coral polyps have clear bodies and their skeletons are white. ☐ ☐
2. Zeinab traveled to her grandparent's house by bus. ☐ ☐

B. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The water of the Red Sea is .... than other seas.
   a. cooler b. warmer c. easier d. smaller
2. The Khayameya picture of flowers is made of thousands of small ....
   a. eyes b. ideas c. stitches d. problems

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Snails move very ....
   a. slow b. slowly c. slower d. slowest
2. People .... to live near the Nile 7000 BCE.
   a. started b. start c. are starting d. were starting
3. I do my homework .... I'm ready for the next lesson.
   a. even though b. after
   c. while d. so that
4. The children made .... mom a cup of mint tea.
   a. her b. their c. his d. them

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. grow – use – to – plants – We – water.

....

2. ever – on – traveled – you – a train – Have ?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

A place you would like to visit

Guiding elements :

bus – food – photos – family – interesting – spend – happy time

....

....

....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Egypt has a very long ....
   a. geography b. history c. subject d. problem
2. People started to live near the .... 9,000 years ago.
   a. Red sea b. tower c. pyramids d. Nile
3. At first, Egypt had .... separate areas.
   a. two b. three c. ten d. four
4. Upper Egypt was in the ....
   a. east b. south c. north d. west

2 Listen and complete :

1. .... energy can be replaced when they run out.
2. We can get electricity from .... panels.
3. The fossil fuels are like .... , natural gas and petroleum.
4. The non-renewable energy will .... out.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

school – live – Where – What

Malak : Hi Sara ! Where do you live ?
Sara : I live in a nice community.
Malak : (1) .... is a community ?
Sara : It's a group of people that (2) .... and work together.
Malak : What does your community include ?
Sara : My family, my friends and my (3) ....
Malak : Do you like your community ?
Sara : Yes, I do.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Eating the right food is very important for our health. We need a range of different kinds of food with lots of vitamins and minerals. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fats. Fruits and vegetables are healthy choices. It's very important to drink lots of water, too. Especially in hot days. We shouldn't drink fizzy drinks like cola. Doing exercises is very important to have a fit healthy body.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a. football b. parks c. food d. animals
2. You should eat food with ....
   a. sugar b. vitamins c. fats d. salt

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the right food that you should eat?

....

4. What should we do in hot days?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False). T F

1. Grandpa can't hear well. ☐ ☐
2. Grandpa is a good artisan. ☐ ☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They make the patterns of Khayameya from .... layers of cotton.
   a. two b. four c. three d. six
2. Grandpa wanted to be an engineer or a .... when he was young.
   a. vet b. teacher c. doctor d. fireman

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is Ali's sister. I met her before.
   a. These b. That c. Those d. The
2. She .... her hair every week.
   a. washes b. washing c. wash d. washed
3. This bag is .... My father bought it for me.
   a. me b. my c. mine d. I
4. Did you .... to the park, yesterday?
   a. went b. gone c. go d. going

7 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. was – in – Egypt – Music – important – ancient.

....

2. doing – What –, now – are – you?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

What do you want to be in the future?

Guiding elements:

like – exciting job – help – community

....

....

....

....

12 Minia Governorate

Minia Educational Directorate

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Crocodiles weigh about .... thousand kilos.
   a. one b. eight c. half d. two
2. They hunt animals such as ....
   a. cows b. zebras c. lions d. octopus
3. Birds walk inside the crocodiles' ....
   a. eye b. leg c. mouth d. arm
4. Crocodiles let the birds do this to keep their teeth ....
   a. dirty b. clean c. bad d. unclean

2 Listen and complete :

1. The family loves .... programs.
2. Ali is in grade ....
3. They go to .... by bus.
4. They are a .... family.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

helps – do – water – plants

People need plants to live. Plants give us food, clothing and oxygen. Trees, flowers and grass are all (1) .... Green plants need sun and (2) .... to grow. A plant has six parts. Seeds grow and become new plants. The stem (3) .... the plant to stand. Leaves use the sun to make food for the plant.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

An ant went to the river to drink. It fell into the water and sank. A bird was sitting on its nest in the tree. The bird saw the ant and flew down with a leaf in its mouth. It picked up the ant on the leaf and put it on the ground. The next day a bird catcher came with nets. He tried to catch the bird. The ant saw him and bit him hard on his foot. The bird catcher shouted with pain and ran away.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The bird flew down with a .... in its mouth.
   a. leaf b. stick c. rock d. tree
2. The bird catcher .... with pain and ran away.
   a. sank b. picked c. tried d. shouted

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did the ant go to the river ?

....

4. Where was the bird sitting ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False). T F

1. Grandpa wanted to be an engineer or a teacher.
2. Zeinab's friends are not clever.

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Khayameya School is traveling all ....
   a. winter b. summer c. fall d. spring
2. Zeinab and her mom went to her grandparents by ....
   a. train b. car c. plane d. bus

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Monkeys can climb trees ....
   a. easy b. easier c. easily d. easiest
2. This is my bike. It's ....
   a. hers b. mine c. yours d. his
3. There .... two hemispheres in our brain.
   a. are b. is c. was d. were
4. A pharaoh is a .... who ruled in Ancient Egypt.
   a. child b. family c. body d. person

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. school – am – polite – I – at – always.

....

2. the biggest – is – the world – What – animal – in ?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Advantages and disadvantages of having a pet

Guiding elements :

dog – cat – bird – home – nice – play – food – money – care

....

....

....

....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
   a. lungs b. fins c. stems d. gills
2. Fish have .... on their bodies.
   a. fur b. scales c. feather d. hair
3. Fish have .... to move.
   a. gills b. fins c. tails d. scales
4. Freshwater and salt water are .... of fish.
   a. holes b. habits c. habitats d. hobbies

2 Listen and complete :

1. The biggest animal on .... is a mammal.
2. The biggest animal in the world is the .... whale.
3. The whale shark is the biggest .... in the world.
4. The whale shark is about .... meters long.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

heart – stomach – liquid – swallow

Tom : Hi, Sam how are you ?
Sam : Fine. I'm reading a book about digestive system.
Tom : What do you know about digestive system ?
Sam : When we eat, we chew and (1) .... our food.
Tom : What else ?
Sam : Then it goes to our (2) ....
Tom : What is in the stomach ?
Sam : It has a special (1) .... that changes food into energy and nutrients.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Birds are warm blooded, but they don't have hair or fur. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bones. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a. reptiles b. birds c. mammals d. fish
2. Birds have ....
   a. hair b. fur c. scales d. feathers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do birds eat ?

....

4. Are their beaks made of bones ?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Zeinab wanted to visit her uncle.	☐	☐
2. Zeinab and her grandfather visited the shop.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Zeinab had .... friends.
   a. tall b. bad c. clever d. short
2. Grandpa likes his ....
   a. house b. job c. animals d. street

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ostriches are .... than horses.
   a. fast b. the fastest c. faster d. fastest
2. It's my community. It's ....
   a. his b. her c. hers d. mine
3. The octopus can swim very ....
   a. quick b. slow c. quickly d. good
4. Our .... pumps blood around our body.
   a. heart b. muscle c. stomach d. bones

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. slowly – move – Snails – very.

....

2. have – Invertebrates – a backbone – don't.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Healthy food

Guiding elements :

good – food – sports – fruit – water

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Ahmed gets up at .... o'clock.
   a. eight b. seven c. six d. five
2. Ahmed has .... for breakfast.
   a. meat b. beans c. chicken d. rice
3. Ahmed goes to school by ....
   a. bus b. train c. plane d. car
4. Ahmed likes to play .... with his friends.
   a. tennis b. basketball c. games d. football

2 Listen and complete :

1. Plants are usually .... for animals and humans.
2. Farmers .... the plants to grow.
3. Plants need .... to make food.
4. A lot of animals .... plants.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

fly – food – fur – feathers

I know about birds. Birds don't have hair or (1) .... All birds have (2) .... on the body and they have wings. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes. Most birds can (3) .... , but some can't.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

Hana is ten years old. She is in <u>class</u> four. Hana's father is a doctor. Her mother is a teacher of English. Hana has got two brothers and one sister. Hana's favorite sport is playing tennis. She plays tennis in the club. Hana goes to the club on Friday with her friends. Hana likes tennis very much. She wants to be a tennis player when she grows up. She won two medals for playing tennis. Hana wants to take part in international competitions one day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Hana's father is a ....
   a. teacher b. doctor c. player d. farmer
2. The underlined word " **class**" can be replaced by the word ....
   a. tennis b. grade c. food d. color

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What is Hana's favorite sport ?

....

4. Can Hana play tennis well ?

....

5 The Reader

A. **Read and write T (True) or F (False).** T F

1. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya. ☐ ☐
2. Zeinab doesn't like to learn sewing. ☐ ☐

B. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Zeinab's friends are very ....
   a. tall b. clever c. short d. bad
2. Grandpa was one of the .... makers.
   a. dress b. shoe c. tent d. book

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Adam .... to the park every week.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. to go
2. The blue whale is .... than a whale shark.
   a. bigger b. biggest c. big d. the biggest
3. A spider can move very ....
   a. quick b. quicker c. quickly d. slow
4. They .... very tired today.
   a. is b. am c. be d. are

7 Order the words to make correct sentences :

1. body – pumps – our – blood – The heart – around.

....

2. well – swim – octopus – The – can – very.

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements :

Our Senses

Guiding elements :

five – see – hear – smell – taste – touch

....
....
....
....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt has a very .... history.
   a. short b. boring c. long d. small
2. People started to live near the .... about 9,000 years ago.
   a. Nile b. Pyramids c. Tower d. Red Sea
3. At first, Egypt had .... separate areas.
   a. three b. ten c. two d. four
4. Upper Egypt was in the ....
   a. north b. south c. east d. west

2 Listen and complete:

1. People who are .... or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language.
2. Sign language is .... in each country.
3. We use our ...., faces and bodies to communicate.
4. People use .... instead of hearing to understand.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

digestive – stomach – food – breathe

Amr : Hello, Rami, What's the system that we use when we eat and drink?
Rami : We use our (1) .... system.
Amr : Where does food go after we swallow it?
Rami : It goes to our (2) ....
Amr : Is there a special liquid in the stomach?
Rami : Yes, in the stomach, a special liquid changes the (3) .... into energy that we need.
Amr : Thanks for the information.
Rami : You are welcome.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have hair or fur. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bones. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eats seeds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Birds don't have ....
   a. wings b. feathers c. fur d. beaks
2. Birds lay eggs which are ....
   a. hot b. hard c. soft d. warm

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Can all birds fly?

....

4. Why are birds' beaks different?

....

5 The Reader

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa was one of the tent makers.		
2. Zeinab doesn't like sewing.		

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3. They make patterns with three layers of ....
   a. cotton b. fiber c. cloth d. leather
4. Zeinab and her mother traveled by ....
   a. plane b. bus c. train d. car

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adam .... his grandparents every week.
   a. visit b. visited c. visits d. visiting
2. Horses are .... than camels.
   a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. as fast
3. It's my pen. It's ....
   a. mine b. his c. hers d. ours
4. He .... help his father yesterday.
   a. doesn't b. isn't c. didn't d. wasn't

7 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. mammals – Bats – the only – fly – are – that.

....

2. live – in – people – Egypt – How – many?

....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

A visit to one of governorates of Egypt

Guiding elements:

1. What is the governorate?
2. Where is it?
3. How can you go there?
4. What can you do there?
5. What is it famous for?

....

....

....

....



Listening Texts | نصوص الاستماع

السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer

A. We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television, it is now mechanical energy.

B. I live in Egypt. I'm Egyptian. Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.

السؤال الثانى في الورقة الامتحانية

2 Listen and complete

A. Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

B. The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sport, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

1 Cairo Governorate

East Nasr City Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

In the natural world, there are some enormous animals, and some tiny ones! The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.
The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

2. Listen and complete.

We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat.
We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter.

2 Giza Governorate

Kerdasa Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name is Adam. It is Saturday, so there's no school. My mum has to tidy the lounge. I want to go to the park. My

sister Nada, wants to go to the cinema. I want to go to the park to run and play. I want to practice football. I like football very much.

2. Listen and complete.

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe in air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

3 Alexandria Governorate

El-Montazah Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it.

2. Listen and complete.

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language. It is a complete language, like English, Arabic or Spanish, and there are different versions of it around the world. Sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate

Qanater Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Salwa went to the zoo yesterday. There were many animals at the zoo. The elephant is big. The elephant is not smaller than the monkey. The giraffe is taller than the lion. Salwa fed the animals. She went back home at nine o'clock.

• Listen and complete.

Plants are very important. They help the environment have clean air. Plants usually grow in soil, but some plants grow in water. The roots grow under the soil. The stem grows from the roots. The leaves grow on the stem.

5 Sharkya Governorate

Kafr saqr Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name is Dina. I have one sister and one brother. My sister Marwa does lots of exercise every day. She is healthy. She eats healthy food. She plays volleyball. She sleeps for 8 hours every night. My brother Magdy is unhealthy. He eats snacks and drinks soda. He sleeps for five hours every night.

• Listen and complete.

Seleem walks to school every day. The road is next to the desert. It is usually hot, sunny and dusty on the road. Last year, there was nothing in the desert. Sometimes Seleem saw a lizard, but most of the time, he just saw rocks and sunshine. Now things are different. He sees lots of workers and trucks in the desert.

6 Menofia Governorate

Shebin El Koum Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. Bones make us strong and protect our organs. Muscles are attached to the bones. They lift and turn bones to make us move.

- **Listen and complete.**

My name is Hany. I'm in primary four. I go to school every day. Today is special. The children are at the school today. There're many athletes. Lots of athletes from different schools are competing. My friend Hossam can jump really high. There are competitions in running, jumping and throwing.

7 Gharbia Governorate

Samanoud Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The respiratory system is used for breathing. We use our nose to breathe in the air. The air we breathe in goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. The heart pumps the blood around our body.

- **Listen and complete.**

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

8 Dakahlia Governorate

Mit Ghamr Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We have many systems in our bodies. We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food through our mouth. When we swallow food, it goes to our stomach. A special liquid in the stomach changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need.

- **Listen and complete.**

People who are deaf or can't hear well can learn sign language. It's a complete language like Arabic, English or Spanish. In sign language, we use our hands, faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language in Egypt is different from sign language in the USA. We use sight instead of hearing to understand what people are saying.

9 Beheira Governorate

Kom Hamada Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We have to do exercises to be healthy. Physical activity is good for your body. Physical activity makes our muscles strong. We get calories from food. Activities for our brain is also important. Mental activities are good for our brain.

- **Listen and complete.**

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, your family, or your neighborhood. It is a mixture of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. There are probably important places in your city or village that you often visit.

10 Damietta Governorate
New Damietta Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Our body has many systems that work at the same time. The human body is made up of a number of different systems. Each system is made up of organs.
The respiratory system helps us to breathe. We use our nose, lungs and heart in the respiratory system. The stomach is a part of the digestive system.

• Listen and complete.

I read a book about animals around the world. I like giraffes. The giraffe is the tallest of all animals. The giraffe's eyes are wide and soft. It eats grass. The forest is the home of the giraffe. The giraffe lives a simple life there. I hope to play with the baby giraffes one day.

11 Ismailia Governorate
Ismailia Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

• Listen and complete.

There are two types of energy, renewable and non-renewable. Renewable energy can be replaced when they run out. We can get electricity from nature. We can get electricity from solar panels. Fossil fuels are non-renewable. The fossil fuels are like coal, natural gas and petroleum. The non-renewable energy will run out.

12 Minia Governorate
Minia Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Reptiles are cold-blooded. Most reptiles have four legs. Crocodiles are reptiles. They weigh about half thousand kilos. They hunt animals such as zebras to eat. Crocodiles have food stuck in their mouth. Birds walk inside the crocodiles' mouth. Crocodiles let the birds do this to keep their teeth clean.

• Listen and complete.

I have a big family. I live with my parents, two brothers and one sister. My family loves television programs. My brother Ali is in grade four. He goes to school with his friends. They go to school by bus. I like to play football with my brother. We are a happy family.

13 Assiut Governorate
El-Qussia Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats - saltwater, freshwater and wetlands.

- **Listen and complete.**

The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the blue whale. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth! The whale shark is the biggest fish in the world. It's smaller than the blue whale, at about 12 meters long.

14 Sohag Governorate
Juhina Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Ahmed is in grade five. He gets up at six o'clock. He has beans for breakfast. He likes to be healthy so he does exercises every day. Ahmed goes to school by bus. The school is far from the house. He meets his friends. He likes to play football with his friends.

- **Listen and complete.**

Plants are living things. Plants are usually food for animals and humans. Farmers water the plants to grow. Plants need sunshine to make food. They also need fertile soil and water. Some animals eat meat, but a lot of animals eat plants.

15 Luxor Governorate
Isna Educational Directorate

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

- **Listen and complete.**

People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language. It is different in each country. It is a complete language like English, Arabic and Spanish. We use our hands, faces and bodies to communicate. People use mouth instead of hearing to understand.

2023

Part 3

(10) Sample Tests

عشرة اختبارات على المنهج بالكامل
مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات



Sample Test 1

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can .... energy from one kind to another.
   a. destroy b. change c. collect d. plant
2. We use .... to collect sunlight.
   a. boards b. sets c. solar panels d. time machines
3. When we use electrical energy for a television, it's now .... energy.
   a. electronic b. mechanical c. chemical d. nuclear
4. We can't .... energy.
   a. use b. change c. have d. destroy

2 Listen and complete :

(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. There are many .... of transportation.
2. You can go by .... if there are roads available.
3. You can travel by water if you live on an ....
4. Transportation allows us to .... from one place to another.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

(البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

nutrients - esophagus - lungs - digestive

The food you eat takes an incredible journey through your body. We use our (1) .... system when we eat and drink. The main organs that make up the digestive system are the mouth, (2) .... , stomach, small intestine and large intestine. Digestion is important because your body needs (3) .... from the food you eat and the liquids you drink in order to stay healthy and work properly.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Using their wings, most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bones. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food; some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. birds   b. mammals   c. reptiles   d. fish
2. Birds lay eggs which are ....
   a. hot   b. hard   c. soft   d. warm

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Can all birds fly ?
   ....
4. Why are birds' beaks different ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.		
2. Zeinab doesn't want to visit her grandparents.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(أسنا ٢٠٢٢)

1. Grandpa likes sewing Khayameya design with ....
   a. clothes   b. lotus flowers   c. socks   d. grass
2. .... wanted to be an engineer in the past.
   a. Grandpa   b. Zeinab   c. Rasha   d. Lobna

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Some crabs can move .... in water than on land. (الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. fastest b. fast c. faster d. the fastest
2. This is my cousins' house. It's .... (كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)
   a. ours b. hers c. theirs d. mine
3. Have you ever .... on a plane ? (القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. being b. been c. be d. to be
4. Omar always .... his hand before eating. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. washes b. washing c. washed d. wash

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

1. are – Some – driving – workers – trucks.

   ....

2. you – do – Where – live ?

   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)

"Our respiratory system"

Guiding elements :

breathe – lungs – oxygen – heart – pass

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 2

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Egypt has a very .... history.
   a. short   b. boring   c. long   d. small
2. People started to live near the .... about 9,000 years ago.
   a. Nile   b. Tower   c. Pyramids   d. Red Sea
3. Upper Egypt was in the ....
   a. south   b. north   c. east   d. west
4. At first, Egypt had .... separate areas.
   a. three   b. ten   c. two   d. four

2 Listen and complete :

(البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

1. .... resources can be replaced when they run out.
2. .... are renewable resources because we can grow more.
3. Plastic is a .... resource.
4. Farmers can .... more animals for you to eat.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

fun - have - go - hard

Younis : Good morning, Amr. Have you ever been on a train ?
Amr : Good morning, Younis. Yes , I (1) ....
Younis : Where did you (2) .... ?
Amr : I went to Luxor with my friends.
Younis : Was it (3) .... ?
Amr : Yes, it was fun.
Younis : What was the train like ?
Amr : It was very big.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come onto land to lay their eggs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The passage is talking about ....
   a. rivers   b. turtles   c. reptiles   d. scales
2. The word "keep" in the passage means ....
   a. spend   b. stay   c. come   d. lay

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Can we find turtles' eggs on the land ?

   ....

4. Why do reptiles have to spend time in the sun ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Grandpa's favorite design is lotus flowers.		
2. Zeinab doesn't like sewing.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

1. Grandpa liked sewing lotus flowers and geometric ....
   a. problems   b. layers   c. patterns   d. stitches
2. Grandpa's .... taught him to sew.
   a. father   b. mother   c.brother   d. sister

Part 3

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We .... to eat a good diet to stay healthy. (قنا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. needs   b. needing   c. need   d. needed
2. How .... types of animals lay eggs ? (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. much   b. often   c. long   d. many
3. Hatem .... at home yesterday. He traveled to Luxor last week. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)
   a. weren't   b. wasn't   c. isn't   d. haven't
4. I washed the dishes .... mum was sweeping the floor. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. while   b. although   c. for   d. where

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)

1. a – big – shark – How – is – whale ?

   ....

2. folk – lots of – traditional – Egypt – music – has.

   ....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)

To your friend Tamer about amphibians. Your name is Tarek and your email address is tarek@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is tamer@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

live – land – water – survive – reptiles

To :

From :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 3

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... lives in Alexandria.
   a. Khalaf b. Kareem c. Khalid d. Khalil
2. Alexandria is the .... largest city in Egypt.
   a. first b. second c. third d. fourth
3. .... is in Alexandria.
   a. The Tower b. Montaza Palace
   c. Lake Naser d. The Red Pyramid
4. How many people live in Alexandria ? ....
   a. 5,000 b. 50,000 c. 5,000,000 d. 500,000

2 Listen and complete :

(سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

1. The Paralympic Games is an international ....
2. The Paralympic Games takes place every .... years.
3. It is held in a .... country each time.
4. Egypt has many .... who take part in these competitions.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

(كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)

tongue - working - skin - eyes

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our (1) .... to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our (2) .... , and we can feel with our skin. Think about where you are now. What can you see ? What can you hear ? Our senses are (3) .... all the time and they take in a lot of information.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :
(الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

The Egyptian civilization is very famous. Egypt has a long history. People started to live near the Nile. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. One pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile as far as boats could sail on it, so it became very powerful.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about the ....
   a. natural resources b. history of Egypt
   c. invertebrates d. Egyptian crafts
2. The underlined word "started" means ....
   a. bought b. made c. began d. finished

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Who joined the two parts in Egypt ?
   ....
4. How can people travel through the Nile ?
   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :
(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab and her mother went to grandparents by bus.		
2. All people wanted to learn about Khayameya.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
(القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)

1. .... can help Grandpa show them all how to sew.
   a. Lobna b. Doha c. Engy d. Rasha
2. Zeinab and her grandfather visited the ....
   a. museum b. school c. park d. shop

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Insects live in the rainforests because they can find food ....
(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
a. easy b. easier c. easily d. easiest

2. This is .... new math teacher, Mr Hany. (مطروح ٢٠٢٢)
a. my b. mine c. me d. yours

3. The birds' beaks have different shapes .... they eat different food.
(الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)
a. because b. but c. however d. on one hand

4. Did he .... his lost key yesterday ? (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)
a. found b. finding c. find d. finds

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (اسيوط ٢٠٢٢)

1. Games – is – The Paralympic – an – competition – international.
....

2. travel to – one – Will – the Moon – you – day ?
....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (البحر الاحمر ٢٠٢٢)

"Folk music"

Guiding elements :

saidi music – string instruments – oboe – drumming – Nubian music

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 4





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are lots of .... things to see under the sea.
   a. boring b. scary c. hard d. interesting
2. Some fish are very .... colored.
   a. slowly b. dark c. light d. brightly
3. The bright corals can help fish .... from a bigger one.
   a. hide b. attack c. find d. see
4. Many predators don't eat .... that's brightly colored.
   a. plant b. animal c. fish d. prey

2 Listen and complete :

(الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Fruits and vegetables have a lot of fiber, ... and minerals.
2. We need minerals and vitamins for healthy skin, ... bones and teeth.
3. Fish, cheese and eggs have .... that helps us grow.
4. We need .... for a healthy nervous system.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(قنا ٢٠٢٢)

Where - port - airport - visit

Basma : Hi, Walaa.
Walaa : Welcome to Cairo. Is it your first (1).................... to Cairo ?
Basma : Yes, it is.
Walaa : (2).................... do you live ?
Basma : I live in Alexandria.
Walaa : What natural features does it have ?
Basma : Lots of ships go in and out of the (3).................... .
Walaa : Great ! I wish you would enjoy your visit in Cairo.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for ruling dynasties. Important dynasties controlled Egypt for many years. These were important families who ruled the country.

Ancient Egyptians wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about .... in ancient Egypt.
   a. rulers b. scribes c. pharaohs d. symbols
2. "........................" are important families who ruled the country.
   a. Scribes b. Hieroglyphs c. Dynasties d. Tombs

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why were scribes important in ancient Egypt ?

   ....

4. what is hieroglyphs ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab loved the big picture with all the flowers.		
2. Zeinab went to her grandparents in winter.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

1. Who invents things all the time ?
   a. Rasha b. Lobna c. Zeinab d. Doha
2. Zeinab's grandparents were very .... to see her.
   a. pleased b. angry c. excited d. tired

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Our heart .... the blood around our body. (قنا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. pumping b. pumps c. pump d. pumped
2. Ants are much .... humans. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. the strongest b. stronger than
   c. strong d. strongest
3. He is very .... His father bought a new bike for him. (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. happy b. happily c. happier d. happiest
4. There .... a big party in my school last week. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. was b. were c. have d. has

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. was – in – Egypt – Music – important – ancient.
   ....
2. natural – What – resources – are ?
   ....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

To your friend Hend about your city. Your name is Sara and your email address is sara@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is hend 22@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

metropolitan - densely populated – pedestrian – congestion

To :
From :
Subject :
.... ,
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 5

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Aya Ayman Abbas is a .... champion.
   a. basketball b. karate c. tennis d. swimming
2. Aya won the Egypt Cup .... times.
   a. two b. three c. four d. six
3. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in ....
   a. Tokyo b. London c. Rio d. Brazil
4. She won lots of .... medals.
   a. silver b. gold c. bronze d. a, b & c

2 Listen and complete : (الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)

1. There are .... halves in our brain.
2. The left hemisphere controls the .... side of the body.
3. The right hemisphere is used in .... and music.
4. The brain is an important .... in our bodies.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box : (قنا ٢٠٢٢)

digestive - drink - lesson - breathe

Hana : Good morning, Sama.
Sama : Good morning, Hana. It's our first school day in grade four.
Hana : Yes, I read the first English (1) ....
Sama : What is it about ?
Hana : It's about our (2) .... system.
Sama : What does that system do ?
Hana : We use our digestive system when we eat and (3) ....
Sama : Great !

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below : (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are renewable resources because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. animals b. potatoes
   c. natural resources d. materials
2. When renewable resources run out, they can be ....
   a. placed b. replaced c. grown d. rebuilt

B. Answer the following questions :

3. If farmers raise more animals, what happens ?

....

4. Why are the potatoes renewable resources ?

....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) : (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab wanted to learn about Khayameya.		
2. Grandpa is an artisan.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

1. Zeinab got off the .... There were her grandfather and grandmother.
   a. bus b. train c. car d. airplane
2. The big picture is made of thousands and thousands of small ....
   a. leaves b. paper c. flowers d. stitches

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is Leen's sister. I met her before with Leen. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Those b. These c. This d. They
2. People .... to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. starting b. starts c. start d. started
3. She speaks very .... I can't understand her. (بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)
   a. quick b. loud c. fast d. quiet
4. Tigers have sharp .... (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. tooth b. teeth c. claw d. jaw

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

1. to learn – I want – about – Egyptian – traditional – crafts.
   ....
2. populated - Is - sparsely - your city - densely - or ?
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)

"How to be a good team member"

Guiding elements :

communicate – collaborate – have a positive attitude –
be responsible – solve problems

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 6

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Vertebrates have ....
   a. feathers b. backbones c. beaks d. wings
2. The bee hummingbird is the .... bird.
   a. smallest b. fastest c. shortest d. biggest
3. The bee hummingbird lives in ....
   a. America b. Brazil c. Cuba d. Africa
4. Ostriches can't ....
   a. run b. fly c. lay eggs d. hear well

2 Listen and complete :

(الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Deaf people can use .... language.
2. People who can't see or hear have different ways to .... with others.
3. Braille is a .... which people can use to read.
4. Blind people can .... the dots to find out what they mean.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box :

(بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

computer - Sitting - develop - snacks

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. (1) .... still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy (2) .... when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to (3) .... unhealthy habits.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce. Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We can't make these colors by mixing other colors. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors in different amounts. We can make green, orange, purple, and all the shades in between.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .

1. We make secondary colors by .... the three primary colors.
   a. fixing b. mixing c. making d. doing
2. The word "types" in the text means ....
   a. shades b. levels c. kinds d. shapes

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Is green primary or secondary color ?

....

4. Why are the bright flowers important for plants ?

....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Grandpa always wanted to be an artisan.		
2. Rasha makes amazing art.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(قنا ٢٠٢٢)

1. Khayameya School is traveling all ....
   a. spring b. summer c. fall d. winter
2. Zeinab has .... friends.
   a. sad b. happy c. angry d. clever

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He .... meet his grandparents last Friday. (الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. doesn't b. isn't c. didn't d. wasn't
2. .... the artisans weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Before b. So c. While d. Even though
3. My school .... at 2:30 except on Thursdays. (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. finish b. finishes c. finishing d. finished
4. If you're positive, you'll help .... and the others. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)
   a. myself b. herself c. themselves d. yourself

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

1. live – on land – on water – Amphibians – and – can.
   ....
2. uses – language – Who – sign ?
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

"Natural resources"

Guide elements :

materials / renewable resources / non-renewable resources / oil / fossil fuels

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 7

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Fareeda .... in Greater Cairo.
   a. works   b. learns   c. lives   d. reads
2. Greater Cairo is a .... populated.
   a. densely   b. sparsely   c. lightly   d. easily
3. There are more than .... inhabitants in Cairo.
   a. 20,000   b. 20,000,000   c. 7,000,000   d. 2,000,000
4. When you walk in Cairo, you should be ....
   a. fast   b. hard   c. careful   d. slow

2 Listen and complete :

(المنيا ٢٠٢٢)

1. Ancient Egyptians used scribes to .... down everything that happened.
2. Scribes were very .... people in Ancient Egypt.
3. Children learnt to become a scribe at ....
4. Scribes wrote on paper made from .... reeds.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

nose - breathe - respiratory - esophagus

Hamza : Reham, do you know what our lesson will be today ?
Reham : Yes, I know, Hamza. It's about the (1) .... system.
Hamza : When do we use our respiratory system ?
Reham : When we (2) .... , we use our respiratory system.
Hamza : How do we breathe ?
Reham : We breathe in air through our (3) ....
Hamza : Where does the air we breathe go ?
Reham : It goes to our lungs.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below : (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. Nubian dancing is lively and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting.

Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned. In the cities alongside the Suez Canal, there are international types of music and dance. Musicians play the simsimeya, a Bedouin instrument, as well as drums.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "simsimeya" is a/an ....
   a. tool b. equipment c. instrument d. toy
2. The text is about ....
   a. folk patterns b. folk dancing c. folk cities d. special costumes

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Does the folk dancing depend on the place ?

   ....

4. Why does the Tahtib look like fighting ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) : (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. To make Khayameya, you need a pattern with 3 layers of cotton.	☐	☐
2. Grandpa is sad because he can't hear well now.	☐	☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (أسوان ٢٠٢٢)

1. Grandpa wanted to be a/an .... or a teacher when he was a child.
   a. architect b. doctor c. vet d. engineer
2. Grandpa likes sewing .... flowers best.
   a. sunflower b. lotus c. red d. white

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. These are .... cousins; Omar and Ali. (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. ours b. yours c. mine d. our
2. .... the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. So that b. Even though c. As soon as d. But
3. .... we live on the Moon one day ? - No, we won't. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Did b. Do c. Have d. Will
4. Have you ever .... snails before ? (أسيوط ٢٠٢٢)
   a. try b. tried c. tries d. trying

7 Order the words to make corret sentences : (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. growth – is – What – smart ?

....

2. our – seeing – for – eyes – We – use.

....

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

To your friend Marwan about a visit to Alexandria. Your name is Sleem. Your email address is sleem@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is marwan@yahoo.com.

Guiding elements :

Mediterranean Sea / port / apartment / services / Montaza Palace

To :	
From :	
Subject :	

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 8

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Waleed lives in a small ....
   a. country b. city c. town d. village
2. His dad .... tomatoes and onions.
   a. grows b. raises c. lives d. brings
3. His dad is a/an ....
   a. engineer b. farmer c. doctor d. vet
4. There are .... people in Waleed's family.
   a. six b. seven c. eight d. five

2 Listen and complete :

(بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

1. Fish take in oxygen through their ....
2. Fish are .... and they lay eggs.
3. There are thousands of different .... of fish.
4. Fish use .... to move.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

sea – road – bus – transportation

Mrs Dalia : Hey everyone. Ahmed, can you tell me how we get from one place to another place ?

Ahmed : Yes. That is what transportation does.

Mrs Dalia : Yes, that's good. What kinds of (1) .... do you usually take ?

Ahmed : I usually take a bus to school.

Mrs Dalia : Where does the (2) .... go on ?

Ahmed : The bus goes on the (3) ....

Mrs Dalia : Great! Thank you, Ahmed!

Ahmed : You are welcome.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(بني سويف ٢٠٢٢)

The Paralympic Games is an international competition. It's for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Being a Paralympic athlete takes years of dedication and hard work.

Mostafa Fathalla is a runner who takes part in 100-metre, 200 metre and 400-metre races. He joined the national team in Egypt in 2006, and has taken part in lots of international competitions. He has won many medals, including gold in the World Championship in New Zealand.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The text is about ....
   a. Olympic Games
   b. Paralympic Games
   c. World Cup
   d. swimming competitions
2. "Takes place" means ....
   a. connects
   b. happens
   c. supports
   d. protects

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Which races does Mostafa take part in ?

....

4. Is the Olympics different from the Paralympics ?

....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. The Khayameya School is going to Aswan and Port Said.	☐	☐
2. Zeinab likes the Khayameya design with flowers best.	☐	☐

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(قنا ٢٠٢٢)

1. They make the patterns of Khayameya with three layers of ....
   a. wood
   b. silk
   c. cotton
   d. fiber
2. Rasha is great at .... and working out problems.
   a. social studies
   b. math
   c. science
   d. English

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

1. I .... to the club every day.
   a. went   b. going   c. goes   d. go

(دمياط ٢٠٢٢)

2. A blue whale is bigger .... a shark.
   a. the   b. then   c. that   d. than

(الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)

3. Adam presented .... project to the class.
   a. her   b. his   c. their   d. hers

(أسيوط ٢٠٢٢)

4. .... he play football yesterday ?
   a. Was   b. Does   c. Did   d. Is

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. shark – whale - a - big – How – is ?

....

2. organs – protects – Our – skeleton – our.

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)

"Birds"

Guiding elements :

warm-blooded / feathers / wings / beaks / bones

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Sample Test 9

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We use our eyes to ....
   a. taste   b. touch   c. hear   d. see
2. We hear with our ....
   a. ears   b. arms   c. legs   d. brain
3. We can feel with our ....
   a. mouth   b. skin   c. nose   d. stomach
4. Our senses are working all the ....
   a. pattern   b. time   c. world   d. sides

2 Listen and complete :

(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. .... is very important for the success of a project.
2. .... your ideas with other team members.
3. If you find your role .... , ask for help.
4. You should listen to other's ....

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(مطروح ٢٠٢٢)

system – stomach – drink – breathe

Amr : Hello, Essmat.
Essmat : Hello, Amr.
Amr : What is the system that we use when we eat and (1) .... ?
Essmat : We use our digestive (2) ....
Amr : Where does food go after we swallow it ?
Essmat : It goes to our (3) ....
Amr : Yes, in the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy that we need in our body.
Essmat : That's great.

Part 3

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below : (الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢)

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet ? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well. We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they are full of vitamins and have a lot of fiber and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a. the mammal b. a good diet
   c. competitions d. transportation
2. Fruit and vegetables have a lot of ....
   a. protein b. fiber c. calcium d. plastic

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What does a good diet include ?
....
4. What foods are high in fiber ?
....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) : (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab has weak friends.		
2. Khayameya School is traveling all summer.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)

1. Zeinab goes to her grandparents by ....
   a. bus b. train c. car d. airplane
2. .... makes amazing art.
   a. Zeinab b. Engy c. Doha d. Rasha

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Amira .... go to the club on Sundays. (قنا ٢٠٢٢)
   a. hasn't b. didn't c. isn't d. doesn't
2. Will you .... to the Zoo next week ? (كفر الشيخ ٢٠٢٢)
   a. goes b. going c. go d. to go
3. These pens belong to Moaz. They are .... (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. his b. hers c. her d. mine
4. Ancient Egyptians .... in hieroglyphs. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٢)
   a. write b. wrote c. writes d. writing

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (الاسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

1. city – are – services - What – in – your ?
....
2. dancing – a long – Folk – history – has – in Egypt.
....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

"Our senses"

Guiding elements :

1. What are our five senses ?
2. How do we use each one of them ?
3. What is sign language ?
4. What is Braille ?
5. Who invented Braille ?

....
....
....
....
....
....

Sample Test 10

اختبار مجمع من المحافظات المختلفة



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can use the .... to go wherever we want.
   a. ferry b. bus c. airplane d. train
2. There are beautiful .... that I sometimes visit with my family.
   a. shops b. parks c. gardens d. markets
3. We can buy anything we need from the ....
   a. offices b. hospitals c. schools d. shops
4. We have a lot of .... in my city.
   a. services b. cars c. buses d. trains

2 Listen and complete :

(الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)

1. The Nile .... through the deserts of Africa.
2. .... Egypt was in the north.
3. Upper Egypt was in the ....
4. Mena joined Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt to .... the country.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box :

(سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)

services - Where - free - densely

Ali : Hello, Younis. (1) .... do you live ?

Younis : I live in Greater Cairo.

Ali : Is it sparsely or (2) .... populated ?

Younis : It's a metropolitan area and densely populated.

Ali : What services are there ?

Younis : We have a lot of (3) .... like shops, hospitals and schools.

Ali : It sounds a nice place.

Younis : Yes. I like my city.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below :

(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Wood is renewable, too.

Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, metal, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a. natural resources b. farmers c. earth d. animals
2. The underlined word "grow" means ....
   a. put b. stick c. plant d. hide

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What are renewable resources ?

   ....

4. Why is meat a renewable resource ?

   ....

5 The reader

A Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

(البحر الأحمر ٢٠٢٢)

	T	F
1. Zeinab became a Khayameya artisan.		
2. Zeinab's friends don't want to learn about Khayameya.		

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

(الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

1. Grandpa likes sewing .... flowers patterns best.
   a. lily b. lotus c. daisy d. rose
2. Rasha is great at .... and working out problems.
   a. math b. art c. music d. science

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Our heart .... the blood around our body. (الوادي الجديد ٢٠٢٢)
   a. pumping b. pumps c. pump d. was pumping
2. A frog is .... smallest vertebrate. (البحر الاحمر ٢٠٢٢)
   a. the b. than c. that d. as
3. Scribes .... very important people in ancient Egypt. (سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)
   a. are b. were c. was d. is
4. .... there be flying cars in the future ? - Yes, there will. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)
   a. Does b. Will c. Has d. Have

7 Order the words to make correct sentences : (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)

1. do – live – Where – you ?
   ....
2. airplanes – fly – will – 2064 – in - Robots.
   ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements : (البحر الاحمر ٢٠٢٢)

"Your village life"

Guiding elements :

1. Where do you live ?
2. What is your father's job ?
3. What does your mother do ?
4. What services are there in your village ?
5. Is your village sparsely or densely populated ?

....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Listening Texts

Listening Text of Monthly Assessments

Sample Test 1 on Units 1 & 2

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

The biggest animal on land is a mammal : the African elephant. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant. The biggest Sea animal in the world is also a mammal. It's the blue whale, and it can be up to 30 meters long. In fact, they are the biggest animals that have ever lived on Earth!

- Listen and complete :

Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use to read. It has different combinations of dots. They can be a letter, number, punctuation mark or word. The person reading can touch the dots to find out what they mean. Braille was invented by Louis Braille.

Sample Test 2 on Units 3 & 4

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Your senses are very important for you. You depend on them every day. Your senses are sight, hearing, touch, smell and taste. Your senses work every day. Your sight let you read this book. Your tongue helps you taste food. Your senses also help keep you away from harm.

- Listen and complete :

Peter is 12 years old and he's American. Peter is a good student and he usually gets good marks in the tests and exams, but now he doesn't go to school. The school is closed. All the schools are closed because of the pandemic coronavirus. Peter studies his lessons at home on the computer.

Sample Test 3 on Units 5 & 6

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

My family lives in a house. Our house has two bedrooms. We cook and eat meals in the kitchen. We watch TV in the living room. My favorite room is my bedroom. It is small, but tidy. I like to read books and do my homework in my bedroom. Our house is nice.

- Listen and complete :

Milk products are types of food produced from the milk of mammals. It is the source of nutrition for young mammals. My mother buys fresh milk every day. I drink milk in the morning. It's good for our bones and teeth. Milk helps our body become strong and healthy.

Sample Test 4 on Units 1 , 2 & 3

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Dina loves her family. There are five people in her family. She has one brother and one sister. Dina's brother is seven and her sister is two. Her mom and dad make the rules for the family. Dina's dad is a dentist. He works in a famous clinic. Her mom is a doctor. She works in a big hospital. Dina's family is always happy.

• Listen and complete :

Whales are large animals. They are not fish. They are mammals. They breathe in air and produce milk for their babies. They can swim fast. Whales live in oceans and seas. They can't breathe underwater. They must come up to the surface of the water to get air. They make sounds to talk to each other.

Listening Texts of Sample Tests

Sample Test 1

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called transfer of energy. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into electrical energy. When you use this electrical energy for a television, it is now mechanical energy.

• Listen and complete :

There are many kinds of transportation that allow us to move from one place of the world to another. Depending on the place you're going to, you can choose the means of transportation. For example, you can go by land if there are roads and highways available; or maybe by air if the distance is too long; or even by water if you live on an island.

Sample Test 2

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

I live in Egypt. I'm Egyptian. Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north. Upper Egypt was in the south. In about 3100 BCE, one pharaoh joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.

• Listen and complete :

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be replaced when they run out. So, potatoes are a renewable resource because we can grow more. Meat is also a renewable resource because farmers can raise more animals for you to eat. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like plastic, and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

Sample Test 3

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

I'm Khalid. I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of 5 million people. It has an important port and there are a lot of industries here too. There are many beautiful places you can visit here, like Qaitbay Citadel and Montaza Palace.

• Listen and complete :

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sport, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

Sample Test 4

• Listen and circle the correct answer :

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea ! Some fish are very brightly colored, and so are some plants. The coral is very bright and has different colors, so the fish can hide from bigger

fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that is brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

- Listen and complete :

We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Food with protein includes fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts and meat. We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish, oil and butter.

Sample Test 5

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold, silver and bronze medals in many different countries.

- Listen and complete :

The brain is an important organ in our bodies. There are two halves in our brain : the left hemisphere and the right hemisphere. The left hemisphere controls the right side of the body. The right hemisphere controls the left side of the body. We use the right hemisphere in creative activities such as art and music.

Sample Test 6

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Birds are vertebrates. Vertebrates are animals with a backbone. Birds are warm-blooded. There are different sizes of birds on the Earth. The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird, which is about 5.5 cm long. It lives in Cuba. The biggest bird is the ostrich. Ostriches can run faster than leopards, but they can't fly.

- Listen and complete :

Some people cannot see or hear, so they have different ways to communicate. People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing can use sign language. It is a complete language, like English or Arabic. Braille is a code which people who are blind or have difficulty seeing can use it to read. The person can touch the dots to find out what they mean.

Sample Test 7

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. When you walk in Cairo, you have to be very careful.

- Listen and complete :

Ancient Egyptians used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They worked for the ruling dynasties. They wrote in hieroglyphs. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums. Children learnt to become a scribe at school. Scribes wrote on stone, or on paper made from papyrus reeds.

Sample Test 8

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad is

a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals, too. My family lives in a traditional home. There are seven people living in it.

- Listen and complete :

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills; they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. On their bodies, they have scales and they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats.

Sample Test 9

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

We use our senses every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We smell with our nose, taste with our tongue, and we can feel with our skin. Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of information.

- Listen and complete :

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. You should be polite too. You should listen to other's ideas. If you find your role difficult, ask for help.

Sample Test 10

- Listen and circle the correct answer :

I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family.

- Listen and complete :

Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. In about 3100 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.